

点金训练

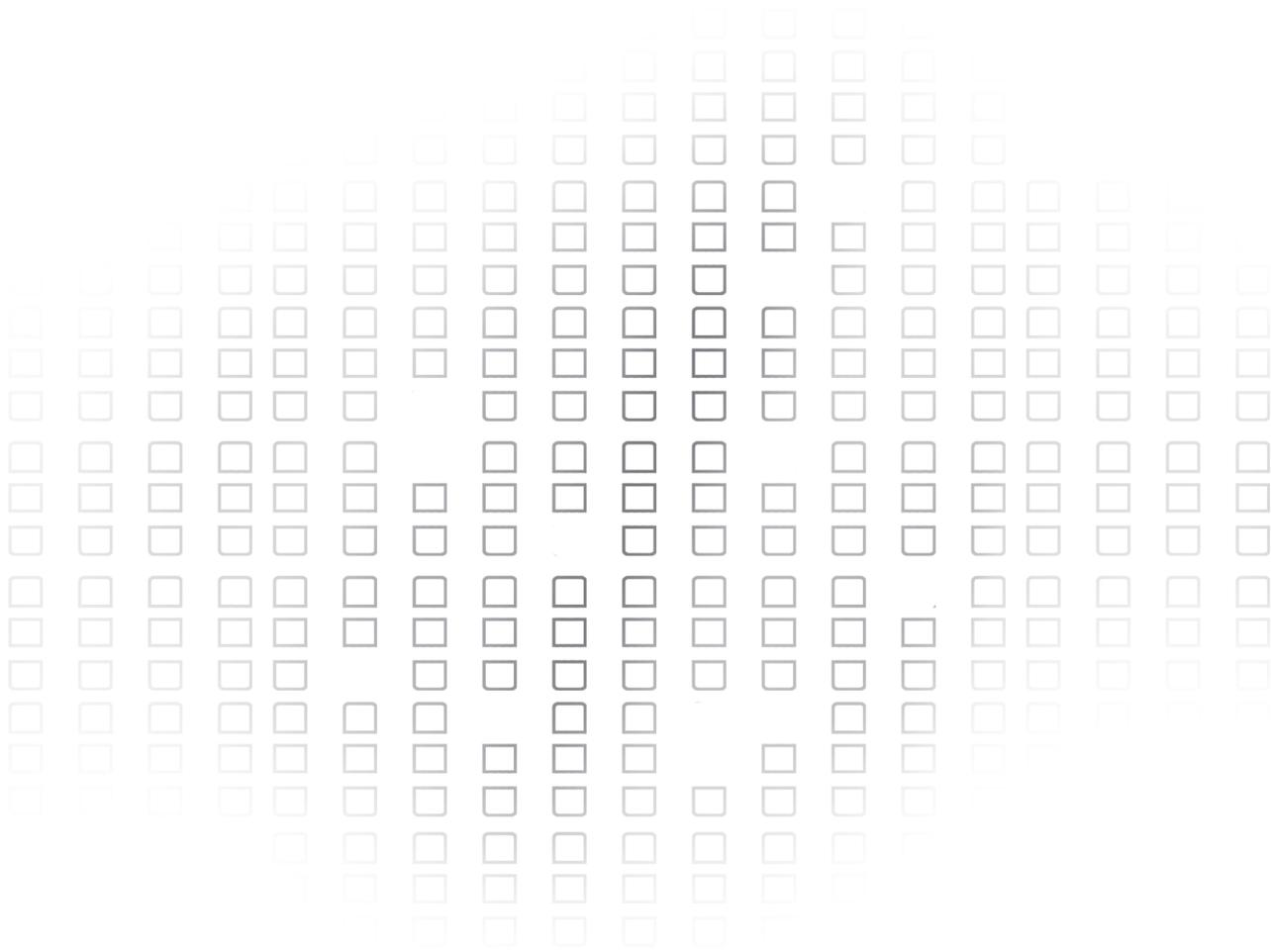
教师用书

《点金训练》编写组 编

▶ 英语

必修第三册

配外研版



四川教育出版社

CONTENTS

目录

Unit 1 Knowing me, knowing you

○单元概览	.....	1
○探究构建	Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	3
	Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	7
	Section III Using language	12
	Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection	18
○迁移应用	Part 1 应用文写作	24
	Part 2 读后续写	25
○重构拓展	.....	28

Unit 2 Making a difference

○单元概览	.....	37
○探究构建	Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	39
	Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	42
	Section III Using language	47
	Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection	52
○迁移应用	Part 1 应用文写作	59
	Part 2 读后续写	60
○重构拓展	.....	63

Unit 3 The world of science

○单元概览	.....	72
○探究构建	Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	74
	Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	78
	Section III Using language	82
	Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection	88
○迁移应用	Part 1 应用文写作	94
	Part 2 读后续写	95
○重构拓展	.....	98



Unit 4 Amazing art

○单元概览	.....	116
○探究构建	Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	118
	Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	121
	Section III Using language	125
	Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection	130
○迁移应用	Part 1 应用文写作	137
	Part 2 读后续写	138
○重构拓展	.....	141

Unit 5 What an adventure!

○单元概览	.....	151
○探究构建	Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	153
	Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	156
	Section III Using language	161
	Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection	166
○迁移应用	Part 1 应用文写作	173
	Part 2 读后续写	174
○重构拓展	.....	177

Unit 6 Disaster and hope

○单元概览	.....	186
○探究构建	Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	188
	Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	192
	Section III Using language	196
	Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection	202
○迁移应用	Part 1 应用文写作	208
	Part 2 读后续写	209
○重构拓展	.....	212

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and society, focusing on how to establish and maintain good interpersonal relationships and carry out social communication. Learning how to establish and maintain good relationships is an important topic for teenagers as they grow up. This unit introduces the common emotional manifestations and personality traits of adolescents, thereby helping students to recognise the interpersonal problems that they and their peers will encounter as they grow up, and learn to solve them.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与“建立并保持良好的的人际关系与开展社会交往”主题相关的单词和词块来理解和表达。
		语法	能恰当使用动词的过去分词(短语)作状语描述个人经历。
		语篇	综合运用各种语言技能,读懂语篇内容,挖掘深层次信息。
		语用	学习并运用与人际交往相关的词汇描述正确处理人际关系的方法。
	语言技能	听	听懂对话并整合信息,懂得有礼貌地拒绝。
		说	学会运用恰当的语言有礼貌地拒绝他人,提高自己的人际交往能力。
		读	能通过读懂寓言故事、总结其寓意并联系自身实际,深化对单元主题的理解。
		写	1. 能恰当地使用“建立并保持良好的的人际关系与开展社会交往”方面的词汇,讨论认识和完善自己的话题; 2. 能根据寓言故事写一篇读后感。
学习能力	通过运用各种学习策略,在自主、合作与探究式学习的过程中,结合单元所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整学习内容和进程,提高理解和表达能力,最终促进自身语言能力、学习能力、文化意识和思维品质的综合提升。		
文化意识	能运用单元所学知识指导生活实际,关注自己的性格特点和情绪管理方式,认识和完善自己,尊重他人,理解和尊重中外文化差异,建立并维护良好的人际关系。		

核心素养	具体要求
思维品质	能认识到自己和同龄人在成长过程中遇到的人际关系问题,并学会正确看待和解决这些问题。通过本单元的学习,能对处理人际关系有正确的态度,初步了解处理人际关系的方法。

◦ 必备知识

必背单词	steam, loose, sink, fault, resolve, strategy, signal, breath, concern, annoyed, adjust, duty, accident, core, ensure, complexity, forgive, criticise, embarrassment, boxing, justify, frank, tear, moreover, independent, apart, fence
重点表达	in a mess, help out, let down, let off steam, loose lips sink ships, be angry with, take a breath, be sure to do, apologise to, communicate with, move on, pull one's weight, white lies, tell a lie, protect... from, tell the truth, to what extent, even if, hide... from
重点知识	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 含有宾语从句的主从复合句的反义疑问句 2. It+be+过去分词+that... 3. even if 引导让步状语从句
单元语法	过去分词(短语)作状语
单元写作	论说文

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas — Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Observe the picture and identify the personalities of the people depicted in it.
2. Reflect on from whom you seek help when encountering challenges.
3. Read the text fluently, identify the key structure and comprehend the main ideas.
4. Mind our manners and be polite in our daily life.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. loose *adj.* 说话随便(轻率)的
2. resolve *v.* 解决(问题、困难)
3. sink *v.* 使(船)沉没
4. fault *n.* 责任, 过错
5. strategy *n.* 计谋, 策略; 行动计划
6. signal *n.* 信号; 暗号
7. concern *n.* 忧虑, 担心
8. breath *n.* 一口气
9. let down 使失望, 辜负
10. let off steam 发泄怒火, 宣泄情绪
11. help out 帮一把
12. concentrate on 集中精力于; 专心于
13. take a breath 吸一口气
14. pull one's weight 做好分内事, 尽责
15. in a mess 一团糟

16. move on 继续前进

17. fit in with 与……相适应

18. be good at 擅长……

19. be angry with 生……的气

20. be sure to do 一定会做

21. apologise to 跟……道歉

22. communicate with 与……沟通/交流

23. calm down 平静下来

24. work out 进展(顺利); 圆满完成; 解决; 计算出; 锻炼

(二) 阅读词汇

1. steam *n.* 蒸汽, 水蒸气

2. agony *n.* 痛楚, 苦难

3. lip *n.* (嘴)唇

4. agony aunt 知心阿姨

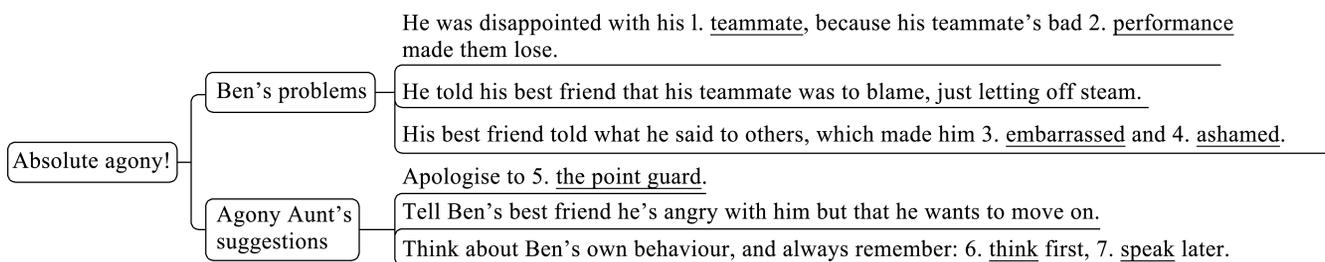
5. point guide 控球后卫

6. loose lips sink ships 祸从口出

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- Why does Ben turn to Agony Aunt for help?
 - Because his fault made them lose the game.
 - Because he had to leave the basketball team.
 - Because he did something wrong to others.
 - Because his best friend made him unhappy.
- Why was Ben angry with his friend?
 - His friend told others what he had said, which made him awkward.
 - His friend didn't keep the secret, which let him down.
 - His friend disagreed with him about his remarks on his teammate.
 - His friend didn't help him on the basketball court.
- Who does Agony Aunt think is to blame?
 - Ben.
 - Ben's friend.
 - Ben's teammate.
 - A and B.
- What did Ben do after losing the match?
 - Being angry with his teammate.
 - Criticising his teammate in person.
 - Telling everyone what he thought.
 - Sharing his idea with his friend.
- What is the most important tip that Agony Aunt gave?
 - To make an apology to his friend.
 - To talk to his teammate.
 - To mind his own behaviour.
 - To think first.
- What's the suggestion that Agony Aunt gave to Ben?
 - He should think about others as well as himself.
 - He should communicate with his coach more often.

- He should practise more to win the next games.
- He should put others' feelings first.

答案: 1~6 CADDCA

○ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- I'm crazy about basketball, and pretty good at it too, which is probably why I was so mad when we lost our last match.

[句子分析] 本句是一个复合句。I'm crazy about basketball, and pretty good at it too 是主句; which 引导非限制性定语从句; why 引导表语从句; when 引导时间状语从句。

[尝试翻译] 我酷爱打篮球, 也很擅长打篮球, 这可能是我们队最近输掉比赛时我很生气的原因。
- I was just letting off steam really, because I was so angry, but then my friend went and told everyone else what I'd said.

[句子分析] 本句是一个由 but 连接的并列复合句。第一个分句中 because 引导原因状语从句; 第二个分句中 what 引导宾语从句。

[尝试翻译] 我其实只是想发泄一下怒气, 因为我很生气, 可我的朋友随后却把我的话告诉了其他人。
- This means that if you speak too much about something, especially to people who you don't know so well, it'll cause all kinds of trouble.

[句子分析] 本句是一个复合句。This means 是主句; that 引导宾语从句; if 引导条件状语从句; who 引导定语从句, 修饰 people。

[尝试翻译] 这意味着如果你过多地谈论某件事, 尤其是跟你不太了解的人谈论, 会招来各种各样的麻烦。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. What is the most important in Agony Aunt's opinion?

答案:略

2. When our best friend hurts our feelings, what may we feel?

答案:略

Unit 1 课后素养评价(一)

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

I. 阅读理解

In 2020, Pink launched the World Regret Survey, the largest survey on the topic ever undertaken. With his research team, Pink asked more than 15,000 people in 105 countries, “How often do you look back on your life and wish you had done things differently?” Most of them said regret was at least an occasional part of their life. About 21 percent said they felt regretful all the time. Only 1 percent said they never felt regretful.

If you are of the “no regrets” school of life, you may think that all this regret is a recipe for unhappiness. But that isn't the case. Letting yourself be overwhelmed by regret is indeed bad for you. But going to the other extreme may be even worse. To extinguish your regrets doesn't free you from shame or sorrow but causes you to make the same mistakes again and again. To truly get over our guilt requires that we put regret in its proper place.

Uncomfortable as it is, regret is an amazing cognitive(认知的) feature. It requires that you go back to a past scene. Imagine that you acted differently to change it, and with that new scene in mind, arrive at a different present—and then, compare that fictional present with the one you are experiencing in reality. Not all regrets are the same, of course. Pink says they come in four basic types, and an instance of regret may involve just one combination.

Many connection regrets overlap(重叠) with moral regrets, which can come about after you go against your own values. For example, you may pride yourself on being a loving person, and thus regret not living up to this image in the relationship you harmed. Moral regrets can also involve just yourself. Maybe you regret not living up to your

promise to your health when you ate a whole pizza or skipped the gym.

If not analysed and managed, any kind of regret can be harmful to your well-being. Regret is linked to depression and anxiety, and too much regret can negatively affect your immune system. But regret doesn't have to be put aside and ignored.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了一份调查报告:大多数人的生都是有遗憾的,如果不及时处理可能会带来不好的后果。

1. What could be concluded from Pink's research?

- A. Half of the people felt regretful.
B. Most people lived without regrets.
C. None could live a life without regrets.
D. Most of the people had regrets.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Most of them said regret was at least an occasional part of their life.”可知,大多数人都是有遗憾的,他们觉得遗憾至少是他们生活中偶尔出现的一部分。故选D。

2. What does the underlined word “extinguish” in Paragraph 2 mean?

- A. Destroy. B. Admit.
C. Treasure. D. Experience.

A 词义猜测题。根据上文“Letting yourself be overwhelmed by regret is indeed bad for you. But going to the other extreme may be even worse.”可知,另一个极端就是消除遗憾。由此可推知,画线词所在的句子意思为:消除你的遗憾并不能让你从羞耻或悲伤中解脱出来,只会让你一次又一次地犯同样的错误。结合选项可知,A选项意思符合语境。故选A。

3. What is Paragraph 4 mainly about?

- A. The harm of moral regrets.
B. The importance of promise.
C. The relationship between regrets and values.
D. The connection between reality and imagination.

C 段落大意题。根据第四段中的“Many connection regrets overlap (重叠) with moral regrets, which can come about after you go against your own values.”可知,该段主要介绍了遗憾和价值观的关系,遗憾可能会发生在违背你自己的价值观之后。故选 C。

4. What might the author continue talking about?

- A. Types of regrets.
- B. Causes of regrets.
- C. Benefits of experiencing regrets.
- D. Ways of dealing with regrets.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“*But regret doesn't have to be put aside and ignored.*”可知,作者下文可能要讲的是如何应对遗憾。故选 D。

II. 七选五

Last week, a teenager wrote me an email. The contents are as follows:

Recently, a drama festival was held in my school. 1 But if I really want to try it, what can I do?

The following is my reply to her email:

Failure is a part of life. 2 There will be more opportunities to audition (试镜) in the future. Focus on those and prepare yourself to the best of your ability.

Is there a drama club at your school? Join it immediately. 3 The club will be a great learning experience for all aspects of theatre. You can even learn more about set design, costume (服装) creation and visual (视觉的) effects. You can consider

these roles if you don't get the part. This way, you will still be involved with your passion and may find another along the way.

4 What tips and tricks do they use to truly become their characters? The Internet is of course a great source for this type of information with countless videos and resources. You can also examine your written text of a play carefully, and watch yourself in the mirror or record yourself playing a role. 5 Make notes on how you can improve.

In the meantime, make a plan to succeed in your next audition. The year of 2026 just started—this is the perfect time for a New Year's resolution. When the next audition comes around, I know you will be fully prepared.

Break a leg (祝你成功), as they say in theatre.

- A. Learn from this experience.
- B. You can choose to be an actor as your future job.
- C. Study your expressions and listen to your tone of voice.
- D. I am upset that I wasn't selected to play a role in the drama because I don't have any experience.
- E. A drama is a serious play for the theatre, television, or radio, or a serious film.
- F. In your own time, you can educate yourself on how the best actors improve their craft.
- G. There, you will find like-minded students who want to get better at acting just like you.

答案:1~5 DAGFC

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务目标

1. Get the information about Ben's problems and the suggestions of Agony Aunt.
2. Know the structure of the letter of asking for help and the letter of giving suggestions.
3. Use the language learned in the text through role play.
4. Know the basics of how to deal with relationships—"Think before we speak".

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. It is said that when a ship is about to **sink**, rats are the first to flee. (船) 沉没
2. As a matter of fact, we have set up a new **strategy** to develop new kids and a new generation of players. 策略
3. From **steam** locomotives (机车) to high-speed trains, the improvements in Yunnan's transportation have brought significant benefits to people's lives in the past century. 蒸汽, 水蒸气
4. Her bottom **lip** quivered (轻微颤动) and big tears rolled down her cheeks. (嘴) 唇

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>fault</u> <i>n.</i> 责任, 过错	<u>faulty</u> <i>adj.</i> 有毛病的, 有缺点的
	<u>faultless</u> <i>adj.</i> 无错误的, 完美无缺的
<u>breath</u> <i>n.</i> 一口气	<u>breathe</u> <i>v.</i> 呼吸
	<u>breathless</u> <i>adj.</i> 气喘吁吁的; 喘不过气来的
<u>concern</u> <i>n.</i> 忧虑, 担心	<u>concerned</u> <i>adj.</i> 忧虑的; 关切的; 有关的
	<u>concerning</u> <i>prep.</i> 关于
<u>signal</u> <i>n.</i> 信号; 暗号 <i>v.</i> 发信号, 示意; 表明, 预示	<u>sign</u> <i>v.</i> 示意; 打手势; 签字; 签名 <i>n.</i> 示意动作, 手势; 信号; 标记; 迹象, 征兆
<u>resolve</u> <i>v.</i> 解决(问题、困难)	<u>resolution</u> <i>n.</i> 解决; 决心; 坚决; 决定

III. 补全短语

1. communicate with 与……沟通/交流
2. take a breath 吸一口气
3. calm down 平静下来
4. pull one's weight 做好分内事, 尽责
5. as well as 也, 又, 还; 和……一样
6. work out 进展(顺利); 圆满完成; 解决; 计算出; 锻炼
7. help out 帮一把
8. let down 使失望, 辜负
9. let off steam 发泄怒火, 宣泄情绪
10. in a mess 一团糟
11. move on 继续前进
12. fit in with 与……相适应

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: which 引导非限制性定语从句
I'm crazy about basketball, and pretty good at it too, which is probably why I was so mad when we lost our last match.
我酷爱打篮球, 也很擅长打篮球, 这可能是我们队最近输掉比赛时我很生气的原因。
2. 句型公式: 过去分词短语作状语
Disappointed by his behaviour, I said all this to my best friend.
我对他的行为感到失望, 并把一切都告诉了我最好的朋友。
3. 句型公式: 形容词短语作状语
Embarrassed and ashamed, I can't concentrate on anything.
我既尴尬又羞愧, 做什么事都无法集中精力。

4. 句型公式:含有宾语从句的主从复合句的反义疑问句

But I have to say that it's partly your fault, isn't it?
不过我不得不说你也有一部分责任,不是吗?

5. 句型公式:疑问词-ever 引导名词性从句

Filled with anger, you tend to say whatever comes to your mind.

满腔怒火的时候,你往往想到什么就说什么。

6. 句型公式:find+宾语从句

If you think about other people's feelings as well as your own, you'll soon find everything works out.

如果你既考虑自己的感受,也考虑别人的感受,很快你就会发现情况将会好转。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. let down 使失望,辜负

[教材原文] We played well, but I felt the team were **let down** by one member, our point guard.
我们打得不错,但我感觉整个团队都被一个队友拖累了,那就是我们的控球后卫。

[归纳拓展]

let alone 不打扰,不惊动;更别提

let out 放出,释放;发出某种声音;出租(房屋);把(衣服)改大

let off 放(炮、烟火等);免罚,宽恕;放掉(气),发泄

let off steam 发泄怒火,宣泄情绪

[即学即练]

(1)完成句子

①(2024·浙江1月卷) All the different hallways and rooms were too much to think about, let alone commit to memory.

所有不同的走廊和房间都让人难以想象,更不用说记住了。

②I think PE is a good chance to let off steam and have fun.

我认为体育课是宣泄情绪、放松玩乐的好机会。

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之道歉信)很抱歉让你失望了。我不是故意违背承诺的。

I'm sorry to let you down. I didn't mean to break my promise.

2. signal n. 信号;暗号 v. 发信号,示意;表明,预示

[教材原文] This gives people the wrong **signal**.

这会给人们错误的信号。

[归纳拓展]

(1)send out a signal 发出信号

(2)signal to sb. 向某人发信号

signal (to) sb. to do sth. 示意某人做某事

[即学即练]

(1)语法填空

①The young lady signalled to the waitress for the bill.

②The teacher signalled to the children to come (come) inside.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之动作描写)老师示意学生们安静下来。

The teacher signalled to the students to be quiet.

3. breath n. 一口气

[教材原文] Take a deep **breath**, calm down, and always remember: think first, speak later.

深呼吸,冷静下来,并时刻记住:先思而后言。

[归纳拓展]

(1)out of breath 上气不接下气

hold one's breath 屏息,屏气

take/draw a deep breath 深呼吸

lose one's breath 喘不过气来

(2)breathe v. 呼吸

breathe in 吸气

breathe out 呼气

(3)breathless adj. 气喘吁吁的;喘不过气来的

[即学即练]

(1)完成句子

①(2024·全国甲卷) There, they would walk through deep water, sit down cross-legged underwater and hold their breath while they watched all action going on around them.

在那里,他们会穿过深水区,盘腿坐在水下,屏住呼吸,看着周围发生的一切。

②If you run very fast, you may lose your breath/be out of breath.

如果你跑得太快,你会喘不过气来。

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之动作描写) 当他站在跳板边缘时, 他**深吸了一口气**, 试图让他那快速跳动的心平静下来。然后他低头看着清澈的水, 忍不住**吸进了**略带氯化的气味。犹豫了一会儿, 他跳进了水里。当他重新浮出水面时, 他有点**上气不接下气**。当他看着他的朋友们轮流跳时, 他**屏住呼吸**, 期待着他们的跳水。As he stood on the edge of the diving board, he took a deep breath and tried to calm his racing heart. Then he looked down at the crystal-clear water and couldn't help but breathe in the slightly chlorinated smell. After a moment of hesitation, he plunged into the water. When he resurfaced, he was a bit out of breath. As he watched his friends take their turns, he held his breath, expecting their dives.

4. concern n. 忧虑, 担心

[教材原文] If you feel one of your teammates isn't pulling their weight, then raise your **concerns** in a professional way with your team coach.

如果你觉得某个队友没有尽职尽责, 那你要以更专业的方式向你的团队教练提出你的顾虑。

[归纳拓展]

(1) show/express concern for/about 对……表示关心

(2) concerned *adj.* 忧虑的; 关切的; 有关的

as far as... be concerned 就……而言

be concerned about 对……担心/关心

be concerned with/in 与……有关, 与……有关系

(3) concerning *prep.* 关于

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① As far as I'm concerned (concern), we must get fully prepared and practise hard in order to perform well in the match.

② The man was concerned in/with the murder, and now he has been arrested (逮捕).

③ (2024·浙江1月卷) Due to the lack of scientific proof concerning (concern) their impacts, no one has succeeded in winning a lawsuit against cloud-seeding companies.

④ Nobody is more concerned about us than our

parents, who are willing to come to our assistance whenever we are in trouble.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之环境保护) **因为对这颗星球的未来感到担忧**, 许多年轻人积极参与环保运动。

Concerned about the future of the planet, many young people are actively involved in environmental campaigns.

5. 含有宾语从句的主从复合句的反义疑问句

[教材原文] But I have to say that it's partly your fault, **isn't it**?

不过我不得不说你也有一部分责任, 不是吗?

[句式分析] 该句前半部分是含有宾语从句的复合句, 后面是简短的反义疑问句。

[归纳拓展]

反义疑问句有前后两个部分, 若前一部分为肯定式, 后一部分用否定式; 若前一部分为否定式, 则后一部分用肯定式。若陈述部分为含有宾语从句的主从复合句, 主句的主语不是第一人称, 反义疑问句的谓语动词和主语代词一般同主句的谓语动词和主语保持一致。但是, 若陈述部分为“I (don't) think/believe/suppose/imagine/expect/seem/feel/say/...+宾语从句”或“I'm sure/...+宾语从句”, 反义疑问句的谓语动词和主语应同宾语从句的谓语动词和主语保持一致。

[即学即练]

(1) 完成下列反义疑问句

① I told them not everybody could run as fast as you did, didn't I?

② I don't believe she knows it, does she?

③ I imagine that people like her, don't they?

④ Mary thinks you'll come to the meeting, doesn't she?

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之细节描写) 我们从来没想到她在比赛中会打得这么好, **不是吗?**

We had never thought she would play so well in the match, had we?

多义词汇 专练

1. loose A. *adj.* 未系(或捆)在一起的

B. *adj.* 宽松的

C. *adj.* 未固定牢的

D. *adj.* 说话随便(轻率)的

- ① The nails in the wall had worked themselves **loose**. C
 ② Her hair was hanging **loose** to her shoulders. A
 ③ Wear comfortable and **loose** clothing to your exercise class. B
 ④ There is an old American saying, “**Loose** lips sink ships.” D

2. **concern** A. *v.* 使担忧 B. *n.* 忧虑

C. *v.* 与……有关

- ① There's a lot of public **concern** about modern farming methods. B
 ② What **concerns** me is our lack of preparation for the change. A
 ③ It was just a little unfinished business from my past, and it doesn't **concern** you at all. C

Unit 1 课后素养评价 (二)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 语法填空

- I don't work here. I just help out at the moment.
- Some are like me, working as a teacher, reading and writing, satisfied (satisfy) with a simple life.
- There are a lot of benefits to working out, especially (especial) in the mornings.
- Read the letters and find out what kind of problems Ben has and who he turns to for help.
- I personally would be more concerned (concern) for a young man who has to become independent.
- Careless users and local guards are to blame (blame) for the piling bikes.

II. 短语填空

let down; move on; take a breath; find fault with; be concerned about; pull one's weight; apologise to; let off steam

- Nowadays people are more concerned about the environment where they live.
- He is such a man who is always finding fault with others.
- I opened the window and took a breath of fresh air.
- In all those years he never worked hard, which let his parents down.
- Occasionally we should be given a chance to let off steam.
- You must apologise to your parents for being so rude.
- Laugh to let it go and move on, and you'll feel better.
- To finish the project on time, we have to pull our

weight.

III. 完成句子

- The children were allowed to do whatever they liked.
孩子们可以想做什么就做什么。
- If Mother finds that your room is in a mess, she is sure to be angry with you.
如果妈妈发现你的房间乱七八糟,她肯定会生你的气。
- Disappointed, his friend left the classroom without saying a word to him, which was probably the reason why he was so sad these days.
(因为)感到失望,他的朋友一句话没跟他说就离开了教室,这可能就是他最近这么难过的原因。
- I think that he will communicate with you and help you out, won't he?
我想他会和你沟通,并帮助你摆脱困境,是吗?

IV. 完形填空

A Milwaukee bus driver went above the call of duty when she stopped to save an unlikely would-be passenger: a toddler.

Irene Ivic was driving on a freeway overpass when she 1 a barefoot toddler, Milwaukee County Transit system spokesman Matt Sliker said. The child, wearing a red onesie (连体服) and a diaper (尿布), was quickly 2 to the crossroads.

“I'm just grateful I was in the right place at the right time,” Ivic said at the awards ceremony held in her 3 on Thursday.

Ivic stopped the bus and ran out to 4 the

toddler. She carried the child to the bus, 5 passengers gathered in disbelief.

“Oh. Oh. I am 6,” Ivic said in the video as she sat down in the driver’s seat with the toddler.

A passenger on the bus took off her winter coat and wrapped it 7 the little girl, who was 8 to touch. Ivic sat talking to the child, stroking her hair. The little one soon fell asleep in her 9.

The 19-month-old had been cold and scared but was 10 unharmed, police said.

“Authorities eventually 11 the baby with her father,” Sliker said.

This is the ninth 12 a lost or missing child has been 13 by a Milwaukee County Transit System driver in recent years, according to the statement.

“I absolutely love kids. I used to be a 14 and I have children of my own, so I’m so happy to help this sweet, 15 baby,” Ivic said.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了司机 Irene Ivic 超越职责范围, 停车救下了一个蹒跚学步的孩子。她很高兴能够帮助这个可爱的、纯真的孩子。

1. A. crashed B. spotted
C. escaped D. guided

B Irene Ivic 在高速公路立交桥驾驶时, 注意到了 一个赤脚的孩子。故选 B。

2. A. running B. skipping
C. rushing D. walking

D 这个孩子身穿红色连体衣和尿布, 很快就走到了十字路口。故选 D。

3. A. memory B. honour
C. favour D. mind

B 周四的时候为她举办颁奖仪式, 所以对她来说是一件荣耀的事。故选 B。

4. A. calm down B. look into
C. pick up D. hold back

C Ivic 停下车, 跑出去接孩子。故选 C。

5. A. where B. when
C. why D. how

A 她带着孩子上了公共汽车, 乘客们难以置信地聚集在那里。此处是 where 引导的定语从句。故选 A。

6. A. scolding B. yelling
C. laughing D. shaking

D 根据上文“Oh. Oh.”可知, 此处是指 Ivic 救了孩子之后的后怕, 所以在颤抖。故选 D。

7. A. beside B. against
C. around D. on

C 车上一名乘客脱下冬天的大衣, 裹住小女孩, (因为)她摸起来很冷。包裹孩子用 around, 表示围在她的周围。故选 C。

8. A. cold B. hot
C. smooth D. sick

A 车上一名乘客脱下冬天的大衣, 裹住小女孩, (因为)她摸起来很冷。故选 A。

9. A. seat B. arms
C. hands D. chest

B 小女孩很快就在 Ivic 的怀里睡着了。in one’s arms 意为“在某人怀里”。故选 B。

10. A. therefore B. especially
C. otherwise D. meanwhile

C 警方说, 这个 19 个月大的孩子一直感到寒冷和恐惧, 但除此之外没有受伤。故选 C。

11. A. discovered B. informed
C. recognised D. reunited

D 当局最终让孩子与父亲团聚。故选 D。

12. A. time B. chance
C. case D. accident

A 这是密尔沃基县交通系统的司机近年来第九次发现走失的孩子。故选 A。

13. A. reported B. solved
C. found D. adopted

C 这是密尔沃基县交通系统的司机近年来第九次发现走失的孩子。故选 C。

14. A. mother B. girl
C. parent D. teacher

D Ivic 说: “我曾经是一名老师, 我有我自己的孩子, 所以我很高兴我能够帮助这个可爱的、纯真的孩子。”根据语境“used to be”可知 A、B、C 不合适, 故选 D。

15. A. innocent B. pretty
C. lucky D. brave

A Ivic 说: “我曾经是一名老师, 我有我自己的孩子, 所以我很高兴我能够帮助这个可爱的、纯真的孩子。”故选 A。

Section III Using language

学习任务目标

1. Identify and summarise the forms and functions of *-ed* as adverbial through observation and apply it correctly in different contexts and situations.
2. Comprehend the general idea of listening materials and gather specific details to complete the table.
3. Use phrases for making requests and refusals effectively.
4. Employ the appropriate structures from listening materials to describe the proper approach to managing interpersonal relationships.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. His brother, an excellent athlete, attended a **boxing** competition held in Wuhan, Hubei. 拳击(运动)
2. We have a **duty** to uphold the law. 责任
3. He called for global efforts to **ensure** fair competition and promote innovation. 确保
4. She advised the company to take the lead in the innovation in **core** technologies. 核心的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>annoyed</u> <i>adj.</i> 恼怒的, 烦恼的	<u>annoy</u> <i>v.</i> 打扰; 使恼怒
	<u>annoying</u> <i>adj.</i> 令人气恼的
	<u>annoyance</u> <i>n.</i> 烦恼, 气恼
<u>adjust</u> <i>v.</i> 适应, (使)习惯	<u>adjustment</u> <i>n.</i> 调整; 适应
	<u>adjustable</u> <i>adj.</i> 可调节的; 可调整的
<u>complexity</u> <i>n.</i> 复杂性, 错综复杂	<u>complex</u> <i>adj.</i> 复杂的
<u>embarrassment</u> <i>n.</i> 尴尬, 难为情	<u>embarrass</u> <i>v.</i> 使尴尬
	<u>embarrassed</u> <i>adj.</i> 尴尬的
	<u>embarrassing</u> <i>adj.</i> 令人尴尬的
<u>forgive</u> <i>v.</i> 原谅, 宽恕	<u>forgiveness</u> <i>n.</i> 原谅, 宽恕
	<u>forgivable</u> <i>adj.</i> 可宽恕的, 可原谅的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>criticise</u> <i>v.</i> 批评, 指责	<u>criticism</u> <i>n.</i> 批评, 指责
	<u>critic</u> <i>n.</i> 评论家; 批评者
	<u>critical</u> <i>adj.</i> 批判的; 批评的
<u>accident</u> <i>n.</i> 意外事件, 偶然因素	<u>accidental</u> <i>adj.</i> 偶然的, 意外的
	<u>accidentally</u> <i>adv.</i> 偶然地, 意外地

III. 补全短语

1. be satisfied with 对……满意
2. look down on/upon 看不起
3. take the lead 带头, 领先
4. get along with 和……相处
5. run away from 从……逃跑
6. adjust to 适应
7. by accident 偶然, 意外地
8. settle down 安下心来; 定居
9. all the time 一直, 始终; 时常, 老是
10. be separated from 与……分离; 与……分开

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: 过去分词短语作状语
Influenced mainly by Joy, most of Riley's memories are happy ones.
 主要受到 Joy 的影响, 莱莉大部分的记忆都是快乐的。
2. 句型公式: it is + *adj.* + for sb. to do sth.
It's not easy for anyone to say sorry.
 对任何人来说, 说对不起都不容易。

3. 句型公式:it 作形式主语

It takes time to understand a person.

了解一个人需要时间。

4. 句型公式:it is+过去分词+that 从句

It is believed that EQ plays an even more important role than IQ (intelligence quotient) in people's lives.

人们认为情商在生活中的作用甚至比智商更重要。

5. 句型公式:动词-ing 形式作主语

Being able to say no politely is one of the features of emotional intelligence.

能够礼貌地说“不”是情商的特征之一。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. adjust v. 适应,(使)习惯

[教材原文]When Riley moves to a new city, she has a hard time **adjusting** to her new surroundings.

当茉莉搬到一个新城市时,她很难适应新的环境。

[归纳拓展]

(1)adjust... to... 调整……以适应……

adjust to doing... 适应做……

adjust (oneself) to (doing) sth. (使自己)适应(做)某事

(2)adjustment *n.* 调整;适应

make an adjustment/adjustments to 对……作出调整

(3)adjustable *adj.* 可调节的;可调整的

[即学即练]

(1)语法填空

①It takes him quite a while to adjust to working (work) night shifts.

②Just as I tried to make the necessary adjustment (adjust) to this document, Wang Ping appeared.

③This adjustable (adjust) seat is so comfortable that I may take a nap before climbing the Great Wall.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之劝慰信)我们应该学会让自己适应生活中的变化。

We should learn to adjust ourselves to changes in life.

2. forgive v. 原谅,宽恕

[教材原文]Try to **forgive** someone when they apologise.

当别人道歉时,试着去原谅他们。

[归纳拓展]

(1)forgive sb. sth. } 原谅某
 forgive sb. for doing sth. } 人(做)
 forgive sb.'s doing sth. } 某事

(2)forgiveness *n.* 原谅,宽恕

(3)forgivable *adj.* 可宽恕的,可原谅的

[即学即练]

(1)语法填空

①I will never forgive you for what you have done to me.

②(2023·新课标I卷)It's just as important to show yourself some forgiveness (forgive).

③Forgive others, and you will be forgiven (forgive).

④There are times when showing off may be forgivable (forgive) and even acceptable.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之情绪描写)他无法原谅自己让团队失望。

He couldn't forgive himself for letting his team down.

3. It+be+过去分词+that...

[教材原文]**It is believed that** EQ plays an even more important role than IQ (intelligence quotient) in people's lives.

人们认为情商在生活中的作用甚至比智商更重要。

[句式分析]It is believed that... 中 It 为形式主语, that 从句是真正的主语。

[归纳拓展]

(1)常用于这个句型的动词过去分词有 said、believed、accepted、acknowledged、supposed、thought、estimated、known、considered、reported、confirmed、hoped、suggested、requested、required、ordered、advised、insisted 等。

(2)当这个句型中的动词过去分词为 suggested、requested、required、ordered、advised、insisted 等表示建议、要求、命令等的词时,从句的谓语要用“should+do”形式,should 可以省略。

(3)这个句型可以与“sb./sth.+be+过去分词+不定式”互换。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① It has been reported that the number of college graduates increases every year, while the jobs available for them are far from enough.

② It is required that all the students (should) not use (not use) mobile phones on weekdays.

③ He is thought to have acted (act) foolishly.

Now he has no one but himself to blame for losing the job.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信) 人们相信经常锻炼对健康有益。

It is believed that regular exercise is beneficial to health.

语法研习课

过去分词(短语)作状语

语法感知

① **Disappointed by his behaviour**, I said all this to my best friend.

② **Treated this way**, you're sure to feel hurt.

③ **Approached in this way**, your friendship will soon be repaired.

④ **Written more than two hundred years ago**, these lines by Walter Scott remain one of the most well-known excerpts of Scottish poetry.

1. ①句中的 Disappointed by his behaviour 为过去分词短语,在句中作状语,表示原因。

2. ②③句中的 Treated this way 和 Approached in this way 为过去分词短语,在句中作状语,表示条件。

3. ④句中的 Written more than two hundred years ago 为过去分词短语,在句中作状语,表示让步。

名师点拨

(1) 过去分词(短语)作状语时,其逻辑主语一般与句子的主语一致;

(2) 过去分词表示的动作与句子的主语之间为被动关系。

语法精讲

一、过去分词(短语)作状语的用法

过去分词(短语)作状语时,可表示原因、时间、条件、让步、方式、结果、伴随等,表示被动或完成。过去分词(短语)作状语多放在句首,也可放在句末或放在句中。

Hit by a lack of fresh air, my head ached.

由于缺乏新鲜空气,我感到头痛。(表原因)

Shown around the Great Wall, we will visit the Bird's Nest tomorrow.

参观完长城,明天我们将参观鸟巢。(表时间)

Some medicines, **if wrongly taken**, can kill a person.

误服有些药物可能会致死。(表条件)

Encouraged by his parents, he still has no confidence in overcoming the difficulties.

尽管受到了父母的鼓励,他仍然没有信心克服这些困难。(表让步)

The patient got off the bed, **supported by the nurse**.

那个病人在护士的搀扶下下了床。(表方式)

The girl met with an accident when crossing the road, **wounded in the head**.

那个女孩过马路时出了事故,头部受了伤。(表结果)

Surrounded by his students, the professor went into the lab.

教授在学生的簇拥下进入了实验室。(表方式或伴随)

名师点拨

过去分词(短语)作状语时,有时前面可用一个连词或词组,表示强调或出于表达需要。常用的连词或词组有 when、while、if、unless、though、even if 等。

If heated, water will change into steam.

水加热后会变成水蒸气。

When asked about her future plans, the girl said that she wanted to be a teacher.

当被问到未来的计划时,这个女孩说她想成为一名教师。

二、过去分词(短语)作状语与状语从句的转换

过去分词(短语)作状语,表示时间、原因、条件、让步时可转换为相应的状语从句;表示方式、结果和伴随时可转换为并列分句。

Given more attention and care, the child wouldn't have become so selfish and naughty.

→ If the child had been given more attention and

care, he wouldn't have become so selfish and naughty.

如果被给予更多的关心和照顾,这个孩子就不会变得如此自私和淘气。

The film star stepped out of the train, **surrounded by her fans**.

→The film star stepped out of the train and she was surrounded by her fans.

那位电影明星走下火车,被她的粉丝团团围住。

三、过去分词(短语)作状语需注意的问题

1. 过去分词(短语)作状语表示被动的和完成的动作。

Written in a hurry, this article was not so good.

因为写得匆忙,这篇文章不是很好。

2. 过去分词(短语)作状语时其逻辑主语为主句的主语,此时应注意人称一致。

Given another hour, I can also work out this problem.

再给我一个小时,我也能解出这道题。

Seen from the top of the hill, the city looks more beautiful.

从山顶上看,这座城市看上去更漂亮。

3. 过去分词(短语)作状语时,有时可改为现在分词的被动完成式,两者都可表示一个被动、完成的动作。

Discussed (Having been discussed) many times, the plan was carried out at last.

在讨论了多次之后,这个计划最终被执行了。

名师点拨

有些过去分词转换为形容词,在句中作状语或说明主语所处的状态,如 lost in、absorbed in、devoted to、concerned about、seated in 等。

Absorbed in deep thought, he didn't hear the sound.

他沉浸在深思中,没听到那个声音。

Devoted to studying the secret of nature, the young scientist has little time for entertainment. 这位年轻的科学家致力于研究大自然的奥秘,很少有时间娱乐。

语法冲关

I. 用过去分词(短语)作状语改写下列句子

1. Because he was caught in the heavy rain, he was all wet.

Caught in the heavy rain, he was all wet.

2. Although the book has been published many times, it still sells well in the market.

Although published many times, the book still sells well in the market.

3. Though he was defeated, he remained a popular boxer.

Though defeated, he remained a popular boxer.

4. Once it is visited, the city will never be forgotten.

Once visited, the city will never be forgotten.

5. If we are united, we stand; if we are divided, we fall.

United, we stand; divided, we fall.

II. 完成句子

1. Faced with so many new things to learn, I was overcome by fear and was at a loss what to do.

面对如此多要学的新东西,我感到恐惧、迷茫,不知道该做什么。

2. Considered from this point of view, the question under discussion is of great importance.

从这个观点来考虑,这个被讨论的问题极其重要。

3. Generally speaking, if taken according to the instructions, the drug has no side effects.

一般来说,如果按照用法说明服用,这种药没有副作用。

4. The teacher came into the classroom, followed by some students.

老师进了教室,后面跟着一些学生。

5. Encouraged by these successes, they decided to expand the business.

在这些成绩的鼓舞下,他们决定扩大经营。

Unit 1 课后素养评价 (三)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

even if; ensure; be embarrassed about; adjust to;
by accident; forgive; annoyed; duty; look down
on; settle down

1. Even if I had the talent to play tennis, I couldn't stand the pressure.
2. I was embarrassed about how untidy the house was when my friends paid a visit.
3. He stepped on her foot by accident and apologised to her at once.
4. Whoever leaves the classroom last must ensure that all the windows and doors are well closed.
5. I had a hard time adjusting to the life in New York.
6. She made the last appeal (恳求) to her father to forgive her.
7. He wasn't successful, so they looked down on him.
8. The woman felt it her duty to tell the police.
9. The class settled down and she began the lesson.
10. He was beginning to get very annoyed with me about my carelessness.

II. 语法填空

1. Built (build) thirty years ago, the house still looks very beautiful.
2. Caught (catch) in the rain on my way home, I had a bad cold.
3. The old man went into the room, supported (support) by his wife.
4. Though frightened (frighten) by the big fire, he stood out bravely.
5. Done (do) in a hurry, his homework was full of mistakes.
6. Asked (ask) why he was late, the boy made no answer.
7. Encouraged (encourage) by the teacher's words, he went on with his research work.
8. It was suggested (suggest) that we put off the meeting because of an emergency.

III. 阅读理解

When Eugenie George first heard that her friend had passed an exam, her heart sank. She'd failed that test weeks earlier, and needed more work to advance her own career. But instead of anxiety, she called her friend. "I congratulated her and told her she inspired me," she says. She was surprised when it changed her attitude, so she could share her friend's happiness and experience her own, in turn.

Finding pleasure in another person's good fortune is what social scientists call *freudenfreude*, a term that describes the joy we feel when someone else succeeds, even if it isn't directly connected with us. "Freudenfreude is like social glue," says Catherine Chambliss, a professor of psychology at Ursinus College in Pennsylvania. It makes relationships "closer and more enjoyable". Sharing in someone else's joy can also improve life satisfaction and resilience (适应力) and help people cooperate during a disagreement.

While the benefits of *freudenfreude* are plentiful, it doesn't always come easily. Sometimes, your loss might last, making *freudenfreude* feel out of reach. "If you were raised in a family that paired winning with self-worth," Chambliss says, "you might misread someone else's victory as your own personal shortcoming." And factors such as mental health and overall well-being (幸福) can also affect your ability to participate in someone else's joy. Still, *freudenfreude* is worthwhile and there are ways to encourage the feeling.

Instead of an automatic response, *freudenfreude* is often an active process. To help people strengthen joy-sharing muscles, Chambliss and her colleagues developed a programme called *Freudenfreude Enhancement Training* (FET). They found that depressed people who used the practices for two weeks had an easier time expressing *freudenfreude*, which built up their relationships and improved their mood.

Jean Grae, an artist, supports friends in this mindset. When someone gets a new opportunity or reaches a milestone, she is sure to celebrate. Grae says she's especially moved when anyone considers "others" succeed. "It's truly inspirational," she says, "because it lifts us all up and makes us shine."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要指出“乐他人之幸”会给自己带来好处。

1. What do we know about Eugenie George?
 - A. She took pride in passing her exam.
 - B. She shared her success with her friend.
 - C. She was pleased with her friend's success.
 - D. She was annoyed at her failure in an exam.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“‘I congratulated her and told her she inspired me,’ she says. She was surprised when it changed her attitude, so she could share her friend's happiness and experience her own, in turn.”可知, Eugenie George 听到朋友通过了考试后,对她的成功感到高兴。故选 C。
2. What does Paragraph 3 mainly focus on about freudenfreude?
 - A. Its great benefits.
 - B. Its disadvantages.
 - C. Reasons for its absence.
 - D. Ways of improving it.

C 段落大意题。根据第三段的内容可知。该段提到了个人失落感、心理健康和整体幸福感等因

素是可能让个人难以从他人的成功中感受到快乐的原因。故选 C。

3. Why is Freudenfreude Enhancement Training held?
 - A. To test the effect of freudenfreude.
 - B. To help people apply freudenfreude.
 - C. To get people to know freudenfreude.
 - D. To show the advantages of freudenfreude.

B 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可知,创办项目旨在帮助人们将乐他人之幸的能力应用到生活之中。故选 B。
4. What can be a suitable title for the text?
 - A. How to Experience Freudenfreude
 - B. Let's Share What Leads to Freudenfreude
 - C. Freudenfreude: View Others' Success as Our Own
 - D. A Win-win: Freudenfreude Brings Our Own Pleasure

D 标题归纳题。通读全文并根据第一段中的“‘I congratulated her and told her she inspired me,’ she says. She was surprised when it changed her attitude, so she could share her friend's happiness and experience her own, in turn.”可知, Eugenie George 对于她朋友的成功感到高兴;根据最后一段的内容可知,文章主要探讨了乐他人之幸会让自己开心, D 项(双赢:乐他人之幸带来我们自己的快乐)最适合作为文章标题。故选 D。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Get the main idea of the text and have a better understanding of “Little White Lies”.
2. Understand the structure and stylistic features of an essay and improve your thinking skills as well as language using abilities.
3. Learn to analyse and solve problems in real life by using proper evidence to support your ideas.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. To our annoyance, some visitors inserted smartphones and cameras into the **fence** holes to take photos. 篱笆
2. The moment she set foot on her motherland, she burst into **tears**. 泪水
3. **Moreover**, by doing the part-time job I can get some precious experience. 此外
4. Local ethnic women are taught how to raise silkworms and **weave** cloth. 编, 织
5. As far as I am concerned, their lies can't **deceive** others. 欺骗
6. The local residents were given two doses administered 21 days **apart**. 分开

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
justify <i>v.</i> 证明(别人认为不合理的事)有道理; 为……辩护	justice <i>n.</i> 公正; 正义
frank <i>adj.</i> 坦率的, 坦诚的, 直言不讳的	frankly <i>adv.</i> 坦率地, 坦诚地
latter <i>n.</i> 后者	latest <i>adj.</i> 最新的; 最近的
	later <i>adv.</i> 后来 <i>adj.</i> 后期的
	lately <i>adv.</i> 近来; 最近

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
independent <i>adj.</i> 独立的	independence <i>n.</i> 独立
	depend <i>v.</i> 依靠; 依赖
	dependent <i>adj.</i> 依靠的; 依赖的

III. 补全短语

1. apply to 适用于; 运用于
2. consist of 由……组成
3. in advance 提前, 事先
4. in conclusion 总之, 总的来说
5. in fact 事实上, 实际上
6. tell a lie 撒谎
7. protect... from ... 保护……免受……
8. tell the truth 说实话
9. even if 即使
10. to what extent 在什么程度上
11. hide... from ... 向……隐瞒……
12. do well in 在……方面做得好
13. go back to 回到……上来; 追溯到

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: one of + 复数名词

Written more than two hundred years ago, these lines by Walter Scott remain one of the most well-known excerpts of Scottish poetry...

200多年前, 沃尔特·司各特写下的这几行文字, 如今依然是苏格兰诗歌中最广为传诵的诗句之一……

2. 句型公式:even if 引导让步状语从句

Or if a friend asks us what we think of their new haircut, we say “It’s great!”, even if we think it’s awful.

或者有朋友问我们他的新发型怎么样,即使我们觉得剪得很糟糕,也会说“棒极了!”。

3. 句型公式:不定式作表语

Another reason for telling a white lie is to give encouragement.

说善意的谎言的另一个原因是给予鼓励。

4. 句型公式:so that 引导目的状语从句

Stop for a moment and consider that perhaps your friend wants some frank comments from you so that they can improve.

停下来想一想,也许你的朋友就是想听到你的真实评价,从而得到改进。

5. 句型公式:the+比较级, the+比较级

The more independent you are, the better your life will be.

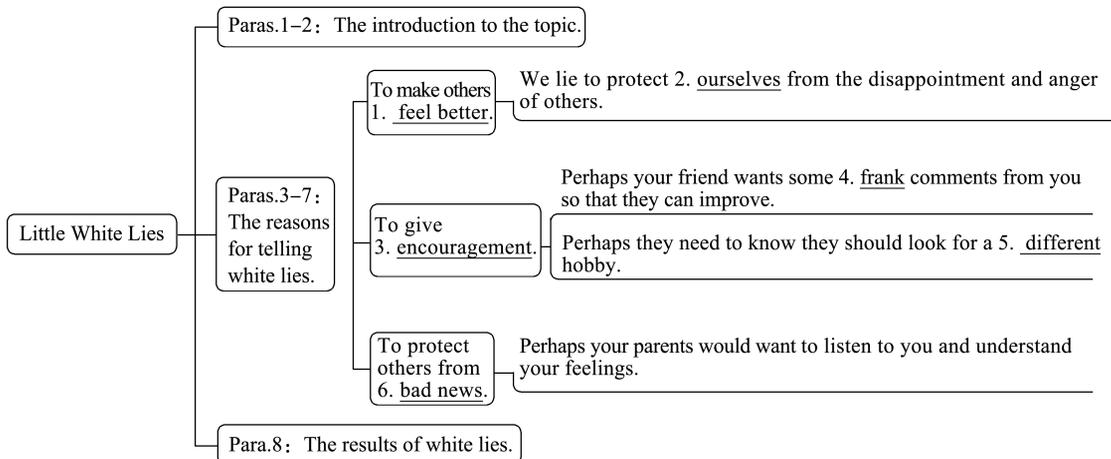
你越独立,生活就越好。

任务型课堂

Part 1 课文理解

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- What do white lies mean according to the text?
 - We shouldn't tell a lie.
 - It's unavoidable to tell lies.
 - Some little lies that we tell to protect others from the truth.
 - Lies that often hurt others.
- How many reasons are listed for us to tell a white lie?
 - Two.
 - Three.
 - Four.
 - Five.
- What does the author advise us to do when we have a bad day?
 - Hide our true feelings and lie to others that our day is fine.
 - Share it with a friend.

- Go on a trip alone to relax ourselves.
- Tell our parents and ask for their advice.

- What can we infer from the text?
 - Telling a white lie is always good.
 - Never tell a lie.
 - In order to maintain friendship, never tell the truth to your friends.
 - White lies sometimes produce bad results.

答案:1~4 CBDD

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- Perhaps we comfort ourselves with the knowledge that most of the lies we tell are “white lies”: little lies that we tell to protect others from the truth. [句子分析]本句是一个复合句。knowledge 后的 that most of the lies we tell are “white lies”是

that 引导的同位语从句, 其中的 we tell 是省略了关系代词 that 或 which 的定语从句; little lies 后是 that 引导的定语从句, 其中的 to protect others from the truth 为动词不定式短语表示目的。

[尝试翻译] 或许我们安慰自己, 我们说过的大部分谎言都是“善意的谎言”, 即为了保护他人不被真相伤害而撒的小谎。

2. However, when we lie and say that someone's haircut looks good, or when we say that we love a meal that we secretly hate, are we really hoping to improve the situation for someone else?

[句子分析] 本句是一个复合句。are we really hoping to improve the situation for someone else 是主句, or 连接了两个 when 引导的时间状语从句。在第一个 when 引导的从句中 that 引导宾语从句, 作 say 的宾语; 在第二个 when 引导的从句

中第一个 that 引导宾语从句, 作 say 的宾语, 第二个 that 引导定语从句, 修饰先行词 meal, that 在从句中作宾语。

[尝试翻译] 但是, 当我们撒谎说某人的发型很好看, 或者说其实不喜欢的菜很好吃时, 我们真的是在为别人着想吗?

○ 思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. According to the text, when we say our friend's haircut is wonderful, even if we think it's awful, what do we want to do in fact?

We want to protect ourselves from the disappointment and anger of others.

2. What will you do when you are told a white lie?

答案: 略

Part 2 语言梳理

1. independent adj. 独立的

[教材原文] The more **independent** you are, the better your life will be.

你越独立, 生活就越好。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be independent of... 独立于……

(2) independence *n.* 独立

gain independence 获得独立

(3) depend *v.* 依靠; 依赖

depend on 依靠; 取决于

depend on it that... 指望……; 相信……

It/That (all) depends. 视情况而定。

(4) dependent *adj.* 依靠的; 依赖的

(5) dependence *n.* 依赖; 依靠

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① Starting your own business could be a way to achieve financial independence (independent).

② Tom is so independent (independence) that he never asks his parents' opinion unless he wants their support.

③ Depending on the comments received, the editor would accept the paper for publication or decline it.

④ You may depend on it that Tom will help you with your English.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之心理描写) 她想独立于父母, 自己做决定。

She wants to be independent of her parents and make her own decisions.

2. apart adv. 分离, 分开

[教材原文] As soon as they started to get closer, they hurt each other with their quills, so they had to move **apart**.

当它们开始靠近时, 它们就因为身上的刺伤害到彼此, 所以它们不得不分开。

[归纳拓展]

take apart 拆开, 拆卸

tear apart 撕毁, 撕碎

tell apart 辨别, 区分

apart from 除……之外 (还)

come/fall apart 崩溃; 破裂

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① Apart from the injuries to his face and hands, he broke both legs.

② My best friend John enjoys taking old clocks apart.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之人物介绍)这对双胞胎长得太像了,很难把他们区分开来。

The twins are so alike that it's very difficult to tell them apart.

②(应用文写作之报道)洪水冲毁了桥梁和道路。

The floodwaters tore apart bridges and roads.

3. even if 引导让步状语从句

[教材原文]Or if a friend asks us what we think of their new haircut, we say "It's great!", **even if we think it's awful**.

或者有朋友问我们他的新发型怎么样,即使我们觉得剪得很糟糕,也会说“棒极了!”。

[句式分析]句中 if 引导条件状语从句,此条件状语从句中还包含 what 引导的宾语从句;主句中含有 even if 引导的让步状语从句,且该从句中还包含省略连词 that 的宾语从句 it's awful。

[归纳拓展]

(1)even if/even though 引导让步状语从句,表示“即使……,纵使……”之意,含有一种假设。从句中需用一般现在时表示将来。

(2)注意和 as if/as though 的区别:as if/as though 意为“好像,似乎”,引导表语从句或方式状语从句。

[即学即练]

(1)语法填空

①I'll do it even if it takes (take) me all afternoon.

②The vase painted by my father looks as if it were (be) a real one.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之人物介绍)即使她遇到很多困难,她也会继续努力工作。

She will keep on working hard even if she meets many difficulties.

多义词汇 专练

fence A. *n.* 栅栏 B. *n.* 障碍物 C. *v.* 用(栅栏、篱笆或围栏)围住;隔开

①The horse fell at the last **fence**. B

②The children climbed through a hole in the **fence**. A

③The first task was to **fence** the wood to exclude sheep. C

Unit 1 课后素养评价(四)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

- They surrounded the yard with a fence (篱笆) to keep out wolves.
- He offered a frank (坦诚的) apology to her for having lost the telephone.
- Many independent (独立的) women like to earn their own bread.
- A talented artist, he was, moreover (此外), a writer of some note.
- When the children presented flowers to him, he was moved to tears (泪水).
- I try to keep my work and private life as far apart (分开地) as possible.
- He tracked down his cousin and uncle. The latter (后者) was sick.
- How can we justify (证明……有道理) spending so much money on arms?

II. 语法填空

- The more air there is inside the tyre, the greater (great) the pressure there is in it.
- Quite frankly (frank), I'm not surprised you failed, for you didn't prepare for it.
- It was, in fact, not a common stone at all—it was a beautiful diamond (钻石).
- Our manager said that the new rule applied to part-time workers.
- Phil is now much more independent of his parents.
- The police are investigating a series of attacks (attack) in the area.
- After his mum took his temperature, she realised that Tom didn't tell the truth.
- In conclusion, walking is a cheap, safe, enjoyable, and readily available form of exercise.

III. 短语填空

instead of; protect... from...; to what extent; for example; in advance; a series of; apply to; consist of; to tell the truth

1. For example, it can be proved that India has more people than any other country in the world.
2. To tell the truth, neither she nor I am wrong.
3. As a child, you should drink more boiled water instead of tea.
4. Each group shall consist of ten members.
5. We set up a wildlife reserve to protect animals from being hunted.
6. I should warn you in advance that I'm not a very good dancer.
7. Anne wouldn't write down a series of facts in her diary as most people do.
8. In fact the concept (概念) applies to every business.
9. To what extent do you rely on teams to get things done in your organisation?

IV. 完成句子

1. Even if invited, I won't go to such a bad lecture.
即使邀请我,我也不会去听如此糟糕的演讲。
2. The longer we get along with him, the more popular with us he will be.
我们跟他相处的时间越长,他就越受我们的欢迎。
3. You must present your library card every time you borrow books.
每次借书时你都必须出示借阅证。
4. The only thing he can do now is (to) give up the plan.
他现在唯一能做的就是放弃这个计划。
5. When we use metals, it is important to know how they react with different substances.
当我们使用金属时,了解它们与不同的物质如何反应是很重要的。

V. 语法填空

It takes many teenagers a lot of time

1. to consider (consider) what they want to do when they graduate from high school. I am fortunate that I've already known. I 2. decided (decide) to become a vet when I was two or three years old. Just like

humans, animals need people to treat 3. them (they) with the respect and dignity they deserve, and I want to be one of those people. Because of this, I am doing all I can at Reavis to be well 4. prepared (prepare) for my success in college. First, as 5. a freshman in high school, I keep in mind my lifelong dream of 6. becoming (become) a vet. I have been taking my education here very seriously; because I know that a person needs to be not only skilful, but also 7. extremely (extreme) disciplined (自律的) in order to become a vet. Because of this, I work hard to earn good grades. I am proud 8. of my work, and I have learned to manage my time properly, 9. which will be particularly valuable when I enter college. Then once in college, I will study and learn about all kinds of animals. Finally, I will find 10. happiness (happy) in my career as a vet because when animals need my assistance, I know that I will be able to help them.

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

如今,通过运动保持健康成为人们热议的话题,越来越多的人喜爱和重视体育运动。然而你们班有些同学不以为然。他们认为运动不仅浪费时间,还消耗精力和体力,影响学习。请你根据自己的理解,从体育运动的意义入手,劝告他们积极参加体育运动,并给出合理的建议。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Nowadays, people are paying much more attention to their health, and sports are becoming increasingly popular.

Though sports and games may take up some time, they benefit people in many ways. They provide people with exercise and enjoyment, and make us strong and healthy. Taking part in sports is not only good for people's health, but also of great help to our study.

You can arrange some time for sports and study properly or just do some simple exercise in your spare time. Besides, taking a walk after dinner or taking part in a football match has the same effect on your health.

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

When I was eleven years old, I moved to Tampa, Florida. My parents travelled for a living, so Aunt Emily took care of me while they were away. One rainy morning, there was an old lady who was dressed in a bright orange coat carrying a rubbish bag and a stick. “What’s that old lady doing?” I asked Emily, pointing out the window to the street in front of the house.

Hearing my question, Emily answered, “She’s picking up rubbish around here for fun.” “Oh,” I answered. “Interesting... Why would someone think picking up rubbish was fun?” For a long time, I often saw that old lady, rain or shine, on my way to school. In the beginning, I thought she was crazy to pick up rubbish. However, I finally smiled and waved at her each time I saw her.

Later, when I moved to college, I’d see rubbish in the grass and feel really angry about it. I’d think, “Why isn’t anyone picking up rubbish? People are so unconcerned!” But shortly after that, I said to myself, “Why do I think picking up rubbish is someone else’s duty?” And I couldn’t walk past trash without feeling guilty.

So while walking in the college, I began picking up rubbish and made sure the campus was in better

shape than I previously found it. My behaviour influenced some students. They started to help out.

Like me, they also picked up rubbish whenever they noticed it. And our college became more beautiful. Seeing it, I began to think, “If I pick up rubbish outside the college—in other places of the town, it may make a big difference to the town.”

But picking up rubbish in front of many people outside the college needs courage. It could be embarrassing. But it was the right thing to do. I decided to try it.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

One morning, I went out to pick up rubbish. Some people watched me with a strange look that seemed to say I was crazy. And suddenly, I remembered that old lady who often picked up rubbish years ago. The interesting thing was that I was acting just like her! As strange as it might sound, picking up rubbish is kind of fun for me! Gradually, many people realised I was volunteering to help make our town clean. They praised me and thanked me.

Then I decided to encourage more students to do this in the town. Surprisingly, they agreed and we set up a voluntary organisation. We bought each student a bright orange coat with words on it: Let’s make our town cleaner! And we took time to not only pick up rubbish but also sort through it and recycle it. Something amazing happened—the strangers around us helped out too! I thought to myself, “The old lady made all this happen; she made a big difference in my life.”

迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

Part 1 应用文写作

——论说文

○写作指导

论说文一般通过摆事实、讲道理、辨是非等方法,来树立或否定某种主张。论说文一般要做到逻辑严密,表达清晰,论证合理。其基本框架为:

1. 开头:提出观点或论点;
2. 主体:组织论据来论证自己的观点;
3. 结尾:总结自己的观点。

(一)论说文的论点

1. 观点正确:论说文的首要条件就是观点正确,观点错误将直接导致整篇文章的失败。
2. 中心论点要正确、鲜明、集中,不能含糊其词。尽量开门见山,不要迂回曲折,以便让读者能很快知道文章的中心议题。

(二)论说文的论据

论说文的论据要有充分的说服力,紧扣论点,具有典型性或代表性。

(三)论说文的常用论证方法

论说文的常用论证方法有举例论证、类比或对比论证、引用论证等。

1. 举例论证(用事例来说明主题)

(1)可用表示顺序的示意词来突出每个实例。

- ① first、second、third
- ② the first thing (point) is...、the second thing (point) is ...、the third thing (point) is...
- ③ first of all、also、finally
- ④ one、another、the last...

(2)以事物的重要性来排列顺序,可使文章层次清楚,重点突出。

- ① for one thing、also、the worst thing is...
- ② first of all、apart from that、the most important is...
- ③ for one thing、what's more、the most...
- ④ one important...、more importantly、the most important...
- ⑤ one problem、another problem、the most serious problem...

2. 类比或对比论证

类比通常是指对不同的人或事物之间的相同点进行分析;对比通常侧重分析两者之间的不同点或同一事物的利与弊。

○典题示例

读下面一则经典寓言故事《农夫与蛇》,并根据要求用英语写一篇论说文。

1. 你对这则寓言的理解;
2. 举例说明;
3. 总结并思考。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:伊索 Aesop;寓言 fable;邪恶的 evil

Once upon a time, on a cold winter day, a farmer who had gone home from the market found a snake on the roadside. He thought it was frozen and stiff (僵硬的), so he put it in his arms and let it wake up. The snake was frightened at first, and when it fully recovered, it instinctively bit the farmer and finally killed him. Before he died, the farmer regretted very much and said sadly, "I wanted to do something good, but because of my shallow knowledge, I got this kind of reward."

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	论说文
时态	一般现在时
人称	第一人称、第三人称
要点	1. 寓言故事梗概; 2. 写出论点,并进行论证; 3. 得出最终结论。

Step 2: 要点补全

- ① A farmer saved a frozen snake (救了一条冻僵的

蛇).

②The snake killed the farmer at last (最终杀死了农夫).

③Some people lied to their helpers, hurt them and got a lot of money from them (还要了他们好多钱).

④But on the other hand, some people in trouble died as a result of lack of timely help(由于缺乏及时的帮助).

⑤ To extend our helping hands is of great significance/importance (是非常重要的).

⑥But remember to help the people who are in real need (真正需要帮助的人). (定语从句)

Step 3: 句式升级

①将 Step 2 中的句①②合并为 which 引导的定语从句
A farmer saved a frozen snake, which killed the farmer in the end.

②用 it 作形式主语升级 Step 2 中的句⑤
It is of great significance/importance to lend our helping hands.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Of all the fables of Aesop, I am deeply impressed by The Farmer and the Snake. The fable goes like this: A farmer saved a frozen snake, which killed the farmer in the end.

Many of us may have the experience of being hurt by the people we ever helped. Some people lied to their helpers, hurt them and got a lot of money from them. But on the other hand, some people in trouble died due to lack of timely help.

It is of great significance to lend our helping

hands. But remember to help the people who are in real need.

○学以致用

根据下列寓言故事,结合生活实例,用英语写一篇 80 词左右的论说文。

烧炭人在一所房子里干活,当他看见有一个漂洗工搬到他的旁边来住时,便高兴地走上去劝漂洗工与自己同住,并解释说这样彼此亲密、更方便,还更省钱。漂洗工却回答说:“也许你说的是真话,但这完全不可能办到,因为凡是我所漂白的东西都将被你弄黑。”

参考词汇:烧炭人 a charcoal burner; 漂洗工 a fuller

【参考范文】

The fable describes a story about a charcoal burner and a fuller. The charcoal burner invited the fuller to live with him, but the fuller refused.

The fable teaches us that birds of a feather flock together. When we make friends with others, we should find those who have the same interests as we do. Only in this way will our friendship last. We are concerned about each other. Every time we need them, they won't let us down and try their best to help us out. When they find it's our fault, they are frank and point it out. So in our real life, while making friends, we should be careful.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

Last year, I spent my holiday in an unfamiliar neighbourhood in Lakewood, New Jersey. We rented a house so that some of our children and grandchildren could join us. Everyone in the area was super friendly, offering to come to introduce themselves to us and ensure that we would make full use of their hospitality, whether to borrow something or to send the kids to play in their yards. We were excited and impressed and immediately began to see if there were any houses for sale in the neighbourhood.

The house next door to us was particularly fascinating (to visit not to buy). In the yard, there was a tennis court, a swing set and various toys and games that were particularly popular with young children. The owners were also very friendly and invited the kids to come over and play.

They didn't have to be asked twice. They played for hours on end. While we relaxed in our yard, perhaps a little too comfortable, perhaps enjoying each other's company too much, perhaps forgetting that young children cannot be left too long without adults looking after them.

Apparently, a small fight broke out between the boy next door and one of my five-year-old grandsons. My ten-year-old grandson immediately jumped to his cousin's defense and pushed the other boy. At this point, the mother next door was forced to intervene (调停).

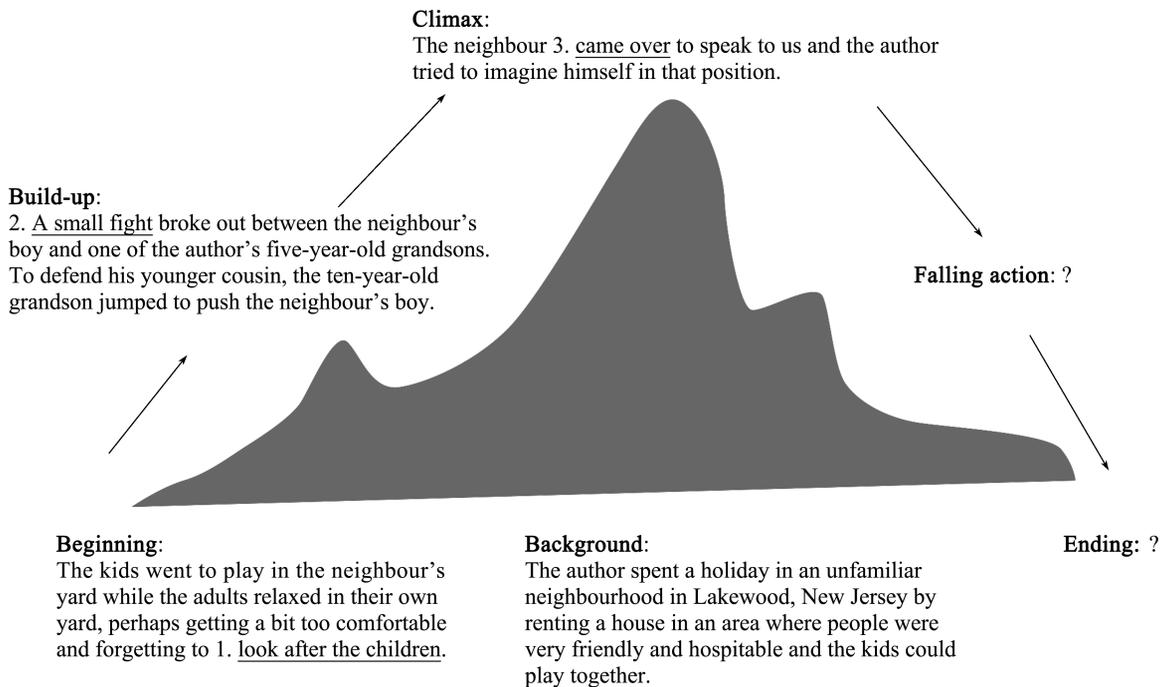
And the neighbour came over to speak to us. Then I tried to imagine myself, in that position, I imagined all sorts of negative and aggressive ways to deal with it—I would have been very angry and complained about the bad behaviour of these visiting children, and definitely sent them home.

任务一: 阅读文章, 回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

The article mainly talks about the author's holiday experience in an unfamiliar neighbourhood in Lakewood, New Jersey.

任务二: 梳理故事情节, 完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三: 回答下面的问题, 并根据段落开头提示语, 构思和完善故事发展情节。

<p>Paragraph 1:</p> <p>What she did was quite the opposite.</p> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. What was the woman's attitude during this situation? <u>She was kind, friendly and calm.</u> 2. What did the woman probably tell her boy? <u>She might tell her boy that the author's family were guests and should be respected and given special treatment.</u> 3. How was the relationship among the children after the incident? <u>They got along well as before.</u>
--	---

续表

<p>Paragraph 2:</p> <p>Honestly, I owed my thanks to the neighbour. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. Why did the author owe thanks to the neighbour?</p> <p><u>Because the neighbour's actions were big in the author's eyes. The neighbour not only kept the children happy but also taught the author an unforgettable lesson in dealing with relationships.</u></p> <p>2. What probably did the author learn from the neighbour?</p> <p><u>The author learned some good skills in getting along with others from the neighbour.</u></p> <p>3. What points of view does the author present?</p> <p><u>The author thinks that small and kind actions should be passed on to children and grandchildren.</u></p>
---	---

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

What she did was quite the opposite. She was so kind, friendly and calm. She spoke of their great pleasure in sharing the backyard, and of the necessity of monitoring our children's behaviour. She told her boy we were all their guests and that we should be respected and given special treatment; instead, as hosts, they were to blame. After that, these children got along well as before. The kids were immediately brought home but the next day they were welcomed to play.

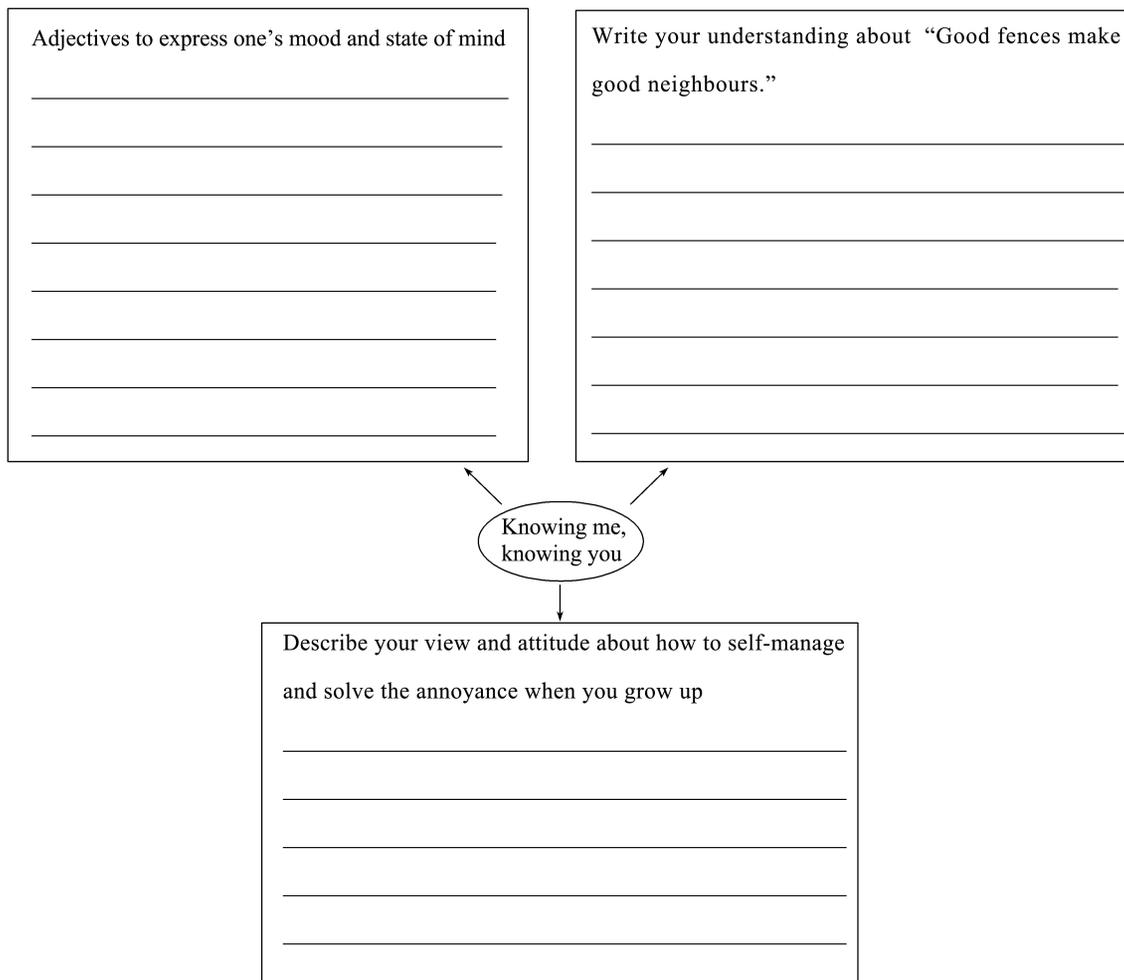
Honestly, I owed my thanks to the neighbour. Small as her actions may seem, they were big in our eyes. The neighbour not only kept all the children happy but also taught me an unforgettable lesson in dealing with relationships. From her, I learned some good skills in getting along with others. Small and kind actions can bring warmth to people. We should pass on these small and kind actions to our children and grandchildren.

★ ★ ★

重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。



答案:略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

The meaning of silence varies among cultural groups. Silences may be thoughtful, or they may be empty when a person has nothing to say. A silence in a conversation may also show stubbornness, uneasiness, or worry. Silence may be viewed by some cultural groups as extremely uncomfortable; therefore attempts may be made to fill every gap(间隙) with conversation. Persons in other cultural groups value silence and view it as necessary for understanding a person's needs.

Many native Americans value silence and feel it is a basic part of communicating among people, just as

some traditional Chinese and Thai people do. Therefore, when a person from one of these cultures is speaking and suddenly stops, what may be implied is that the person wants the listener to consider what has been said before continuing. In these cultures, silence is a call for reflection.

Other cultures may use silence in other ways, particularly when dealing with conflicts among people or in relationships of people with different amounts of power. For example, Russian, French, and Spanish people may use silence to show agreement between parties about the topic under discussion. However, Mexicans may use silence when instructions are given by a person in authority rather than be rude to that person by arguing with him or her. In still another use, people in Asian cultures may view silence as a sign of respect, particularly to an elder or a person in authority.

Nurses and other care-givers need to be aware of the possible meanings of silence when they come across the personal anxiety their patients may be experiencing. Nurses should recognise their own personal and cultural construction of silence so that a patient's silence is not interrupted too early or allowed to go on unnecessarily. A nurse who understands the healing(治愈) value of silence can use this understanding to assist in the care of patients from their own and from other cultures.

1. What does the author say about silence in conversations?

A. It implies anger.	B. It promotes friendship.
C. It is culture-specific.	D. It is content-based.
2. Which of the following people might regard silence as a call for careful thought?

A. The Chinese.	B. The French.
C. The Mexicans.	D. The Russians.
3. What does the author advise nurses to do about silence?

A. Let it continue as the patient pleases.
B. Break it while treating patients.
C. Evaluate its harm to patients.
D. Make use of its healing effects.

答案:1~3 CAD

单元质量评估(一)

I. 阅读理解

A

What's better than a video game that your kids can play over and over again? A membership to one of the many exciting places in Seattle that your kids can visit over and over again (for a year at least). Click to join us and read on for our top picks.

Woodland Park Zoo

Woodland Park Zoo was the most highly sought-after membership among families in the Seattle area, and for good reason: there's something for everyone! In addition to the hundreds of animals found throughout the 92 acres, there are plenty of outdoor spaces to run around (including playgrounds).

Annual Membership: \$69/Flexible Guest Adult; \$49/Named Adult; \$19/Child; Free for Children under 2

Point Defiance Zoo

Point Defiance Zoo is the only combined zoo and aquarium in the Pacific Northwest spread out over 29 acres. Your kids will enjoy getting up close and personal to the live sharks, riding a camel, and exploring the interactive Kids' Zone.

Annual Membership: \$124/Household; \$105/Two Adults; \$24/Child

Seattle Aquarium

The Aquarium is particularly great for any budding environmentalists in your family who want to learn more about conservation efforts that affect the waters in the Pacific Northwest.

Annual Membership: \$189/Family Plus (2 adults, 5 children, 1 guest); \$149/Family (2 adults, 5 children)

Museum of Flight

The museum is the perfect indoor place to free your kids to dream big about the wide world. With all sorts of planes that you can see, touch and climb inside, this museum fulfills your flying dreams.

Annual Membership: \$100/Family; \$75/Two Adults

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了西雅图地区适合家庭出行的游玩场所。

1. What do these places have in common?

- A. They are all in Seattle.
- B. Kids can see animals there.
- C. They all have outdoor activities.
- D. Members can get free admission.

A 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“A membership to one of the many exciting places in Seattle that your kids can visit over and over again (for a year at least).”可推知,这些地方都位于西雅图。故选 A。

2. Which place is favoured by aircraft lovers?

- A. Woodland Park Zoo.
- B. Point Defiance Zoo.
- C. Seattle Aquarium.
- D. Museum of Flight.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Museum of Flight** 中的“With all sorts of planes that you can see, touch and climb inside, this museum fulfills your flying dreams.”可知答案选 D。

3. How much does it cost for a family to visit Point Defiance Zoo?

- A. \$117. B. \$124. C. \$129. D. \$148.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Point Defiance Zoo** 中的“\$124/Household”可知,一家人的费用是 124 美元。故选 B。

B

You dash through a crowded railway station, tripping over bags, spilling (泼出) your coffee, only to have the doors slide shut in your face, leaving you breathless on the platform as the train pulls away.

But at least, if you're in France, someone may be playing the piano for you. But it won't be performed by a paid musician, or even a street entertainer playing for coins. It will just be a random passer-by, jamming for the fun of it on one of the pianos that the national railroad company, SNCF, has fixed in nearly 100 stations across France. They are free for anyone to play, and travellers from all walks of life have taken to doing just that.

Gares & Connexions, the SNCF division that manages its stations, and rents the instruments from the producer, Yamaha; which maintains them

and tunes them every month or two. The first one was set up in the Gare Montparnasse in Paris in 2012.

The music, mixed with the sounds of shouting passengers, screaming trains and rolling suitcases, gives French stations a special soundscape. The amateur musicians have included Irish soccer fans and even babies. In 2014, Gares & Connexions and Yamaha organised a nationwide contest called Your Turn to Play, asking participants to submit videos of themselves using one of the pianos. It drew nearly 900 entries.

Isn't the railroad company taking a big chance? Apparently not: "None of the instruments has been vandalised to this day, or even merely damaged," said Claire Foumon, a spokeswoman for Gares & Connexions. "They are shared and respected by all."

So if you miss a train in Paris, Bordeaux or Marseille one day, perhaps someone will be playing a favourite piece that will ease your pain. Or perhaps you'll sit down and play your annoyance away yourself.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇新闻报道。文章讲述了一家法国铁路公司与雅马哈合作,在法国的一百多个火车站放置钢琴,供旅客弹奏,让旅客的心情得以放松。这一创意收到良好的效果。

4. Why did Gares & Connexions fix pianos in railway stations?
- A. To advertise Yamaha's products.
B. To make stations more attractive.
C. To let travellers have a relaxing trip.
D. To help street artists make a living.
- C 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知,旅客乘车都是很匆忙的,再结合第二段中的"It will just be a random passer-by, jamming for the fun of it on one of the pianos that the national railroad company, SNCF, has fixed in nearly 100 stations across France."可知,任何一个行人,都可以为了取乐用放置在火车站的钢琴演奏,因此,铁路公司这么做是为了让旅客的心情得以放松。故选 C。
5. What does Paragraph 4 mainly tell us?
- A. The contest has proved a hit.
B. The pianos are very popular.
C. Railway stations are crowded.
D. Everyone can be an amateur musician.

B 段落大意题。根据第四段中的"The amateur musicians have included Irish soccer fans and even babies."以及"It drew nearly 900 entries."可知,人们很喜欢放置在火车站的钢琴,很多人都去弹过,同时举办的“轮到你演奏了”的比赛也很受欢迎。由此可知,大家很喜欢这个创意,都愿意展示音乐方面的才能。故选 B。

6. What does the underlined word "vandalised" in Paragraph 5 probably mean?
- A. Selected carefully.
B. Checked regularly.
C. Reserved in advance.
D. Destroyed on purpose.
- D 词义猜测题。根据本句中的"None of the instruments"以及"or even merely damaged"可知,没有一架钢琴受损;由"They are shared and respected by all."可推知,人们很爱惜钢琴,也不据为己有。通过前后句的逻辑关系可知,钢琴没有被他人损坏。故选 D。
7. What would be the best title for the text?
- A. Miss a Train Yet Catch a Tune
B. A Soundscape in the Memory
C. The Role of Piano in French Life
D. An Amazing Train with a Piano Bar
- A 标题归纳题。根据第一段的内容可知,乘客在乘车时总是很匆忙,很多人也会错过火车。铁路公司通过在车站放置钢琴供旅客演奏和倾听,让旅客的心情得以放松,受到游客的欢迎。故选 A。

C

The United States of America faces with serious traffic problems. Too many cars travel on the freeways to and from the city. This heavy traffic causes delays and lots of pollution from cars that are using their engines but not moving anywhere. Many cars going nowhere is called a "traffic jam".

While many cities in the United States have traffic problems, some of the worst are in Los Angeles, California, which is a big city with a large downtown area. One of the reasons why there is so much traffic is that few people use public transportation to get around.

Experts say one possible solution to the traffic problems in Los Angeles would be to make people want to use the public transportation system of buses instead of their own cars. People say the buses

should be made easier, faster, less costly and more dependable than driving a car.

One suggestion is to reduce the cost of taking the bus. Also, Los Angeles could make the buses easier for people to use. The buses could travel to more places in the city. And there could be more special lanes on the freeways that only buses could drive on. These changes would make taking the bus faster and easier than driving a car.

Other experts have said that the best way to ease traffic problems is to charge people money to drive on the freeways. These charges, or tolls, would be for the most crowded roads. The tolls would be in effect during the times of a day when most people drive to work and home. These times in the morning and late afternoon are called “rush hour”. People would try to avoid driving on these roads, which would decrease the amount of traffic. Also, the money collected from these tolls could be used to improve the roads and public transportation system.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了专家就洛杉矶的交通问题提出的几种解决方法。

8. What does the passage mainly discuss?

- A. Money charged when driving cars.
- B. Causes of the heavy traffic jams.
- C. Reasons to take public transportation.
- D. Solutions to solving traffic problems.

D 主旨大意题。本文主要介绍了美国针对交通问题应该采取的措施。故选 D。

9. Why does Los Angeles have some of the worst traffic problems?

- A. Because it is a very big city with a large population.
- B. Because most people like to get around by car.
- C. Because public transportation is very popular there.
- D. Because there are not enough roads there.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“one of the reasons why there is so much traffic is that few people use public transportation to get around.”可知,洛杉矶很少有人愿意乘坐公共交通工具,大多开私家车出门。故选 B。

10. What do people hope by marking out more special lanes on the freeways?

- A. Buses can travel to more places in the city.
- B. Private cars can run much faster on them.
- C. Buses seldom get stuck in traffic jams.
- D. Passengers can get on and off the buses easily.

C 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“and there could be more special lanes on the freeways that only buses could drive on. These changes would make taking the bus faster and easier than driving a car.”可知,人们希望高速公路的公交专用通道可以使得公共汽车不再陷入交通拥堵中。故选 C。

11. What would happen if people were charged on the most crowded roads at “rush hour”?

- A. Less air pollution would be produced.
- B. There would be no traffic jam.
- C. The freeways would be more crowded.
- D. The number of cars on them would be smaller.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“people would try to avoid driving on these roads, which would decrease the amount of traffic.”可知,如果“交通高峰期”最拥挤的道路上要收费,人们会尽量避免在这些路上开车,这会减少交通流量。故选 D。

D

Have you heard about “Survival Holidays”? It is for children to go into the remote place for exciting activities. Now about 1,100 companies are allowed to take children into the great outdoors without their parents.

The reason why people like “Survival Holidays” is that they think being close to nature is good for children. Many children in big cities spend all their time watching TV and playing computer games. “Survival Holidays” gives them an important change.

Is “Survival Holidays” a wonderful idea? Maybe it is. Children need more free time to play. They need to be left on their own, without adults disturbing (干扰) them. Parents care too much about their children. They like to see the children busy with activities that are controlled (控制) by adults, which causes many problems. Children don't know what to do when they are in danger. Even

something like crossing a small river seems to be a hard challenge. Children are not comfortable with danger. Even slight danger like getting their feet wet or falling down seems very terrible to them.

Many people think the survival activities are good for children. Even years later, they will still remember what they have learned. Some have learned to stay calm in dangerous times. Some have learned how to keep safe. Others have learned how to work in a team. All these skills will help them a lot in their lives.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了“生存假日”是孩子们接近自然、培养生存能力的活动。通过活动孩子们学会了在危险的时刻保持冷静,学会了如何保证安全,学会了如何在一个团队里合作,家长们也很认同这个活动。

12. What is “Survival Holidays” according to the passage?

- A. Summer holidays.
- B. Winter holidays.
- C. Holidays to escape from danger.
- D. Holidays to go into the place for exciting activities.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“*It is for children to go into the remote place for exciting activities.*”可知,“生存假日”是一个去偏远的地方进行令人兴奋的活动的假期。故选 D。

13. Which children may take part in “Survival Holidays”?

- A. Poor children.
- B. Rich children.
- C. Children from cities.
- D. Children from the countryside.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“*Many children in big cities spend all their time watching TV and playing computer games. ‘Survival Holidays’ gives them an important change.*”可知,来自城市的孩子可能会参加这个活动。故选 C。

14. What’s the main idea of the last paragraph?

- A. The reasons people dislike “Survival Holidays”.
- B. The advantages of “Survival Holidays”.
- C. The disadvantages of “Survival Holidays”.
- D. The suggestions of taking part in “Survival Holidays”.

B 段落大意题。根据最后一段中的“*Many people think the survival activities are good for children.*”可知,本段主要介绍了“生存假日”的优点。故选 B。

15. Which of the statements can children learn in “Survival Holidays”?

- A. How to get good grades.
- B. How to stay calm in dangerous times.
- C. How to ask for help when they meet danger.
- D. How to meet new friends in a team.

B 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“*Some have learned to stay calm in dangerous times.*”可知,孩子们能在“生存假日”学到如何在危险时刻保持镇静。故选 B。

II. 七选五

I thought business cards had gone out of fashion in the digital age, but I was wrong. I attended a conference recently, and everywhere I looked I saw people exchanging contact details with small cards.

It makes you relieved to know that your new acquaintance (认识的人) has a lasting record of you—rather than having to rely on their memory.

16 And if someone doesn’t take your card, there’s little hope of them knowing your name beyond this conversation. 17

- Be interested in them. It’s a great way to make people willing to be receptive. If they’ve got an unusual name, ask them about it. Without even realising, they’ll be automatically more interested in who you are.

- 18 When they realise that you know them, they’ll feel it’s even more important to remember you.

- Keep them focused. Distractions are the enemy of recall, so try not to do anything else while you introduce yourself. 19 Otherwise that thought process will replace your name in their short-term memory.

- Remind them to practise. Retrieving (检索) information is a powerful way to implant it in the brain. 20 And if you leave enough of a gap for them to try a little to recall who you are, you’ll have the greatest impact on their memory long term.

- A. Write their names on your card.
- B. Repeat their names in conversation.

- C. How to find a way to remember your name is a big problem.
- D. And don't ask them something difficult immediately afterwards.
- E. After all, remembering names is one of the hardest learning tasks of all.
- F. However, there are some easy ways to impress your name on their brain.
- G. So connect with the person again after your meeting—with a follow-up email, for example.

答案:16~20 EFBGD

III. 完形填空

Jack, my boss, was picky and distant. Once he scolded me for something, I thought I was paid to do. I 21 into his office, prepared to lose my job if needed, but not before I let the man know how I felt. I opened the door and he glanced up. "What?" he asked 22.

Suddenly I knew what I had to do. I sat across from him and said calmly, "Jack, the way you've been treating me is totally 23. I've never had anyone speak to me that way. And I have decided that I can't allow it to 24. Now I want to make a 25 to you. I will be a friend," I said. "I will treat you 26 you deserve to be treated, with respect and kindness." I slipped out of the chair and closed the door behind me.

Another day I left a note. "Hope your day is going great," it 27. Over the next few weeks, there were no other 28 between us. Every time I saw Jack in the hall, I 29 at him. After all, that's what friends do.

One year after our "talk", I had breast cancer. The statistics were not great for my long-term 30. Friends and loved ones visited me and tried to find the 31 words. No one knew what to say. One day, Jack walked over to my bed in the hospital room and without a word 32 a package beside me. Inside it lay several bulbs (鳞茎).

"Tulips (郁金香)," he said.

He shuffled his feet, and then cleared his throat. "If you plant them when you get home, they'll 33 next spring. I just want you to know that I think you'll be there to see them grow up."

Tears 34 my eyes, and I reached out my

hand. "Thank you," I whispered.

For ten years, I have watched those tulips push their way 35 the soil every spring. In a moment when I prayed for just the right word, a man with very few words said all the right things. After all, that's what friends do.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了“我”和“我”那个挑剔并且有距离感的老板 Jack 成为朋友的故事。

21. A. stormed B. jumped
C. knocked D. fell

A 根据上文的 "Once he scolded me for something, I thought I was paid to do." 可知, Jack 责备了“我”,由此可推断出,那时“我”很生气。故选 A。

22. A. warmly B. worriedly C. coldly D. eagerly
C 根据上文的 "Jack, my boss, was picky and distant." 可知, Jack 很挑剔而且和人保持距离,由此推断出,他说话的时候很冷酷。故选 C。

23. A. strange B. unexpected
C. suitable D. wrong

D 根据下文的 "I've never had anyone speak to me that way." 可知,从来没有人那样对待过“我”,由此推断出,“我”受到了错误的对待。故选 D。

24. A. appear B. change
C. continue D. stop

C 根据上文的 "I sat across from him and said calmly, 'Jack, the way you've been treating me is totally 23.'" 可知,“我”被错误地对待,由此推断出,“我”不想让这种错误继续发生。故选 C。

25. A. trouble B. promise
C. schedule D. wish

B 根据下文的 "I will treat you 26 you deserve to be treated, with respect and kindness." 可知,这是“我”对 Jack 许下的诺言,就是对他尊重和友善。故选 B。

26. A. if B. when C. though D. as

D 根据上文的 "I will be a friend" 可知,“我”希望和 Jack 做朋友,由此推断出,朋友之间值得被好好对待。故选 D。

27. A. read B. wrote
C. told D. expressed

A 根据上文的 "Another day I left a note." 并结合常识可知,表示便条上写着字应该用动词 read。

故选 A。

28. A. experiences B. arguments
C. opportunities D. meetings

B 根据上文的“Once he scolded me for something, I thought I was paid to do.”可知,“我”曾经和 Jack 发生过争吵,由此推断出,在做朋友之后两个人不再争吵了。故选 B。

29. A. called B. smiled
C. pointed D. shouted

B 根据上文的“I will treat you 26 you deserve to be treated, with respect and kindness.”可知,朋友之间要彼此尊重和相互善待,由此推断出,“我”在见到 Jack 的时候会微笑。故选 B。

30. A. growth B. response C. survival D. care

C 根据下文的“Friends and loved ones visited me and tried to find the 31 words.”可知,朋友和爱人对于“我”的病情无言以对,由此推断出,“我”的生存并不乐观。故选 C。

31. A. rude B. romantic
C. awkward D. right

D 根据下文的“No one knew what to say.”可知,没有人知道该说什么,由此推断出,大家不知道说什么合适。故选 D。

32. A. tied B. hid C. placed D. handed

C 根据语境可知,“我”是躺在床上的,由此推断出,包裹应该是放在“我”身边的。故选 C。

33. A. break out B. come up
C. take off D. fade away

B 根据下文的“For ten years, I have watched those tulips push their way 35 the soil every spring.”可知,郁金香在每年春天破土而出,也就意味着发芽。故选 B。

34. A. clouded B. darkened
C. damaged D. cured

A 根据下文的“‘Thank you,’ I whispered.”可知,“我”感谢 Jack,由此推断出,当时是感激的泪水模糊了“我”的双眼。故选 A。

35. A. in B. under C. on D. through

D 根据上文的“If you plant them when you get home, they’ll 33 next spring.”可知,郁金香在春天发芽,即破土而出,through 有“穿过”的意思,符合语境。故选 D。

IV. 语法填空

When two cultures come together, the words of

36. their (they) languages compete for survival. We can see this taking place early on in the history of English, following the Danish invasions of Britain. The Danes spoke a language known 37. as Old Norse, and this had many words 38. which/that had a related form in Old English. What would people end up 39. saying (say)? Would the Danish settlers use the Old English words? Or would the Anglo-Saxons use the Old Norse ones?

40. Actually (actual), the Old English and Old Norse words both survived, because people gave them 41. different (difference) meanings. This is what happened to “skirt” and “shirt”.

“Shirt” is found sometimes in late Old English (spelled “scurte”), with the meaning of a short garment (衣服) worn by both men 42. and women. “Skirt”, from Old Norse, is known from the 1300s, and seems to have been used mainly for a woman’s garment—the lower part of a dress. But the word could also 43. be used (use) for the lower part of a man’s robe or coat too.

During the Middle English period, “shirt” 44. became (become) increasingly used only for a man’s garment, and “skirt” for a woman’s. Today, women’s clothes include shirts, and skirts are normal wear for men in many 45. countries (country). Clothing such as the T-shirt is gender-neutral (不分性别的).

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假设你是新华中学的学生李华,本来你和在上海上学的英国朋友 Tom 约好下周末去北京旅游,但你因故不能赴约。请你根据以下要点用英语给他写一封 80 词左右的电子邮件:

1. 表示歉意;
2. 解释原因;
3. 另约时间。

【参考范文】

Dear Tom,

I am indeed very sorry that I can’t go to Beijing with you next weekend, which I have promised. I feel badly sorry about it and want you to know what happened.

Just now, my cousin, Li Qiong, who left home to Australia for his further study last year, informed

me that he would return next Saturday morning and asked me to pick him up at the airport. You know, we haven't seen each other for almost a year.

I sincerely hope you can accept my apology and understand my situation. I would appreciate it if you could allow me to make another date to show you around Beijing. Once again, I'm sorry for any inconvenience caused.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

It was time to go home. "Remember to work on your class speeches for homework," Miss Walker called, as everyone started talking and packing their schoolbags. Jenny felt sick. She hated having to read aloud in class. She was sure everyone got really bored listening to her. Once, when Jenny was reading out her holiday diary, Lee was even looking at his watch, a silver and blue one which seemed just magical.

Jenny watched Lee walk ahead of her as they left school. He seemed so clever, and he had a certain sort of shining confidence. He was just one of those people who were good at everything. Jenny sighed. As she turned the corner, she saw Lee's watch lying right in the middle of the path.

Jenny knew she should just pick it up and return it to him, but she didn't want to run after him. Jenny bent down quickly, picked up the watch and ran home. On arriving home, Jenny put it on almost without thinking. She was surprised it fitted so well. She walked to the mirror and started practising her speech. Words just flooded out of her. "I'm going to talk about swimming. I have been lucky. I've won lots of competitions. But when I'm in a race, I'm not really thinking about winning. I'm

just loving the feeling of being in the water..." Jenny laughed with excitement. She walked across the room. She suddenly seemed to have a certain sort of confidence. Turning back to the mirror, Jenny saw a flash of light from the watch in the glass. The flashes of silver seemed almost magical. So maybe Lee's watch really did have something magic about it.

The next day, as the lesson began, Miss Walker asked who was going to be brave and go first. Nobody moved. Jenny slowly raised her arm. Before Miss Walker could say anything, there was a shout from behind. "She's stolen my watch!" Lee said angrily. "It went missing at school yesterday."

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

Everybody was staring at Jenny, waiting for an explanation. Jenny didn't answer. How could she explain about the watch and its magic? No one could understand. No one could believe. "But I saw you wearing it yesterday," Miss Walker gently reminded him. For a moment Lee remained silent and then he apologised he had just remembered that. Jenny was relieved and said she had found it on the way home and decided to return it after the speech. Everybody was puzzled and asked why. Jenny was speechless again.

At that moment, Miss Walker smiled and asked the class to listen to Jenny's speech first. Jenny walked slowly to the front of the classroom. She couldn't think properly. All round her, a sea of faces was watching. She felt so frightened and the watch didn't seem magical at all. Suddenly she saw Miss Walker's encouraging eyes. Jenny took a deep breath. "I'm going to talk about swimming..." Ten minutes later the whole class stood up applauding Jenny's wonderful speech. Jenny smiled as she eventually realised the real source of confidence.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and society, whose topic is good conduct and social responsibility. This unit starts with the introduction of the helping theme day and outstanding figures at home and abroad. By telling the outstanding deeds of several outstanding figures and the public welfare undertakings they engage in, it can enrich students' understanding of excellent conduct, guide students to have a deep understanding of the noble character and power of ordinary people at home and abroad to help others, and finally form an active attitude to participate in voluntary service activities.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与“优秀品行与社会责任感”主题相关的单词和词块来理解和表达。
		语法	熟练运用过去分词(短语)作定语。
		语篇	综合运用各种语言技能,读懂语篇内容,挖掘深层次信息。
		语用	通过在真实语境下的综合技能训练,加深对单元主题意义的理解,提高语言综合运用能力。
	语言技能	听	听懂并能独立进行电话咨询,丰富对志愿服务活动的认识。
		说	能使用新学的语言点描述人物品行。
		读	能围绕本单元的主题语境内容,基于单元提供的个人故事、人物传记、电话咨询、个人简历等多模态语篇,综合运用各种语言技能,读懂语篇内容。
		写	能恰当使用过去分词(短语)作定语描述人物的事迹,撰写人物介绍,探究不同文化在助人为乐方面的共通之处,深化对单元主题意义的理解。
学习能力	通过运用各种学习策略,在自主、合作与探究式学习的过程中,结合单元所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程,提高自己的理解和表达能力,最终促进自身语言能力、学习能力、文化意识和思维品质的综合提升。		

核心素养	具体要求
文化意识	能深入了解国内外普通人乐于助人、与人为善的高尚品格和优秀品行的力量,了解志愿者服务的情况,并最终形成积极参与志愿服务活动的意识。
思维品质	能运用单元所学知识评价人物对社会的贡献,分享自己的志愿服务经历,培养关爱他人的人生态度,树立为社会服务的意识,形成正确的人生态度和价值观。

◦ 必备知识

必背单词	contribution, relief, shortage, internal, effective, fund, recycle, fountain, earn, donate, foundation, insight, reality, extend, mission, disease, disability, territory, sensitive, generous, hesitate, cancer, royal, institution, assistance, registration, confirmation, aid, temporary, military, achievement, chief, major, treatment, obtain, drug, certificate, ministry, further
重点表达	look across, earn money, turn out, make a difference, set up, break into a smile, benefit from, make one's dream a reality, transport... to safety, keep records of, at one point, rise to one's feet, bring... to public attention, pass away
重点知识	1. the+比较级..., the+比较级... 2. make+宾语+宾语补足语 3. by+表示过去某一时间的短语
单元语法	过去分词(短语)作定语
单元写作	人物传记

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas — Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Understand the video and learn the good deeds shown in it.
2. Read the text and choose the best explanation of the title.
3. Improve critical thinking skills and comprehend the unit's theme.

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. contribution *n.* 贡献
2. relief *n.* 减轻, 缓解
3. effective *adj.* 有效的, 产生预期效果的
4. earn *v.* 挣(钱)
5. donate *v.* 捐赠, 捐献
6. fund *v.* 为……提供资金, 资助
7. recycle *v.* 再利用, 回收利用
8. shortage *n.* 短缺, 不足, 缺乏
9. reality *n.* 真实, 现实
10. benefit from... 从……中受益
11. earn money 赚钱

12. turn out 出现; 结果是

13. make a difference 起作用; 有影响

14. set up 建立; 设立

(二) 阅读词汇

1. fountain *n.* 喷水池

2. foundation *n.* 基金会

3. insight *n.* 顿悟, 猛醒

4. perseverance *n.* 不屈不挠, 坚持不懈

5. internal *adj.* 内部的

6. drinking fountain 喷泉式饮水器

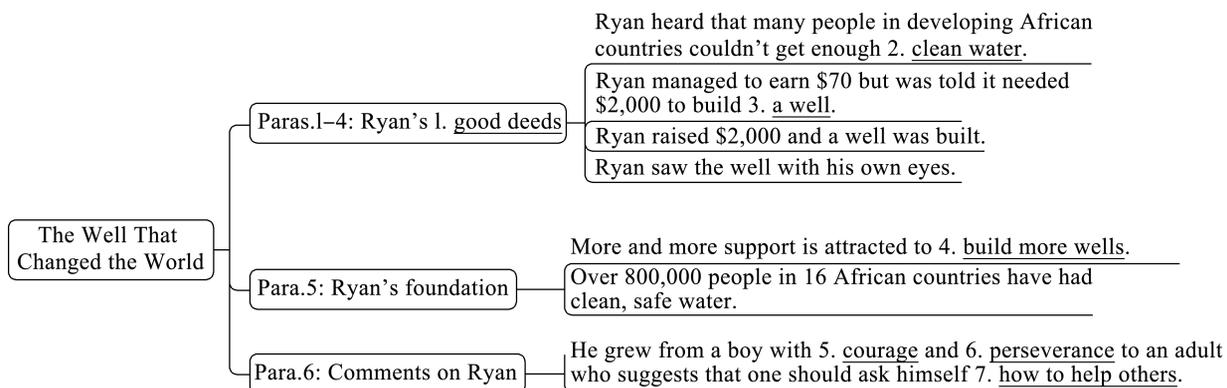
7. look across 向对面看

8. make one's dream a reality 使梦想成真

任务型课堂

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- What was wrong with the water in some developing African countries?
 - The countries were too dry to have enough water.
 - The wells were too far away and the water was dirty.
 - People didn't want to walk to fetch water.
 - People used too much water and polluted it.
- How did Ryan earn money at first?
 - He asked his parents for money.
 - He earned money by selling his toys.
 - He earned money by doing some housework.
 - He earned money by cleaning windows in the classroom.
- How much money should Ryan raise if he wants to build two wells in Africa?
 - \$ 75.
 - \$ 150.
 - \$ 2,000.
 - \$ 4,000.
- Which of the following words can best describe Ryan?
 - Rich and clever.
 - Brave and creative.
 - Clever and hard-working.
 - Determined and helpful.

答案:1~4 BCDD

○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- As a six-year-old Canadian schoolboy, Ryan had trouble believing the words spoken by his teacher that many people in developing African countries couldn't get enough clean water.
 [句子分析]本句是一个复合句。Ryan had trouble believing the words 是主句; spoken by his teacher 是过去分词短语作后置定语,修饰 words; that 引导同位语从句,说明 words 的具体内容。
 [尝试翻译] 年仅六岁的加拿大小学生瑞安很难相信老师所说的话——在非洲发展中国家,许多人都喝不到足够的干净的水。
- He soon reached his first target of \$70, but when he gave the money to a charity, he was told that it actually cost \$2,000 to build a well.
 [句子分析]本句是一个由 but 连接的并列复合句。第二个分句中 when 引导时间状语从句; that 引导宾语从句。
 [尝试翻译] 他很快就达到了他的第一个目标——70美元。但是当他把这笔钱捐给慈善机构的时候,他才得知挖一口井实际上需要花费2 000美元。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- What inspired the Canadian boy to help?
 His teacher's introduction.
- As a senior high school student, what can you do to help people in need?

答案:略

Unit 2 课后素养评价 (五)

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

I. 阅读理解

My fitness journey started when I couldn't fit into my coats and weighed 176 pounds. This was my wake-up call. I was overweight, unhappy, and struggling to get back to health and happiness. I needed to be healthy again, so I decided to lose weight and regain control of my life.

I started working out and lost 40 pounds in two months. I was 33 with two kids. My journey started but I had much more to do. I ran marathons but

grew bored with them, so I stepped up the challenge and competed in triathlons (铁人三项) for the next five years. I thought I discovered my passion. I'm a fierce competitor and enjoy racing even more.

At 38, I was unable to compete and train at the level I desired. I was fearful of being lost and unhappy again. As I was leaving the weights area one day, a girl asked if I competed in bodybuilding. I told her I didn't and she said I should. This was the start of my new passion. I approached a bodybuilder

at the gym and asked him about the sport and he convinced me to train for my first figure show.

I won every class I entered. I demanded a great deal from my body and aimed to improve before every competition. I maintained 10—11 percent body fat all year round. I have added 10 pounds of muscle in the past four years.

Women over 40 need to know that it's possible to achieve our dreams. It's about choices. Age isn't a factor. If you want it, you have to work for it. If it were handed to you, it wouldn't be sweet or unique.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者的健身之旅。

- What was the author worried about when she was 38?
 - Her weight.
 - Her career.
 - Her role as a mother.
 - Her being unhappy.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“*At 38, I was unable to compete and train at the level I desired. I was fearful of being lost and unhappy again.*”可知,作者38岁时担心的是不快乐。故选D。
- Who advised the author to compete in bodybuilding?
 - A coach.
 - A girl.
 - Her husband.
 - Her kids.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“*As I was leaving the weights area one day, a girl asked if I competed in bodybuilding. I told her I didn't and she said I should.*”可知,是一个女孩建议作者参加健美比赛。故选B。
- Which of the following can best describe the author?
 - Strong-willed.
 - Humorous.
 - Generous.
 - Creative.

A 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“*I ran marathons but grew bored of them, so I stepped up the challenge and competed in triathlons (铁人三项) for the next five years.*”以及倒数第二段中的“*I demanded a great deal from my body and aimed to improve before every competition. I maintained 10—11 percent body fat all year round. I have added 10 pounds of muscle in the past four years.*”可知,作者跑马拉松、参加铁人三项,以及全年都保持着10%至11%的体脂率,这些都需要坚强的意志才能做到,所以作者是意志坚强的。故选A。
- What is the text mainly about?
 - The author's hobbies.
 - Ways to lose weight and be healthy.

C. The author's ways to fitness and happiness.

D. The importance of exercise after 40 for women.

C 主旨大意题。根据第一段以及最后一段并结合全文可知,作者因为不快乐从而通过锻炼让自己快乐。作者认为实现梦想会让自己快乐,所以本文主要讲述了作者获得健康和幸福的方法。故选C。

II. 七选五

How to Have a Successful Teenage Life

As a teenager, you can achieve success in your life; it really isn't hard. 1.

• Do well in school

No matter how boring it is now, education will help you be a productive member of society. Try your best for excellence in school: listen to your teachers, do your homework, study hard, and get good grades. Doing so will help you get into a better university, which will enable you to have a bright future. 2!

• Do well in your community

Volunteering can not only improve your community, but it can make you happier. Studies show that people who volunteer are less likely to develop depression (抑郁) than people who don't. 3. For example, if you love animals, volunteer at an animal shelter. If you love helping the environment, plant trees or pick up litter. When you help others, it will make you feel better about yourself.

• 4

Remember, they're there to help you be the best that you can be. Respect them and value their opinions, even if they annoy you sometimes. 5. You don't get to choose your teachers or your family, but you still have to get along with them. Learn how to deal with people now, because when you're an adult, you don't get to choose your boss or your co-workers, so learn how to respect them now.

These points can help you enjoy success in your teenage life.

- Live life to the fullest
- Schools set you up on the right track
- Be nice to your parents and teachers
- Find chances to do voluntary work that interests you
- It will help you pass time and develop your personality
- Here are some important points that you may find helpful
- Keep in mind that they do the things because they care about you

答案:1~5 FBDCG

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. contribution n. 贡献; 捐款; 投稿

[教材原文] the **contribution** these people made to society

这些人对社会做出的贡献

[归纳拓展]

(1) make a contribution to 对……做出贡献

(2) contribute v. 是……的原因之一; 捐赠, 捐献
contribute... to... 把……捐献给……; 给……投/撰……(稿)

contribute to 为……做出贡献; 有助于, 增进; 导致; 给……投稿

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① His bad eating habits might have contributed to his heart disease.

② He made a very positive contribution (contribute) to the success of the project.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之投稿) 作为山水田园诗人, 孟浩然和王维都对中国古典诗歌做出了巨大贡献。

As pastoral poets, both Meng Haoran and Wang Wei made great contributions to the Chinese classical poetry.

2. relief n. 减轻, 缓解

[教材原文] The amount of **relief** and comfort experienced by the sick after the skin has been carefully washed and dried, is one of the commonest observations made at a sick bed.

经过仔细清洗并擦干皮肤后, 病人的不适感会得到显著缓解, 并感到非常舒适。这是在病床边经常能看到的情况。

[归纳拓展]

(1) to one's relief 令某人欣慰的是
in relief 轻松地

It is a relief to do sth. 做某事很放心/舒心。

(2) relieve v. (疼痛/问题)减轻, 缓解
relieve sb. of... 减轻某人……的负担

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① It was a relief to know (know) their son finally came back safe and sound.

② Many people smiled in relief as the last of the

children hurried out of the door.

③ To our relief, the disease didn't burst out as expected.

④ Her father decided to take her on a trip at the weekend for the purpose of helping her relieve the pressure of study.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之告知信) 你对你的新家很满意, **真让人松了口气!**

What a relief that you're happy with your new home!

② (应用文写作之报道) **让人们感到欣慰的是**, 暴风雨很快就过去了, 没有造成太大的破坏。

To people's relief, the storm passed quickly without causing much damage.

3. shortage n. 短缺, 不足, 缺乏

[教材原文] Read the passage and find out what Ryan did to help solve the problem of water **shortage** in Africa.

阅读这篇文章, 找出瑞安为帮助解决非洲缺水问题做了什么。

[归纳拓展]

(1) short adj. 短的; 短缺的, 紧俏的

be short for 是……的缩写/简称

be short of 缺少, 缺乏

for short 简称; 缩写为

in short 总之, 简言之

to be short 简单地说

(2) shorten v. (使)变短; 缩短

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① —What does the IOC mean?

—It is short for the International Olympic Committee.

② The company is short of skilled workers.

③ In short, everyone should take part in the fight against the haze.

④ (2024·浙江1月卷) According to paragraph 3, there is a mismatch between the shortage (short) of sugar and our nutritional needs.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之告知信) 他们试图通过修建一条新

的高速公路来缩短两座城市之间的距离。

They tried to shorten the distance between the two cities by building a new highway.

4. effective *adj.* 有效的, 产生预期效果的

[教材原文] Now tick the solutions that you think are most **effective** to supply Africa with fresh water.

现在勾选你认为为非洲提供淡水最有效的解决方案。

[归纳拓展]

effect *n.* 影响; 效果, 作用

have an effect on 对……有影响

bring/carry/put... into effect 使……实施/生效

come into effect = take effect 开始生效, 开始实施

in effect = in fact/in reality 事实上, 实际上

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① The new rules should be put into effect as soon as possible.

② (2023 · 新课标 II 卷) Besides, working in the garden seems to have a calming effect on Jaramillo's special education students, many of whom have emotional control issues.

③ (2024 · 新课标 I 卷) And are listening to and viewing content as effective (effect) as reading the written word when covering the same material?

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之倡议书) 在新法律生效之前, 我希望我们能采取一些有效措施来保护这些动物。

Before the new law comes into effect/takes effect, I hope we can take some effective measures to protect these animals.

5. the + 比较级..., the + 比较级...

[教材原文] **The more** wells you dig, **the better** the world will be.

你挖的井越多, 世界就会越好。

[句式分析] 本句中“The more..., the better...”为“the + 比较级..., the + 比较级...”句型, 意为“越……, 越……”, 表示后者随着前者的变化而变化。

[归纳拓展]

(1) “the + 比较级 (+ 主语 + 谓语), the + 比较级 (+ 主语 + 谓语)”结构表示“……越……, ……就越……”, 是一个复合句, 其中前面的句子相当于条

件状语从句, 后面的句子是主句。若主句的谓语动词用一般将来时, 从句的谓语动词要用一般现在时表示将来。这种句型有时可构成省略。

(2) “比较级 + and + 比较级”或“more and more/less and less + 原级”意为“越来越……”, 表示本身程度的变化。

(3) “the more..., the less...”意为“越……, 越不……”。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① The busier he is, the happier (happy) he feels.

② The more careful you are, the fewer mistakes you will make (make).

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之建议信) **你工作越努力, 你取得的进步就越大。**

The harder you work, the greater progress you will make.

② (应用文写作之建议信) 我们相信**我们付出的努力越多, 我们取得的结果就会越好。**

We believe that the more efforts we make, the better results we will achieve.

③ (读后续写之情节描写) 我们越相互理解, **我们的关系就会越好。**

The more we understand each other, the better our relationship will be.

多义词汇 专练

foundation A. *n.* 地基 B. *n.* 根据; 基础
C. *n.* 基金会 D. *n.* (机构或组织的) 创建, 创办
E. *n.* 粉底霜

① Use **foundation** and/or face powder afterwards for an even skin tone. E

② The builders are now beginning to lay the **foundations** of the new school. A

③ Respect and friendship provide a solid **foundation** for marriage. B

④ The money will go to the San Francisco AIDS **Foundation**. C

⑤ The organisation has grown enormously since its **foundation** in 1955. D

Unit 2 课后素养评价(六)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 语法填空

1. Yuan Longping made great contributions (contribute) to our country and his achievements are worthy of the highest praise.
2. In the past few months, many actors have donated (donate) much money to Jiuzhaigou Valley.
3. But despite the same goal, I think we might differ on our view of the reality (real) we face.
4. There is no shortage (short) of funds.
5. The number of them is less than 1,000, so I hope you can take some effective (effect) measures to protect them.
6. A large number of buildings broke down in the earthquake.
7. It is obvious that China can make a difference in the world today and tomorrow.
8. In this painting, Picasso showed his feelings about what had happened to the town.
9. Many foreigners have trouble getting (get) accustomed to it.
10. This is the man from whom I learned about the news.

II. 短语填空

make a difference; earn money; set up; break into a smile; turn out; benefit from

1. The parents broke into a smile when they heard their son had passed the exam.
2. So far, the government has set up three new schools for the peasant workers' children.
3. He has to earn money to pay the high tuition for his son.
4. What the teacher said made a difference to my future.
5. It turns out that this method doesn't work well.
6. It's reported that many patients have benefited from the new treatment.

III. 完成句子

1. I am very grateful to you for your timely help.
我很感谢你的及时帮助。
2. Jim wrote to Dr Green, because he had trouble

(in) getting on with his friends.

吉姆写信给格林医生,因为他与朋友相处时遇到了困难。

3. Don't worry, because everything is under control.
别担心,因为一切都在控制之中。
4. The busier he is, the happier he feels.
他越忙越高兴。
5. He spoke so fast that he couldn't make himself understood.
他说得太快了,以至于他无法让自己被理解。

IV. 完形填空

I stood in line waiting to cash out at a grocery store. I 1 the customer in front of me. She was young, but she already had a(n) 2 look as if life had beaten her down too many times. The items (物品) in her cart included the cheapest cuts of meat, powdered milk, day-old bread, and 3 soap.

"Next!" the cashier 4, and she moved forward to check out. When the cashier finally told her the 5, her face paled. She opened her handbag and began 6 small bills and change. It was obvious that she didn't have enough 7. So she 8 some much-needed goods, setting them aside. The child's items 9 in the cart, however. The woman finally paid, and moved down to 10 them. When my turn came, I put into my cart the items that the woman had 11 out, whispering (低语) "Separate bags, same bill, please" to the cashier.

Then I secretly put the extra bag into the woman's cart without being 12. Just as I put the bag in the woman's cart, I 13 a twenty-dollar bill that I had not placed in there. "You put that money in there, didn't you?" I asked the cashier with a laugh 14 the woman pushed her cart out of the door. 15, he shook his head. "No, it was the woman who stood behind you. I stuck my twenty at the bottom," he added. "That was so nice of both of you!" I smiled.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了在排队结账的过程中,作者和其他人悄悄帮助生活窘困的女

士付款并偷偷给她塞钱的故事。

1. A. studied B. impressed
C. recognised D. admired
A 根据下文的“*She was young, but she already had a(n) 2 look as if life had beaten her down too many times.*”可知,作者是在端详这位女士。故选 A。
2. A. excited B. tired
C. curious D. happy
B 根据下文的“*as if life had beaten her down too many times*”可知,她生活并不如意,脸上应是疲惫的神情。故选 B。
3. A. pretty B. unusual
C. cheap D. pricey
C 根据上文的“*the cheapest cuts of meat, powdered milk, day-old bread*”可知,她买的都是便宜的东西。故选 C。
4. A. screamed B. laughed
C. whispered D. called
D 根据上文的“*Next*”可知,收银员是在召唤后边的顾客上前结账。故选 D。
5. A. truth B. cost C. report D. news
B 根据上文的“*she moved forward to check out*”可知,这位女士上前结账,所以收银员应该是告诉她所有物品的消费金额。故选 B。
6. A. counting B. saving
C. giving D. picking
A 根据下文的“*It was obvious that she didn't have enough 7.*”可知,她数了数自己的零钱,发现不够支付所买的物品。故选 A。
7. A. patience B. time
C. money D. food
C 根据下文的“*So she 8 some much-needed goods, setting them aside.*”可知,这位女士最后把生活必需品拿了出來。由此可以推断出她没有足够的钱。故选 C。
8. A. gave up B. took over
C. put away D. picked up
A 根据下文的“*setting them aside*”可知,这位女士因为没有足够的钱,所以放弃了一些必需品。故选 A。

9. A. changed B. shook
C. survived D. remained
D 根据下文的“*however*”可知,这位女士虽然放弃了一些必需品,但是没有把小孩用的东西拿出来,所以这些东西还留在购物车里。故选 D。
10. A. shape B. pack
C. organise D. choose
B 根据上文的“*The woman finally paid*”可知,她付完了钱,接下来应该是打包所买的东西。故选 B。
11. A. left B. worked
C. taken D. made
C 根据上文的“*I put into my cart the items*”可知,作者把她拿出来东西放到自己购物车里。故选 C。
12. A. caught B. punished
C. delivered D. scheduled
A 根据上文的“*Then I secretly put the extra bag into the woman's cart*”可知,作者偷偷地把袋子放在女士的购物车里,没有被她看见。故选 A。
13. A. placed B. noticed
C. imagined D. expected
B 根据下文的“*a twenty-dollar bill that I had not placed in there*”可知,作者在偷偷地往那位女士的购物车放袋子的时候,发现了一张 20 美元的钞票。故选 B。
14. A. before B. unless
C. since D. after
D 根据上文的“*I asked the cashier*”可知,他们讨论帮助那位女士的事情的时候,女士应该是不在现场的,因此是等她推着购物车走出门之后才开始说。故选 D。
15. A. Carefully B. Thankfully
C. Surprisingly D. Gracefully
C 根据下文的“*he shook his head*”可知,作者本以为是收银员偷偷把钱放在那位女士的购物车里的,但是出乎作者意料,收银员说不是他。故选 C。

Section III Using language

学习任务目标

1. Identify and summarise the forms and functions of *-ed* as attributive through observation and apply it correctly in the contexts and real-life situations.
2. Understand the main idea of the listening materials and gather details to complete a form.
3. Use phrases from the listening materials to make a phone enquiry.
4. Use appropriate expressions to describe personal qualities.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The young man holds the belief that saving lives is the doctor's **mission**. 使命
2. If we drink dirty water, we can catch **diseases** from the bacteria and become ill. 疾病
3. **Territory** is land which is controlled by a particular country or ruler. 领土
4. **Cancer** is a serious disease in which cells in a person's body increase rapidly in an uncontrolled way, producing abnormal growths. 癌症
5. An **institution** is a large important organisation such as a university or bank. 机构

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>disability</u> <i>n.</i> 残疾, 残障	<u>disable</u> <i>v.</i> 使人丧失能力; 使残疾
	<u>disabled</u> <i>adj.</i> 残废的; 有残疾的
<u>generous</u> <i>adj.</i> 慷慨的, 大方的	<u>generously</u> <i>adv.</i> 慷慨地
	<u>generosity</u> <i>n.</i> 慷慨, 大方; 宽宏大量
<u>hesitate</u> <i>v.</i> 迟疑, 犹豫	<u>hesitation</u> <i>n.</i> 迟疑, 犹豫
	<u>hesitant</u> <i>adj.</i> 犹豫的, 踌躇的
<u>assistance</u> <i>n.</i> 帮助, 援助	<u>assist</u> <i>v.</i> 帮助, 协助, 援助
	<u>assistant</u> <i>n.</i> 助手, 助理; 售货员

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>confirmation</u> <i>n.</i> 证实, 证明	<u>confirm</u> <i>v.</i> 证实, 确认
	<u>confirmed</u> <i>adj.</i> 成习惯的, 根深蒂固的

III. 补全短语

1. in spite of 不顾, 不管; 尽管
2. be suitable for 适合
3. take care of 照料, 照顾
4. be involved in 参加, 参与
5. come across 偶然遇到
6. come up with 想出, 提出

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: not only... but also...
As in the words which were spoken by Ryan, we need to not only donate money but also get new ideas.
正如瑞安所说, 我们不仅需要捐款, 而且需要获得新的想法。
2. 句型公式: 过去分词短语作定语
It offers help needed by children all over the world.
它为世界各地的儿童提供所需要的帮助。
3. 句型公式: make+宾语+宾语补足语
He's sensitive and rather serious, which sometimes makes him appear to be a little bookish.
他很敏感, 而且相当严肃, 这有时使他显得有点书呆子气。
4. 句型公式: “疑问词+不定式”结构作宾语
He always knows how to make wise decisions.
他总是知道如何作出明智的决定。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. hesitate v. 迟疑, 犹豫

[教材原文] She's usually very shy, but she's generous and never **hesitates** to help.

她通常很害羞, 但很慷慨, 帮助别人时从不犹豫。

[归纳拓展]

(1) hesitate to do sth. 迟疑做某事; 不愿做某事
hesitate about/over (doing) sth. (做) 某事犹豫不决

(2) hesitation n. 迟疑, 犹豫

without hesitation 毫不犹豫地

have no hesitation in doing sth. 毫不犹豫地做某事

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① In the event of difficulties, please do not hesitate to contact (contact) our Customer Service Department.

② When the girl entered the room, the boy followed without hesitation (hesitate).

(2) 写作微练

① (读后续写之心理活动) 她对是否接受这份工作 **犹豫不决**。

She hesitated over/about whether to accept the job offer.

② (应用文写作之告知信) 我们 **毫不犹豫地支持** 这项有意义的事业。

We have no hesitation in supporting this worthy cause.

2. assistance n. 帮助, 援助

[教材原文] In China, volunteers are also playing an increasingly important role in environmental protection, disability **assistance** and many other fields.

在中国, 志愿者在环境保护、残疾人救助和诸多其他领域也发挥着越来越重要的作用。

[归纳拓展]

(1) come to one's assistance 帮助某人
with the assistance of 在……的帮助下

(2) assist v. 帮助, 协助, 援助

assist sb. with 在……方面帮助某人

assist sb. to do sth. = assist sb. in doing sth. 帮助某人做某事

(3) assistant n. 助手, 助理; 售货员

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① I often assist my mum with the housework.

② Don't worry. He will assist you to complete (complete) the task.

③ I am writing this email to convey my sincere appreciation to you for your assistance (assist).

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之投稿) 在一位当地导游的协助下, 我们深入探索了那些古遗址。

With the assistance of a local guide, we explored the ancient ruins thoroughly.

3. make + 宾语 + 宾语补足语

[教材原文] He's sensitive and rather serious, which sometimes **makes him appear to be** a little bookish.

他很敏感, 而且相当严肃, 这有时使他显得有点书呆子气。

[句式分析] 本句为主从复合句, 关系代词 which 引导非限制性定语从句, 定语从句中含有 make sb./sth. do sth. 的用法, 即“make + 宾语 + 宾语补足语”结构。

[归纳拓展]

make + 宾语 + 宾语补足语	}	名词或形容词
		不带 to 的不定式
		过去分词
		介词短语

名师点拨

后接不带 to 的动词不定式作宾语补足语的动词(短语)有 make、have、let 等使役动词及 see、watch、notice、hear、look at 等感官动词(短语)。若此类动词(短语)用于被动语态, 则 to 不能省略。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① The teacher raised his voice so that he could make himself heard (hear).

② She was made to apologise (apologise) for her mistake.

(2) 写作微练

① (读后续写之情感描写) 他亲切的话语 **让她变得自信**。

His kind words made her confident.

②(应用文写作之建议信)如果你想成功,你就必须让自己每天努力工作。

If you want to succeed, you must make yourself work hard every day.

语法研习课

过去分词(短语)作定语

语法感知

- ① Ryan had trouble believing the words **spoken by his teacher**.
- ② What they needed was a well **dug near their homes**.
- ③ In Uganda, Ryan at last saw the **finished** well with his own eyes.
- ④ Many **inspired** people gave him their support.
- ①句中的 spoken by his teacher 为过去分词短语,在句中作后置定语,修饰 the words.
 - ②句中的 dug near their homes 为过去分词短语,在句中作后置定语,修饰 a well.
 - ③句中的 finished 为过去分词,在句中作前置定语,修饰 well.
 - ④句中 inspired 为过去分词,在句中作前置定语,修饰 people.

语法精讲

一、过去分词(短语)作定语的位置

- 单个的过去分词作定语通常放在被修饰词之前;过去分词短语作定语则放在被修饰词之后,相当于一个定语从句。

The **injured** workers are now being taken good care of in the hospital.

受伤的工人现在正在医院受到良好的照料。

I am fond of the food **cooked by** your mother.

= I am fond of the food **that is cooked by** your mother.

我很喜欢你妈妈做的饭菜。

名师点拨

有些过去分词表示特定含义,单独作定语也放在被修饰的名词之后,如 left(剩余的)、given(所给的)、concerned(有关的)等。另外,单个过去分词作定语修饰代词时,应该放在被修饰的词后面。

There is little time **left**. Let's hurry up.

剩余时间不多了,咱们快点儿吧。

- 有些过去分词作定语既可前置也可后置,意义不变;但有些过去分词置于被修饰词前后的位置不同,其意义也不相同。

All the **broken** windows have been repaired.

= All the windows **broken** have been repaired.

所有坏了的窗户已经修理好了。

The method **used** is very efficient.

所用的这个方法很有效。

This is a **used** car worth only 5,000 yuan.

这是一辆价值仅 5 000 元的旧车。

名师点拨

有些表示情感或心理状态的过去分词已经完全形容词化,常见的这类过去分词有 disappointed(失望的)、excited(兴奋的)、moved(感动的)、interested(感兴趣的)、surprised(感到惊讶的)、shocked(震惊的,震撼的)、puzzled(迷惑不解的)、frightened(受惊吓的)等。

二、过去分词(短语)作定语的意义

- 及物动词的过去分词作定语,具有完成和被动两层含义。

steamed bread 馒头

boiled water 开水

- 不及物动词的过去分词作定语,只表示动作的完成,无被动之意。

a **fallen** tree 一棵倒下的树

a **retired** worker 一位退休工人

三、不同形式的非谓语动词作定语的区别

形式	区别
过去分词作定语	表示被动或完成
现在分词作定语	表示主动或进行
现在分词的被动形式作定语	表示被动和进行
不定式作定语	多表示将要发生的动作

The meeting **held** yesterday was important.

昨天开的会非常重要。

Last night, there were millions of people **watching** the opening ceremony of the Football World Cup live on TV.

昨天晚上,有几百万人观看了世界杯足球赛开幕式的电视直播。

It is said that the building **being constructed** will be our new stadium.

据说这幢正在建造的大楼将是我们的新体育馆。

Do you want to see the doctor **to be sent for** from Beijing? 你想见那位从北京请来的医生吗?

语法冲关

I. 语法填空

- The flowers smelling (smell) sweet in the botanic garden attract visitors to the beauty of nature.
- There is no doubt that the part played (play) by women in our society is very important.
- Actually, it is quite normal for the average person living (live) in a city to see thousands of ads every single day.
- The problem being discussed (discuss) now attracts the attention of everyone present at the meeting.

5. The airport to be completed (complete) next year will help promote tourism in this area.

6. Her excited (excite) voice suggested that she won the final match.

II. 完成句子

- There is no doubt that the polluted air is bad for our health.
毫无疑问被污染的空气对我们的健康有害。
- Have you read the novel *Oliver Twist* written by Dickens?
你读过狄更斯写的《雾都孤儿》这部小说吗?
- The students praised by the teacher constantly will become more confident and excellent.
不断受到老师表扬的学生会变得更加自信和优秀。
- The building being built now will be our classroom building.
现在正在建造的楼将是我们的教学楼。

Unit 2 课后素养评价 (七)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

extend; mission; in spite of; be suitable for; come across; disease; confirmation; institution; take up; come up with; cheer up; play an important role in

- Our class came up with the idea of making better use of used materials.
- Your news was really a confirmation for my beliefs.
- The attendance of meetings takes up a great deal of my time.
- My garden extends as far as the river.
- Feel blue about the world? Cheer up!
- The doctor examined him but could find no sign of heart disease.
- My mission in life is to help poor people.
- The course is suitable for both beginners and advanced students.
- As is known to all, using clean energy plays an important role in pollution reduction.
- It's said that the college has close links with many other institutions.

11. In spite of the difficulties, they managed to carry on their experiments.

12. He came across this story while he was doing a computer search of local news articles.

II. 语法填空

- Old people tend to be very sensitive to cold.
- Those with disabilities (disable) should be treated equally.
- Thank you for contributing generously (generous) to the scholarship fund.
- After a short hesitation (hesitate), I asked him if he needed any help.
- He can walk only with the assistance (assist) of crutches.
- The park was full of people enjoying (enjoy) themselves in the sunshine.
- You cannot accept an opinion offered (offer) to you unless it is based on facts.
- The puzzled (puzzle) expression on his face showed that the question was puzzling.

9. The student likes reading stories written (write) by Mark Twain.
10. Flights should be confirmed (confirmation) 48 hours before departure.
11. Employers usually decide within five minutes whether someone is suitable for the job.
12. It's reported that more than 30 software firms are involved in the project.

III. 阅读理解

Just being intelligent (聪明的) doesn't mean someone will be successful. And just because someone is less intelligent doesn't mean that person will fail. That's one take-home message from the work of people like Angela Duckworth, who works at the University of Pennsylvania in Philadelphia.

Like many other scientists, Duckworth wondered what makes one person more successful than another. When digging deeper, Duckworth found that the people who performed best shared a quality independent of intelligence. They had what she now calls grit (毅力). Duckworth developed a set of questions to test it. She calls it her "grit scale (量表)".

In one study of people 25 and older, she found that as people age, they become more likely to stick with a project. She also found that grit increases with education. People who finished college scored higher on the grit scale than people who quit before graduation. People who went to graduate school after college scored even higher.

She then did another study with college students. Duckworth wanted to see how intelligence and grit influenced performance in school. So she compared scores on college-entrance exams, which measure IQ, to school grades and scores on the grit scale. Students with higher grades tended to have more grit. That's not surprising. Getting good grades takes both smarts and hard work.

But some people counter that this grit means success. Among those people is Marcus Crede, a professor at Iowa State University in Ames. He recently pooled the results of 88 studies on grit.

Together, those studies tested nearly 67,000 people. And grit did not predict success, Crede found.

However, he thinks grit is very similar to someone's ability to set goals, work towards them and think things through before acting.

"Study habits and skills, test anxiety and class attendance are far more strongly connected to school grades than grit," Crede says. "We can teach students how to study well. We can help them with their test anxiety," he adds. "I'm not sure we can do that with grit."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章讨论了智商和毅力对成功的影响。通过对大量研究样本的综合分析, Duckworth 认为聪明并不意味着成功, 不聪明也并不意味着失败。成功的关键因素之一是毅力。

1. What can we know from the first two paragraphs?
- A. Intelligence determines success.
B. Not all smart people will succeed.
C. Duckworth redesigned a grit scale.
D. Grit decides how intelligent one might be.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“Just being intelligent(聪明的) doesn't mean someone will be successful. And just because someone is less intelligent doesn't mean that person will fail.”和第二段中的“*When digging deeper, Duckworth found that the people who performed best shared a quality independent of intelligence.*”可知, 聪明并不完全意味着一个人就会成功, 不那么聪明的人也并不一定会失败, 表现最好的人拥有一种与智商无关的品质。由此可推知, 不是所有聪明人都能成功。故选 B。

2. What might influence a person's grit according to Angela Duckworth's findings?

- A. Lifestyle. B. Family.
C. Personality. D. Education.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“*She also found that grit increases with education. People who finished college scored higher on the grit scale than people who quit before graduation. People who went to graduate school after college scored even higher.*”可知, Angela Duckworth 发现受教育程度可能影响一个人的毅力。故选 D。

3. What does the underlined word “counter” in Paragraph 5 mean?

- A. Comment.
- B. Disagree.
- C. Recognise.
- D. Warn.

B 词义猜测题。根据第四段中的“ So she compared scores on college-entrance exams, which measure IQ, to school grades and scores on the grit scale. Students with higher grades tended to have more grit.”可知, Duckworth 认为毅力和成功有很大关系。结合画线词所在句子中的 But 可知, 该句陈述的观点与上文相反, 即一些

人反对毅力意味着成功这个观点。因此猜测画线词意为“反对”, 与 disagree (不同意) 同义。故选 B。

4. What can be inferred from the last paragraph?

- A. Grit can hardly be taught.
- B. Grit can be improved easily.
- C. Grit is strongly related to test anxiety.
- D. Grit has nothing to do with school grades.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知, Crede 认为学习习惯和技能、考试焦虑和出勤率与学校成绩的关系要比毅力密切得多, 他不确定能否教会学生有毅力。这说明教会学生有毅力是很难的, 由此可推知, 毅力几乎不能被教会。故选 A。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Understand the legendary life of Nicholas Winton according to the timeline and his great contributions to society.
2. Deeply understand the impact of Nicholas Winton's deeds and express your views and feelings through analysing the text.
3. Summarise the style and key elements of the biographical text.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The government has sent 20 working groups to key port cities to **aid** anti-virus efforts. 帮助, 援助
2. The difficulty is **temporary** so we should regard it as a challenge rather than complaining about it. 暂时的
3. As freshmen at senior high school, you will receive **military** training at the beginning of the new term. 军事的
4. The company can provide quick and accurate **drug** testing of athletes. 药物
5. The organiser promised that trainees could get a vocational qualification **certificate** after passing the exam. 证书
6. China's **Ministry** of Education has launched a campaign to boost first aid knowledge and

training among school-age adolescents.

(政府的)部

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>achievement</u> <i>n.</i> 成绩, 成就	achieve <i>v.</i> 完成; 达到
<u>chief</u> <i>adj.</i> 最高级别的, 首席的	chiefly <i>adv.</i> 主要地
<u>major</u> <i>adj.</i> 重要的, 主要的 <i>n.</i> 主修课程; 主修学生 <i>v.</i> 主修; 专门研究	majority <i>n.</i> 大多数
<u>treatment</u> <i>n.</i> 治疗; 疗法; 对待; 待遇; 处理	treat <i>v.</i> 治疗, 医治; 对待, 看待; 把……视为/看作; 请(客), 招待 <i>n.</i> 款待; 乐事

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>obtain</u> <i>v.</i> 获得, 得到	obtainable <i>adj.</i> 能获得的, 可得到的
<u>further</u> <i>adj.</i> 更多的, 附加的	far <i>adj.</i> 远的

III. 补全短语

- rise to one's feet 站起身来
- keep records of 记录
- in danger 在危险中
- in honour of 为纪念; 为庆祝; 向……表示敬意
- return to 回到
- at one point 当时; 一度; 在某一时刻
- bring... to public attention 引起公众对……的注意
- pass away 去世
- the majority of ……的大多数
- serve as 担任; 充当
- at the age of 在……岁时

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: on doing sth.

On leaving school, Winton worked in banks in Germany and France.

一离开学校, 温顿便先后在德国和法国的银行工作。

2. 句型公式: by + 表示过去某一时间的短语

By August 1939, Winton had saved 669 children. 截至1939年8月, 温顿已经解救了669个孩子。

3. 句型公式: 现在分词作状语

Later, Winton received various honours for his achievement, including a knighthood in 2003, and the Czech government's highest honour, the Order of the White Lion, in 2014.

后来, 温顿因自己的成就获得了各种荣誉, 其中包括2003年获得的爵士称号, 以及2014年获得的捷克政府最高荣誉——白狮勋章。

4. 句型公式: as 引导非限制性定语从句

As the Chinese saying goes, "A kind-hearted person lives a long life."

这恰恰印证了中国的一句古话: “仁者寿。”

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text

THE POWER of GOOD

Introduction: Nicholas Winton's 1. achievement.Main body: Major events in order of 2. time.Conclusion: 3. Comments about him.

○ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- What can we learn from Paragraph 1?
 - The children were excited to board the train.
 - The children boarded the train with their parents.
 - All the children who boarded the train were Jewish.
 - It was very likely that the parents would not see their children again.
- Put the following events in order of time.
 - Nicholas Winton returned to Britain and worked in business.

② Nicholas Winton worked for international charities and for various companies.

③ Nicholas Winton worked in banks in Germany and France.

④ Nicholas Winton served as an officer in Britain's Royal Air Force.

- A. ①③④② B. ①②③④
C. ③①④② D. ③④①②

3. Which country were the children sent to according to the text?

- A. Britain. B. France.
C. Germany. D. America.

答案: 1~3 DCA

○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. In Prague, Winton saw people living in terrible conditions and whose lives were in danger.

[句子分析]本句是一个复合句。句中 people 作 saw 的宾语, living in terrible conditions 是宾语补足语, 补充说明 people, 同时 whose 引导定语从句, 修饰 people。

[尝试翻译]在布拉格, 温顿看到人们生活在绝境中, 连生命都处于危险之中。

2. For the most part, he did not mention the children he saved, and his actions soon disappeared from people's memories.

[句子分析]本句是一个由 and 连接的并列复合句。and 之前的分句中, he saved 是省略了关系词 that/who 的定语从句。

[尝试翻译]他很少提及自己救孩子的事情, 于是这些事很快淡出了人们的记忆。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. Why did Winton come to Prague?

He went to aid people who were escaping from the Nazis.

2. Why do you think it took such a long time for Winton's actions to become known?

Because he didn't want to attract attention and for the most part, he did not mention the children he saved.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. aid v. 帮助, 援助 n. 援助, 帮助

[教材原文] In December 1938, a friend asked Winton to come to Prague to aid people who were escaping from the Nazis.

1938年12月, 一位朋友请温顿来布拉格帮助那里的人们逃脱纳粹(的迫害)。

[归纳拓展]

(1) aid sb. in doing sth. 帮助某人做某事

(2) come to one's aid 帮助某人

in aid of 为了帮助……, 用来协助……

with the aid of 借助于; 在……的帮助下

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① He aided me in finishing (finish) the work.

② I'm collecting money in aid of the homeless people.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之报道) 他在邻居的帮助下把火扑灭了。

With the aid of a neighbour, he managed to put out the fire.

② (应用文写作之感谢信) 得知我陷入困境后, 他立即赶来帮助我。

Having learned that I was in trouble, he came to my aid without delay.

2. achievement n. 成绩, 成就

[教材原文] Later, Winton received various honours for his achievement, including a knighthood in 2003, and the Czech government's highest honour, the Order of the White Lion, in 2014.

后来, 温顿因自己的成就获得了各种荣誉, 其中包括2003年获得的爵士称号, 以及2014年获得的捷克政府最高荣誉——白狮勋章。

[归纳拓展]

(1) make an achievement/achievements in 在……方面取得成就

a sense of achievement 成就感

(2) achieve v. 完成; 达到

achieve one's goal/dream/hope 实现目标/梦想/希望

achieve success 取得成功

(3) achievable adj. 做得成的, 可完成的, 可实现的

【语境助记】

I've **achieved** only half of what I'd hoped, so I cannot celebrate the **achievements** I've made, although everyone said I should have **a sense of achievement**.

我只完成了原本我所希望的一半, 因此我不能为自己所取得的成绩庆祝, 尽管每个人都说我应该有一种成就感。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① She was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry for her scientific achievements (achieve).

② This project requires close teamwork. Nothing will be achieved (achieve) unless we work well together.

③ His laziness makes it impossible for him to achieve (achieve) success.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之建议信) 如果我们努力工作且永不放弃, 我们就能实现我们的梦想。

We can achieve our dreams if we work hard and never give up.

② (2024·浙江1月卷读后续写之总结升华) 这段插曲提醒我们, 只要有坚定的决心和聪明的思维技巧, 一个人就能取得成就, 走得远。

This episode served as a reminder that with great determination and a clever mind trick, one can achieve something and reach far.

3. major adj. 重要的, 主要的 n. 主修课程; 主修学生 v. 主修; 专门研究

[教材原文] Major Achievements and Awards

主要成就和奖项

[归纳拓展]

(1) major in 主修……

(2) majority n. 大多数

in the majority 占大多数

a majority of 大部分, 大多数

the majority of ……的大多数

(3) minority n. 少数

名师点拨 ■■■■

the majority 作主语时, 若强调整体, 谓语句用单数形式; 若强调个体, 谓语句用复数形式。当“the majority of + 复数名词”作主语时, 谓语句用复数形式。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① Obviously, it is her parents that put pressure on her to major in physics.

② Generally speaking, if you look at the people at a classical concert, the majority of them are (be) over the age of fifty.

③ People who can speak English are in the majority in this country.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之报道) 大多数人更喜欢坐火车而不是坐飞机旅行。

A majority of people prefer to travel by train rather than by plane.

4. treatment n. 治疗; 疗法; 对待; 待遇; 处理

[教材原文] Worked as the leader of a research team aiming to discover a **treatment** for malaria

担任一个致力于发现疟疾疗法的研究小组的领导者

[归纳拓展]

(1) the treatment for/of… ……的治疗/疗法

(2) treat v. 治疗, 医治; 对待, 看待; 把……视为/看作; 请(客), 招待 n. 款待; 乐事

treat... with... 用……医治……; 以……态度对待……

treat... for... 医治……的……病

treat... as... 把……视为/看作……

treat sb. to... 请某人吃/喝……

【易混辨析】treat、cure 辨析

易混词	区别
treat	意为“医治, 治疗”, 强调治疗的过程或治疗的动作, 不涉及治疗的结果
cure	意为“治愈, 治好”, 强调结果, 常用于“cure sb. of sth.(治愈某人的……病)”结构

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① We don't want any special treatment (treat).

② I don't want to be treated as a child.

③ I'll treat you to lunch at the restaurant in front of our school.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信) 如果我们想和他人建立良好的关系, 我们必须以真诚和宽容的态度对待他们。

If we want to build good relationships with others, we must treat them with sincerity and understanding.

5. by + 表示过去某一时间的短语

[教材原文] **By August 1939**, Winton had saved 669 children.

截至1939年8月, 温顿已经解救了669个孩子。

[归纳拓展]

(1) “by + 表示某一时间的短语”意为“到……的时

候”，是一个介词短语。其用法如下：

①“by+表过去的时间”作状语时，谓语动词用过去完成时；

②“by+表将来的时间”作状语时，谓语动词用一般将来时或将来完成时。

(2) by the time 引导时间状语从句时，其用法如下：

①如从句用一般过去时，则主句用过去完成时；

②如从句用一般现在时或现在完成时，则主句用将来完成时。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① Hurry up, Harry. Or by the time you pack your belongings, the flight will have left (leave).

② By the end of the day those who were less fit had fallen (fall) behind.

③ By the time you have finished this book, your meal will get (get) cold.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之告知信)到上个月底为止，我们按时完成了这个项目。

By the end of last month, we had completed the project on schedule.

多义词汇 专练

treatment A. n. 处理 B. n. 对待；待遇

C. n. 治疗；疗法

① There have been great advances in the **treatment** of cancer. C

② The same subject matter gets a very different **treatment** by Chris Wilson in his latest novel. A

③ I don't expect special **treatment**—I just want to be treated fairly. B

Unit 2 课后素养评价 (八)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

1. First aid (帮助), if carried out properly, can make a great difference in saving lives.
2. This arrangement is just temporary (暂时的), and we should think of a better solution to this problem.
3. Robert is a happy-go-lucky sort of person. Even a small success gives him a sense of achievement (成就).
4. It's believed that nothing can be obtained (获得) without effort.
5. It's believed that smoking is one of the major (主要的) causes of cancer.
6. Jane, who used to be a very shy girl, is the chief (首席的) financial officer of our company now.
7. For further (更多的) details, please call this number.

II. 语法填空

1. The drug is used in the treatment (treat) of depression.
2. The majority (major) of workers find it quite hard to live on the amount of money they earn.
3. The man rose to his feet and aided the old man in

getting (get) out of the bus.

4. It's said that the product is temporarily (temporary) out of stock.
5. The notebook was used to keep records of the information of the children.
6. For the most part, the man doesn't allow his children to play computer games.

III. 短语填空

take in; in honour of; at the age of; end with; at one point; in danger; go on; pass away; return to

1. The dam (堤坝) was in danger because of the rising flood.
2. Her grandfather passed away last week, peacefully in his sleep.
3. The man held a party to celebrate his son's birthday and it ended with a piece of music.
4. At the age of 17, he travelled to China along the Silk Road with his father.
5. The report goes on to make a number of recommendations to improve safety on aircraft.
6. We could hardly take in what he was saying.
7. When he returned to his motherland in 1955, the

country's space research was almost a blank.

8. Madame Curie was given two Nobel prizes in honour of her research.
 9. At one point we quarrelled over something silly.

IV. 完成句子

1. Chances are that they will have finished the work by next Sunday.
 他们很可能在下周日之前完成这项工作。
2. Recently the issue has been brought to public attention.
 最近这个问题引起了公众的注意。
3. On hearing the bad news, the girl rushed out without hesitation.
 一听到这个坏消息,那个女孩毫不犹豫地冲了出去。
4. As the average age of the population increases, there are more and more old people to care for.
 随着人口的平均年龄的增长,越来越多的老年人需要被照顾。
5. By the time I left school, he had taught the class for 3 years.
 到我毕业时,他已经教那个班三年了。

V. 语法填空

Confucius was born into a middle-class family in Lu State, an area with the modern city of Qufu, in China's Shandong Province. Now, he **1.** is remembered (remember) for his teachings, which, along with the works of his students, formed the rule of Confucianism (儒学) many **2.** years (year) after his passing away.

Confucius also lived **3.** an active political life. From his job as Minister of Crime, he took part in a campaign (运动) to distance Lu from the rule of the state instead of **4.** working (work) for the central government. However, the plan failed. After a short period of being sent to live in another country, Confucius could finally return to Lu State **5.** to spend (spend) the rest of his life as a teacher of philosophy.

Even up to the time of Confucius' **6.** death (die), his teachings were not **7.** widely (wide) accepted in China, and most of **8.** them (they) were lost when the emperor Qin ordered the burning of

Confucius' books.

Yet, his philosophical (哲学的) ideas survived during the later Han Dynasty. Emperor Han Wudi, **9.** who was inspired by the social and political wisdom of Confucius, accepted Confucianism and applied his systems of morality everywhere from classrooms **10.** to law courts. The teachings of Confucius still spread far across China and the Far East.

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

请根据下面的内容要点写一篇短文,介绍中国杂交水稻之父——著名科学家袁隆平。

- 袁隆平 1930 年 9 月出生于北京,2021 年 5 月 22 日去世。1953 年大学毕业后,他一直从事农业科学研究。
- 袁隆平以“杂交水稻之父”而著称。20 世纪 60 年代,他发现粮食产量很难提高,于是决定从事杂交水稻的研究工作。毫无疑问,他对世界的粮食生产做出了巨大的贡献,于 2004 年获得“世界粮食奖”。
- 袁隆平工作努力,学识渊博,想象力丰富,具有创新精神。另一方面,他也善于放松自己。业余时间,他喜欢拉小提琴和游泳。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:用功的,勤勉的 diligent; 有学问的 learned; 有创造力的,有创新精神的 creative

【参考范文】

Yuan Longping was born in Beijing in September 1930 and passed away on May 22nd, 2021. Since he graduated from college in 1953, he has been undertaking the scientific research into agriculture.

Yuan Longping is known as “the father of hybrid rice”. In the 1960s, he found it difficult to raise the grain yield. So he decided to work on the hybrid rice. There is no doubt that he made great contributions to the world's food production. In 2004, he won the World Food Prize.

On the one hand, Yuan Longping was diligent,

learned, creative and full of imagination. On the other hand, he was good at relaxing himself. In his spare time, he liked playing the violin and swimming.

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

School was over, the day was fading, and it started to drizzle (下毛毛雨). I stood at the school gate, with a loaded backpack on my shoulders. It was Friday again: a weekend of joy with unlimited sleeping hours and dinner courses specially made to my taste. A weekend at home. I waved goodbye to my friends as they jumped into their fathers' warm and comfortable cars. Curiously, this gave rise to an uneasy feeling in me. It was not exactly what they called jealousy (嫉妒), but something like dismay (沮丧). I knew all I could expect was an old bike Mum would ride along on, with the badly-oiled chain creaking (嘎吱作响) against the wheel to announce her arrival.

Every Friday when Mum came to pick me up for the weekend, it was a moment full of great expectation and great unease. I always felt my face burning as we rode our way in and out of the numerous cars and saw my friends' faces sticking out of the car windows. It was like stepping into a ballroom with beautifully dressed ladies and finding yourself in a smelly T-shirt.

To tell you the truth, Mum is quite a headache occasionally. She looks like a homely middle-aged housewife. Being a skilled person of DIY, she knits (编织) most of my sweaters, chiefly in old styles. Whenever caught by some curious classmates asking what brand my sweaters are, I'd force a smile and reply in a half-joking manner: homemade. She

simply doesn't seem to understand what's in fashion.

I couldn't remember when I started to find her such an embarrassment. As a little boy, I relied on her so much. She had been working at home, cooking in the kitchen, knitting by the lamp, or riding across town to buy me a book I badly needed. It had always been fun riding with her. I had enjoyed watching our shadows growing longer and shorter in an alternate fashion by the light of the streetlamps along the road. Just now there seemed to be something standing between us, something that made her so strange to me and me to her.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

Today she showed up in a raincoat. Once she saw me, Mum called my name excitedly. Almost everybody present looked in her direction. I swallowed hard and fixed my stare on the middle of the road, sweat forming in tiny droplets on my forehead. When she tried to cover me with the back of her raincoat, I simply threw it aside. In silence, I shot her a blaming glance and threw my backpack heavily into the front basket of the bike. Without a single word, I jumped onto the backseat.

Mum tried again to cover me with the back of the raincoat as a storm set in. Reluctantly, I pulled it over. With the wind roaring angrily and the raincoat dancing, it felt warm and secure inside. Mum bent forward and pedalled with all her strength, her waist twitching with tension. I started to feel guilty for my coldness, tears welling up in my eyes. Quietly, I slipped my hands around Mum's waist and gently pressed my face against her back. In the crying wind and pouring rain, I found myself hugging my mother, tighter than ever.

迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

Part 1 应用文写作

——人物传记

○写作指导

人物传记是记叙文的一种,但人物传记主要是写名人或伟人的生平、事迹。因此,写人物传记时,要重点叙述其出生年月、主要事迹、社会评价等。人物传记的内容一般可以概括为5个字:概、特、育、平、评。

1. “概”指概况:age、sex、birthplace、background;
2. “特”指特点:appearance、character、hobby;
3. “育”指教育:education;
4. “平”指生平:big events in one's life (in order of time);
5. “评”指评价:evaluation.

名师点拨

写作时要选择人物一生中的突出成就或突出人物性格特点的材料,做到主题鲜明,内容清楚,简明扼要,重点突出。

○典题示例

请以“Madame Curie”为题,写一篇80词左右的英语短文,要点如下:

1. 居里夫人是世界著名的女科学家,1867年出生于波兰(Poland)的一个教师家庭,卒于1934年;
2. 她从小热爱学习并希望成为一名科学家,16岁中学毕业,24岁赴巴黎大学上学,生活俭朴,学习刻苦;
3. 她一生致力于科学研究,于1903年和1911年分别荣获诺贝尔物理学奖和诺贝尔化学奖;
4. 居里夫人作为一位伟大的女性将永远为人们所怀念。

参考词汇:诺贝尔奖 Nobel Prize

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以一般过去时为主
人称	第三人称
要点	1. 居里夫人的身份、生卒年份及出生地点; 2. 居里夫人的主要人生经历和成就; 3. 对居里夫人的评价。

Step 2: 要点补全

- ① Madame Curie was a world-famous female scientist (一位世界著名的女科学家).
- ② She was born into (出生在) a teacher's family in Poland in 1867 and died in 1934.
- ③ From her early childhood, she loved to study and hoped to become a great scientist (希望成为一名伟大的科学家).
- ④ At 24 she left for (动身去) Paris and entered (考上) the University of Paris.
- ⑤ In the University of Paris, she lived a very simple life (过着非常俭朴的生活) and studied very hard.
- ⑥ Madame Curie devoted her whole life to (把她的一生奉献给) the study of science.
- ⑦ For a woman, succeeding in her work (在她的工作上取得成功) is not easy.

Step 3: 句式升级

- ①将 Step 2 中的句①②合并为含有 who 引导的定语从句的主从复合句

Madame Curie was a world-famous female scientist,

who was born into a teacher's family in Poland in 1867 and died in 1934.

②将 Step 2 中的句④⑤合并为含有 where 引导的非限制性定语从句的主从复合句

At 24 she left for Paris and entered the University of Paris, where she lived a very simple life and studied very hard.

③用 it 作形式主语升级 Step 2 中的句⑦

It is/It's not easy for a woman to succeed in her work.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Madame Curie

Madame Curie was a world-famous female scientist, who was born into a teacher's family in Poland in 1867 and died in 1934.

From her early childhood, she loved to study and hoped to become a great scientist. She finished middle school at the age of 16. At 24 she left for Paris and entered the University of Paris, where she lived a very simple life and studied very hard. Madame Curie devoted her whole life to the study of science. She won the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1903 and in Chemistry in 1911.

It is not easy for a woman to succeed in her work. It is even more difficult for a woman to win the Nobel Prize twice in her life. So Madame Curie will always be remembered as a great woman.

○学以致用

请参照以下提示并根据你自己的了解简要介绍著名物理学家——牛顿(Isaac Newton)。

生卒年份	1643—1727
家庭	出生于英国一个农民家庭,出生前几个月父亲就去世了
教育	曾就读于剑桥大学三一学院(Trinity College, University of Cambridge)
贡献及评价	成就多,如发现了万有引力定律(the laws of gravity),是科学史上最重要的人物之一
名言 (quotation)	If I have seen further, it is by standing on the shoulders of giants.

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Isaac Newton (1643—1727) is one of the most important figures who have made significant contributions in the field of physics.

Newton was born into a farmer's family in England. His father died several months before he was born. He was educated at Trinity College, University of Cambridge. One of his famous quotations is, "If I have seen further, it is by standing on the shoulders of giants." From what he said, we can conclude that great as he is, he's quite modest.

Newton had so many achievements in his lifetime including discovering the laws of gravity that he is admired by us all.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

One day an elderly postman knocked on the door of a house and said, "Take the letter..."

As he said this, a little girl's voice came from inside, "I am coming... Please wait."

But even after five minutes no one came. The postman said again, "Is there anyone to take your letter? I have to go to many more places."

The girl replied, "Uncle, if you are in a hurry, put the letter under the door. I am coming. It will take some more time..."

The postman said, "No, I am waiting. It is a registered letter. So someone's signature (签字) is also needed."

About ten minutes later, the door opened.

The postman was a little angry, and was about to shout at the girl. However, as soon as the door

opened, he was shocked to see that in front of him was a little handicapped girl who had no legs. The postman quietly gave her the letter, took her signature and left.

The little girl often lived alone in her house. Her mother was not in this world and her father had to work far away.

In a month or two, whenever mail came, the postman would knock and call for the girl and then wait patiently at the door. Gradually, interaction and attachment grew between them. The little girl noticed that the postman used to come barefoot (赤脚地) to deliver mail.

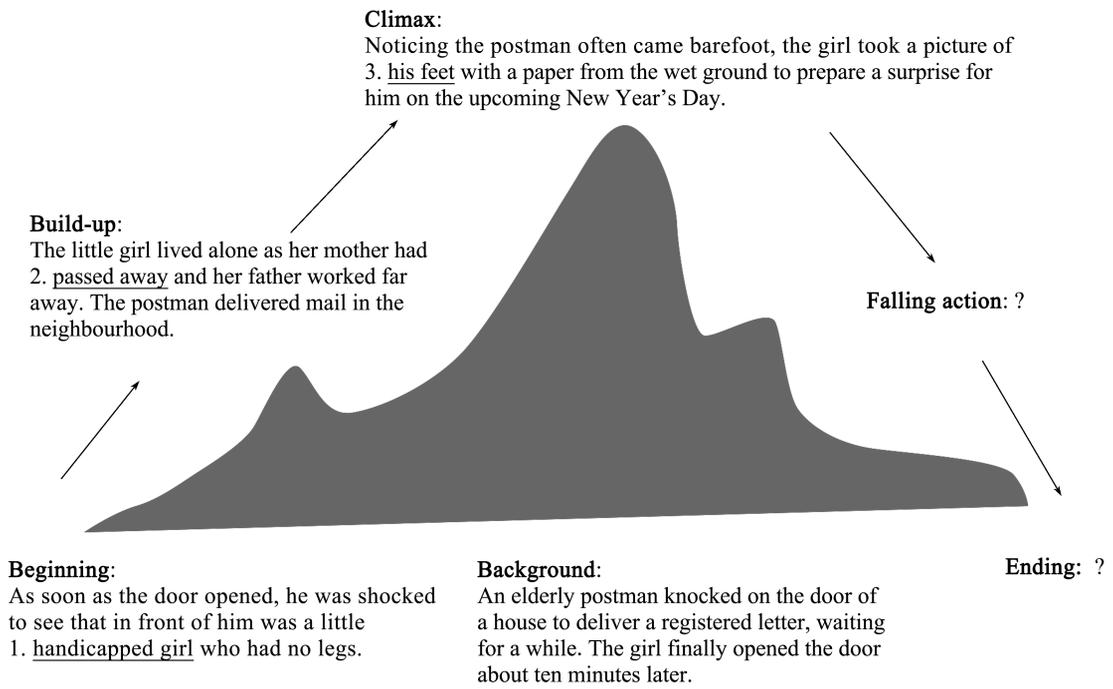
It rained one morning. When the postman left after giving a letter to the girl, his footprints were left on the wet ground. The girl came out with a paper, put it on print and took a picture of his feet. She decided to give him a surprise on the New Year's Day, which was around the corner.

任务一: 阅读文章, 回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

The article mainly talks about an elderly postman and a little handicapped girl. The postman had to wait for the girl patiently to sign for a registered letter. The girl noticed his being barefoot and took a picture of his footprints on a rainy day with the intention of giving him a surprise on the approaching New Year's Day.

任务二: 梳理故事情节, 完成故事山 (Story Mountain)。



任务三: 回答下面的问题, 并根据段落开头提示语, 构思和完善故事发展情节。

<p>Paragraph 1:</p> <p>The postman went to houses to deliver mail during the New Year celebrations. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. Why did the postman buy a gift? <u>Because he thought it wouldn't be right to meet the little girl empty-handed during the festival.</u></p> <p>2. What would the postman give the girl? <u>Chocolates.</u></p> <p>3. How did the girl feel when she received the gift? <u>She was happy.</u></p>
--	---

<p>Paragraph 2:</p> <p>After a while, she brought a big box and handed it to the postman. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. What did the girl say to the postman when she gave him the gift?</p> <p><u>Uncle, this is a gift from my side to you.</u></p> <p>2. Why did the postman initially hesitate to accept the gift?</p> <p><u>Because he considered the girl as his daughter and felt he shouldn't accept a gift from her.</u></p> <p>3. What was inside the box that the postman received?</p> <p><u>A pair of shoes.</u></p>
---	---

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

The postman went to houses to deliver mail during the New Year celebrations. When he thought about the little girl, he started thinking it wouldn't be right to meet her empty-handed during the festival. After much thought he bought a small box of chocolates. The next day, he went to her house and knocked, waiting for a while as usual. When the girl opened the door, the old postman handed her the chocolates and said, "Take this small gift from your uncle's side." She was happy to get that and asked the postman to wait for some time.

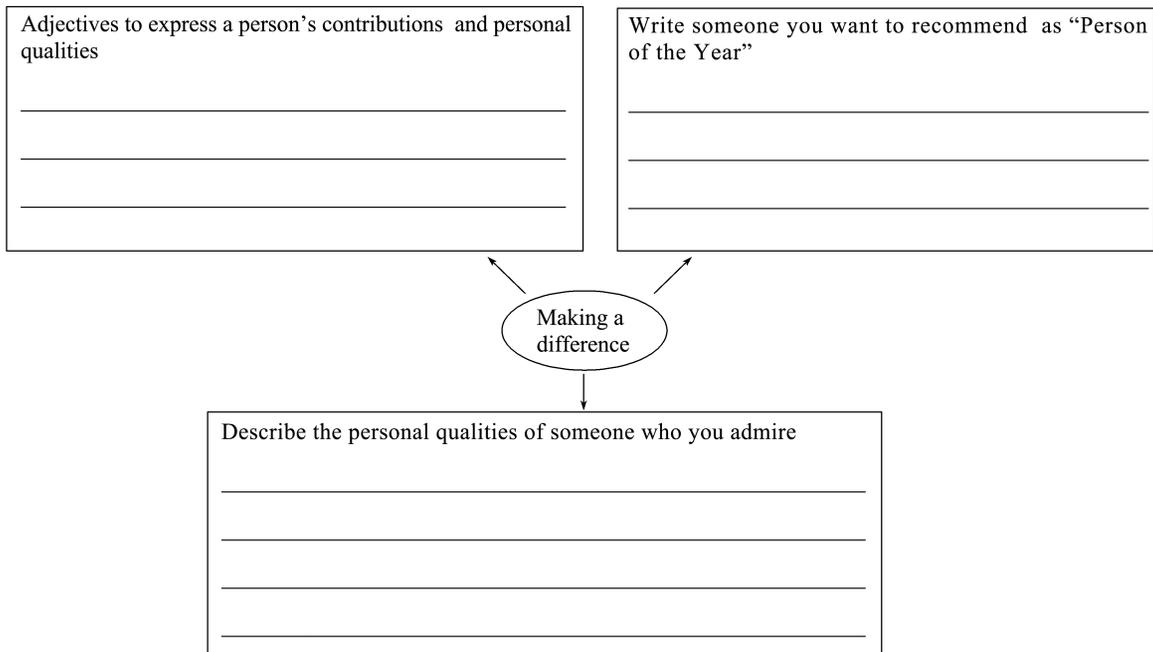
After a while, she brought a big box and handed it to the postman. She said, "Uncle, this is a gift from my side to you." The postman was surprised to see the box which was decorated with red ribbon. After thinking for a minute, he said, "You are like a daughter to me. How can I accept a gift from you?" The girl demanded, "Please don't refuse my gift." The postman accepted the box and lovingly put his hand on the girl's head. After going home, when he opened the box, the postman found a pair of shoes.

★ ★ ★

重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。



答案:略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

I was a student at the University of Cincinnati's music academy, looking for something to do outside of musical harmony classes. Somehow, I found myself at a printer's office across the river in Northern Kentucky, making final edits for Ed's small Cincinnati newspaper. It wasn't until I'd been there a few months that I realised how much Ed changed the world around him and changed my life in the process.

Ed started the paper because the local daily papers of the time turned a blind eye to some problems in the local community and gave little space to social issues affecting disadvantaged groups. Ed's paper was a small, 16-page monthly one, handed out for free in bars.

He often encouraged "non-writers" to write if they had a story to tell. Some of them were inexperienced writers. He worked with them until the words better expressed their ideas. When I turned in a story about an unpopular topic, he only asked, "Is it true?" and "Does it affect people?" Satisfied with my answers, he ran

the story.

What drove Ed? It wasn't fame, for the paper's limited resources kept him unknown; it wasn't money, for he ran the paper at a deficit(赤字) for its entire life of eight years. Indeed, more than once, I remembered him having to choose between paying his rent and paying the printer. Perhaps his real drive was revealed in a recent phone conversation. While talking about a common friend, I said, "He fought the good fight." Ed responded, "The good fight's never over." I don't believe that events make heroes; I believe heroes are the result of long-standing goodness. Ed's story proved the value of constancy(坚定不移) and expressed the significance of working for good causes for their own sake. He showed how one person, working tirelessly, could help a population get over its problems. Above all, his example showed me the necessity of making my own contributions to the causes I believe in.

1. Why did Ed set up the Cincinnati newspaper?

- A. To promote new writers' works.
- B. To improve his printer's business.
- C. To reflect overlooked social problems.
- D. To find talent from disadvantaged groups.

2. What is Ed's attitude towards storytellers like the author?

- A. Supportive.
- B. Doubtful.
- C. Curious.
- D. Picky.

3. What does the "good fight" in the last paragraph mainly refer to?

- A. Overcoming financial difficulties.
- B. Doing worthy and kind causes.
- C. Making a name for himself.
- D. Creating a big fortune.

答案:1~3 CAB

单元质量评估(二)

I. 阅读理解

A

Book: *No Looking Back*

Author: Shivani Gupta

Shivani had thrown a party one evening and woke up the next morning in hospital because of a car crash. It took Shivani years of pain, struggle and determination to regain control of her life and her body. Then tragedy struck again. As the newly-married Shivani drove to Manali with her family, a truck crashed into her car. Shivani refused to give in—she wouldn't let her injury keep her from achieving her ambitions.

Book: *Courage Beyond Compare*

Author: Sanjay Sharma

The 10 sportspersons in the book are champions in diverse fields like athletics, swimming, and badminton, who have brought glory to the country. They overcame their physical limitations to reach the top of their chosen fields.

Book: *Face to Face*

Author: Ved Mehta

Blind since the age of four, the author led a lonely childhood in India until he was accepted to the Arkansas School for the Blind, to which he flew alone at 15. The school changed his life, leading him to degrees at Oxford University and Harvard University and a fruitful writing career.

Book: *This Star Won't Go Out*

Author: Esther Earl, Lori Earl and Wayne Earl

Diagnosed with cancer at 12, Esther Earl was a bright and talented, but very normal teenager. She lived a hope-filled and generous life. A cheerful, positive and encouraging daughter, sister and friend, Esther died in 2010, shortly after turning 16, but not before inspiring thousands through her growing online presence.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了四本书，书中描写了遭遇不幸或身有残疾的人意志坚强地与生命中的苦难拼搏抗争的故事。

1. What does the book *No Looking Back* mainly talk

about?

- A. A successful author who was blind during his childhood.
- B. 10 disabled athletes who are champions in the sports field.
- C. An unlucky girl who experienced two car accidents.
- D. An inspiring teenager who died of cancer.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Book: *No Looking Back*** 部分中的“Shivani had thrown a party one evening and woke up the next morning in hospital because of a car crash.”和“As the newly-married Shivani drove to Manali with her family, a truck crashed into her car.”可知, *No Looking Back* 这本书讲述的是一个不幸的女孩遭遇了两次车祸的故事。故选 C。

2. In which book does the author tell of himself?

- A. *Courage Beyond Compare*.
- B. *This Star Won't Go Out*.
- C. *Face to Face*.
- D. *No Looking Back*.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Book: *Face to Face*** 部分中的“Blind since the age of four, the author led a lonely childhood in India”可知, *Face to Face* 这本书讲述了作者的成长故事。故选 C。

3. Which word can best describe the characters of all the four books?

- A. Intelligent.
- B. Passionate.
- C. Pessimistic.
- D. Inspiring.

D 推理判断题。文中提到的四本书都描写了遭遇不幸或身有残疾的人意志坚强地与生命中的苦难拼搏抗争的故事,都是积极向上、鼓舞人心的。故选 D。

B

“I have cancer,” Mum said and held me in a tight hug. I could feel her chest shaking as she tried not to cry but failed.

For all of my twenty-four years, my mum had been supportive. Strength and protection had always flowed from her to me. Now I knew it would have to flow the other way.

Mum didn't stay down for long. After the shock of breast cancer, she armed herself with a notebook and a pen and a thousand questions for the doctors. She took notes on white blood cell counts and medications (药物) with long names as though she were studying for entrance exams into medical school. "The not-knowing is the worst," she said.

The operation was successful. The chemo (化疗) was the harder part. I went with Mum to every chemo treatment. She rarely complained, though her hair was gone and her toenails and fingernails fell out one by one. She joked that she could save money on nail polish and put it towards the doctor bills, even though she never wore nail polish. "Cancer can take my hair, my nails, my health, my very life. But it can't take my smile," Mum said.

Mum learned to share her fears with me, and it formed an even deeper bond between us. Yet I am certain there were fears she didn't share because she was still protecting me—worries she only shared with Dad. Even in the darkest hours, she would just joke about the cancer. Mum always said, "When you look at your greatest fear in the eye and laugh at it, you take away some of its power."

Mum was one of the lucky ones. She did beat her cancer, though not without scars. From her, I've learned I may not get to choose what I face, but I do get to choose how I face it.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了妈妈在与癌症作抗争的过程中一直保持积极乐观的态度,并对作者产生重大影响的故事。

4. What does the underlined sentence in Paragraph 2 mean?
- A. There were other ways to treat cancer.
B. Knowledge of cancer would be helpful.
C. Mum had to stay stronger to beat cancer.
D. I should be the one being there for Mum.
- D 句意理解题。根据画线句前一句 "Strength and protection had always flowed from her to me." 可知,母亲给予“我”很多力量和庇护;画线句中的 "the other way" 意为“从相反的方向”,由此可推知此处暗含的意思为“现在轮到作者给母亲力量和庇护”。故选 D。
5. Which of the following words can best describe Mum?

- A. Humorous and generous.
B. Considerate and ambitious.
C. Optimistic and determined.
D. Caring and knowledgeable.

C 推理判断题。根据第四段中的 "She joked that she could save money on nail polish and put it towards the doctor bills, even though she never wore nail polish." 可知,妈妈虽然因化疗失去指甲,但仍能保持乐观态度,开玩笑说没有了指甲可以省下指甲油的钱来付医药费。再结合第三段提到的妈妈拿着纸和笔问医生各种各样有关癌症的问题,能看出妈妈战胜病魔的决心。故选 C。

6. What is the fifth paragraph mainly about?
- A. The fear Mum shared with me.
B. The ways Mum faced fears.
C. The jokes Mum told me.
D. The bond Mum and I formed.

B 段落大意题。第五段提到 "Mum learned to share her fears with me" "she would just joke about the cancer", 这些都是妈妈在面对恐惧时所采取的应对办法。故选 B。

7. What lesson did the author learn from Mum?
- A. Luck counts in beating diseases.
B. Complaint does no good to one's health.
C. Positive attitudes get one through hardship.
D. Sharing feelings helps reduce sufferings a lot.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的 "From her, I've learned I may not get to choose what I face, but I do get to choose how I face it." 可知,作者从妈妈身上学到了一个人可能无法选择要面对的事情,但是可以选择用何种方式面对自己的遭遇,即积极的态度使人渡过难关。故选 C。

C

Every year thousands of people come to the city of Pamplona, in north-eastern Spain, for the opportunity to run for their lives as six fighting bulls are released to charge through the town. There are injuries and deaths every year, but the event is of interest to many people. A paper just published in *Science* describes the insight the event offers into the psychology of panicked crowds.

That is a useful topic to explore. Architects, civil engineers and urban planners must try to work out how people will behave in the event of a disaster

like a fire, a flood or a terrorist attack so they can design their creations to avoid potentially deadly collisions (碰撞). Unfortunately, solid information is hard to come by. Daniel Parisi, the paper's lead author, realised that the Pamplona bull-runs offered the perfect natural experiment.

Dr Parisi and his team went to two different rooftop locations in Pamplona in July 2019, and filmed the runners as the animals were released. Later in the lab, they calculated the speed of the runners, the density (密度) of the crowd, the probability of a runner tripping and falling and the relationship between runner-group density and speed.

Perhaps unsurprisingly, the researchers found that runners picked up speed when the bulls drew near. Less expected was the finding that the speed of individual runners increased with the density of the crowd, which was contrary to a long-held assumption in architectural and urban-design circles that people will slow their pace as group density goes up, in order to lower the risk of a collision, which could lead to a fall and, perhaps, injury or death.

Yet it seems that, in the heat of the moment, people pay little attention to the danger of colliding with each other, and do not slow down. The responsibility therefore falls upon urban designers to work out how best to plan the construction of future tunnels, bridges and other passages that restrict flow. The only option may well be to make them wider.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。在潘普洛纳,每年有很多人来看“奔牛”,科学家通过研究“奔牛”过程中人们奔跑速度的快慢,发现跑步者的速度随着人群密度的增加而增加,这给了建筑设计师关于城市建设的很多启示。

8. What did Dr Parisi and his team do in Pamplona?
- They proved his theory.
 - They recorded a bull-run.
 - They watched a thrilling bull-fight.
 - They designed a psychological experiment.
- B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Dr Parisi and his team went to two different rooftop locations in Pamplona in July 2019, and filmed the runners as

the animals were released.”可知,Parisi 和他的团队拍摄了牛被放出来时的场景。故选 B。

9. What was the unexpected finding in the study?
- People slowed down in crowded areas.
 - Tripping posed a danger to bull-runners.
 - Bulls coming near made people run faster.
 - People tended to speed up in high-density crowds.
- D 细节理解题。根据第四段的内容可知,研究意外发现,人群密度越大,人们跑得越快。故选 D。
10. What is implied in the last paragraph?
- People lose their mind in disasters.
 - Future tunnels and bridges may be wider.
 - Panicked crowds are aware of the danger of collision.
 - Restricting flow helps to prevent people colliding with each other.
- B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“The responsibility therefore falls upon urban designers to work out how best to plan the construction of future tunnels, bridges and other passages that restrict flow. The only option may well be to make them wider.”可知,未来的桥梁和隧道可能会更宽阔。故选 B。
11. Which is the best title for the text?
- How Crowds React to Panic
 - Bull-runs Caught On in Spain
 - Dr Parisi's Finding Shocks the World
 - What Architects Can Learn from Bull-running
- D 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的“A paper just published in *Science* describes the insight the event offers into the psychology of panicked crowds.”以及最后一段中的“The responsibility therefore falls upon urban designers to work out how best to plan the construction of future tunnels, bridges and other passages that restrict flow.”可知,本文不仅谈论“奔牛”,而且将“奔牛”作为观察人们在危险中如何表现的自然实验场景,以便为城市建筑设计师在未来规划隧道、桥梁和其他限制流量的通道时给出启示。故选 D。

D

The roads that wind along the Seine used to be full of heavy traffic. Today, cyclists are enjoying the waterside peace. On the right bank opposite the Eiffel Tower, cars have been made to travel in a

single lane (车道), leaving the other to bicycles.

A sense of being controlled is felt by the capital's car owners. Anne Hidalgo is starting "a war against cars".

As part of the city hall's plan to increase the share of trips taken by bicycle from 5% to 15% by 2020, protected cycling lanes are being lengthened along some of the city's main roads. A whole road on the busy Rue de Rivoli is being changed into a two-way bike route. The left bank's road was closed to cars in 2013, six years after the city made a bike-sharing plan.

"Paris is not anti-car, but anti-pollution," says Jean-Louis Missika. Pollution levels in the city are especially high. With its narrow streets, the government is trying its best to reduce cars that do not carry passengers. Fully 80% of cars running in central Paris carry only one person, and 79% of those on its roads are privately owned. BlaBlaCar, a French ride-sharing startup, recently introduced BlaBlaLines, a new app produced to help people who travel to and from work share cars.

The war against cars started by Ms Hidalgo is also a rethink of how the city should start an age that will be shaped by electric cars and driverless transport. "It will be as great as the change from horse-drawn carriages to cars," says Mr Missika. He expects to see the first driverless six-person taxis in Paris next year, and says that the city hall will ban petrol cars in the centre by 2030.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了巴黎采取一系列措施限制汽车的使用,鼓励人们骑自行车或者拼车出行。这些举措旨在解决巴黎的环境污染问题。

12. What does Paragraph 1 try to show?
- The modern life of Paris.
 - The heavy traffic in Paris.
 - The great scenery of Paris.
 - The reduction of cars in Paris.
- D 推理判断题。根据第一段中的两处对比可知,巴黎的车流量大大减少。故选D。
13. Why have some actions mentioned in Paragraph 3 been taken?
- To avoid car accidents.
 - To encourage bike riding.

C. To make people live a comfortable life.

D. To show the importance of public transport.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“increase the share of trips taken by bicycle”和“protected cycling lanes are being lengthened”以及“is being changed into a two-way bike route”可推断,这些举措主要是为了鼓励人们骑自行车。故选B。

14. What is the government doing to reduce pollution according to Paragraph 4?
- It has closed some narrow streets.
 - It has banned privately owned cars.
 - It discourages cars without passengers.
 - It encourages public transport journeys.
- C 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“the government is trying its best to reduce cars that do not carry passengers”可知,政府限制不载乘客的车出行。故选C。
15. What is Mr Missika's attitude towards the war against cars?
- He is uncertain about it.
 - He has high hopes for it.
 - He is against it.
 - He doubts it.

B 观点态度题。根据最后一段中的“It will be as great as the change from horse-drawn carriages to cars”和“He expects to see the first driverless six-person taxis”以及“ban petrol cars”可知,Mr Missika 支持禁止汽车的举措。故选B。

II. 七选五

Ways You Can Change the World

As a teenager, changing the world can be a great job. You can do a few things to make a positive contribution to the life of others and the environment. Here are some easy ideas for you to get started.

Donate. 16 You may find yourself in a charity shop donating all your old clothes/shoes/toys or you could put all your change in a box outside a charity.

17 Time after time you may have found yourself in a position where you have littered. Littering pollutes the environment and is quite harmful to the people and animals around us. 18

Reduce vehicle pollution. It's not only a waste

29. A. screamed B. waved
C. turned D. looked
A 结合语境和前面的讨厌淋雨可知,这个孩子当时心里很急,所以回答的时候应该情绪很激动。
30. A. distance B. darkness
C. rain D. wind
C 根据上文的“running around”和下文的“Hurry inside!”可知,这个孩子在雨中奔跑。
31. A. collect B. experience
C. fight D. avoid
D 根据下文的“he was trying to avoid the raindrops”可知,他是想躲避雨点,避免被雨淋湿。
32. A. because B. though
C. unless D. if
A 空格前面表明他身上比其他任何人都湿,后面解释造成这个结果的原因。
33. A. with B. under
C. by D. beside
B 根据上文提到的孩子讨厌被雨淋湿可知,作者跑过去,把孩子夹在自己的胳膊底下,这样可以让孩子少淋雨。
34. A. ending B. plot
C. lesson D. theme
C 作者意识到这是一个能让孩子吸取教训的事情。
35. A. care about B. rely on
C. sort out D. go through
D 我们一生中到底有多少时候在极力地“躲避着雨点”?

IV. 语法填空

36. As we all know, black lies, or telling a lie to gain a personal benefit, are usually condemned (谴责). In contrast, white lies, or telling a lie to please another person, are seen as a natural part of everyday interactions. Sometimes a white lie can seem the perfect tool to keep the world around you

37. balanced (balance).

The biggest problem with white lies is that we often need to continue to create more and more lies
38. to cover (cover) the tracks of our original lies. If I say that I can't come to your birthday dinner because I already have plans, I then often need to remember that I 39. lied (lie) and continue to lie when you ask me about it later. This can cause a huge, and often 40. totally (total) unnecessary

strain. White lies have their place, but we tell them too often. Further, white lies can end up 41. hurting (hurt) you, because anytime a white lie will require 42. additional (addition) white lies.

So, the key thing to remember is that don't tell a lie to avoid personal responsibility. If your boss asks whether you 43. have completed (complete) an important project 44. at the end of the day but you haven't, don't make up an excuse. 45. Accepting (accept) the consequences of our actions, and not telling a lie to cover them up, is a matter of integrity.

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

为了激发学生参与志愿服务的热情,你校的联谊学校美国乔治中学需要招聘一名学生作为外联部志愿者,主要负责两校间的联系和接待等工作。胜任条件是英语水平高,能熟练操作计算机,热心为两校服务。假如你是李华,请你据此用英语写一封自荐信。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:外联部 foreign liaison department

【参考范文】

Dear Sir or Madam,

I have learned that your school is in need of a volunteer working for the foreign liaison department. I would like to be considered for the position.

I have a great passion for English. In the past two years, I have been an editor for the *English Paper* in my school. Besides, I am familiar with computer operation and office software, which can help me work well. What's more, I am always ready to help others and provide good service.

I think I am well-qualified for this position. I would be very grateful if I could be given this position.

Looking forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

When I saw her tonight, she smiled and

recognised me. I smiled back at her. She was looking more relaxed even though she was still busy doing her job. I have noticed her several times in the last few months and she looks so much happier now. Tonight when I talked with her, I noticed her name tag. Her name is Pamela.

Pamela works at the express checkouts in a busy supermarket. She deals with problems when the self-service checkout has a problem (no price on products, machine problems, etc.). She monitors these checkouts and usually has hardly dealt with one complaint before another is created.

When I first talked to Pamela, I had called her to the checkout I was using. There wasn't any problem with the checkout though. My problem or should I say concern was about Pamela. She looked tired and was under a lot of stress as she quickly moved from one checkout to the next. It's a bit of a firefighting job.

I told Pamela that she should slow down. I told her she wasn't getting paid enough to be working as hard as she was working. I told her that we, the customers, could wait and it was very harmful for her health to be putting herself under such pressure. I told her that our expectations were not as hard as the ones she set for herself. Pamela told me she would try to slow down. I could tell she was touched that not only did I notice her stress but I chose to

talk to her about it and was concerned for her health. I gently told her things had to change. I told her I would be looking out for her in future to see if she had taken my advice on board. She smiled and said, "I promise that I will try next time."

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

When I saw her, she was still doing her job but there was such a difference. I praised the new her. Now Pamela said other customers would have to wait while she dealt with another customer. She told me the change had significantly improved her health. She added that she had also shared what I said with her colleagues. As I walked away from Pamela, my heart was lightened. She has taken my advice on board and tried to slow down her working pace. A day's work means just that—it doesn't mean that one should put two days' work into one day.

I am proud of myself. Not only have I caused Pamela to reflect on the pressure she was putting herself under, but also she in turn has encouraged her colleagues in the supermarket to do the same. I really feel happy and satisfied that my concern and act of kindness have made a difference to those in need. It's just a simple act of love that costs no money. So my friends, our kindness doesn't have to be material, but just loving. Bless you all for everything you do for others.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and society, whose topic is the development of science and technology and the scientific spirit. This unit starts with the scientific conjectures that have appeared in science fiction, shows the history of science development from ancient times to modern times, enriches students' cognition of scientific phenomena in daily life, guides students to think deeply about the relationship between science and life, cultivates students' attitude towards science and critical thinking, and guides students to try to change their lives with science.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	学习并运用与“科技发展和科学精神”话题有关的词汇介绍各个领域的科学家及其成就。
		语法	复习并恰当运用现在完成时的被动语态。
		语篇	能围绕本单元的主题语境内容,了解语篇中的显性衔接和连贯手段、语篇中过渡句及访谈类文章的行文特征。
		语用	能运用得体的语言回应对方或表达自己的观点,并在口语交际中有效运用非语言形式,如目光、表情、手势等。
	语言技能	听	听懂与日常生活中的发明有关的一般性话题内容。听懂并能独立进行科学实验,撰写实验报告。
		说	使用新学的词汇描述与科技有关的职业和著名科学家。
		读	综合运用各种语言技能,读懂语篇内容。
		写	恰当使用现在完成时的被动语态描述未来可能发生的变化;学会撰写实验报告;运用所学语言知识介绍自己感兴趣的科技领域。
学习能力	能通过运用各种学习策略,在自主、合作与探究式学习的过程中,结合单元所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整学习内容和进程,提高理解和表达能力,最终促进语言能力、文化意识、思维品质和学习能力的综合提升。		

核心素养	具体要求
文化意识	能运用单元所学知识描述科学发展中的不同领域,以及每个领域中的优秀人物;分享自己感兴趣的科学领域,丰富对科技发展给人类带来巨大变化的认识。
思维品质	能探究科学精神的内涵,深化对单元主题意义的理解,培养自己初步的科学思想和科学探究精神。

◦ 必备知识

必背单词	press, shoot, virtual, flexible, battery, capable, stuff, desire, passive, beyond, instance, significant, injure, chemist, astronomer, biologist, accurate, minor, origin, species, stream, extraordinary, brilliant, radium, theory, mental, cure, draft, declaration, experiment, fiction, metal, attach, flash, conduct, scientific, entirely, gravity, account, proof, procedure
重点表达	in addition, never say never, virtual reality, instead of, in terms of, be capable of, work as, beyond recognition, fly a kite, tie... to, along with, establish the truth, take place, die from, come up with, contribute to
重点知识	1. suggest+that 从句 2. if 引导的条件状语从句中的虚拟语气
单元语法	现在完成时的被动语态
单元写作	实验报告

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas — Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Watch a video and extract the key information from it.
2. Read about the inventions from famous novels and think about them.
3. Know and master the main features of an interview.
4. Get the main idea of the text by skimming and understand the interviewee's opinions about the new age of invention.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. shoot *v.* 射出(光线等), 放射
2. flexible *adj.* 易弯曲的, 柔韧的
3. capable *adj.* 有能力的
4. desire *n.* 渴望, 欲望
5. press *v.* 按
6. in addition 除此之外, 另外
7. thanks to 由于; 幸亏
8. in terms of 就……而言; 依照……
9. what's more 此外, 而且
10. as well as 也; 又; 还
11. be capable of 能, 能够
12. lead to 导致, 促成
13. at the moment 目前, 现在, 此刻

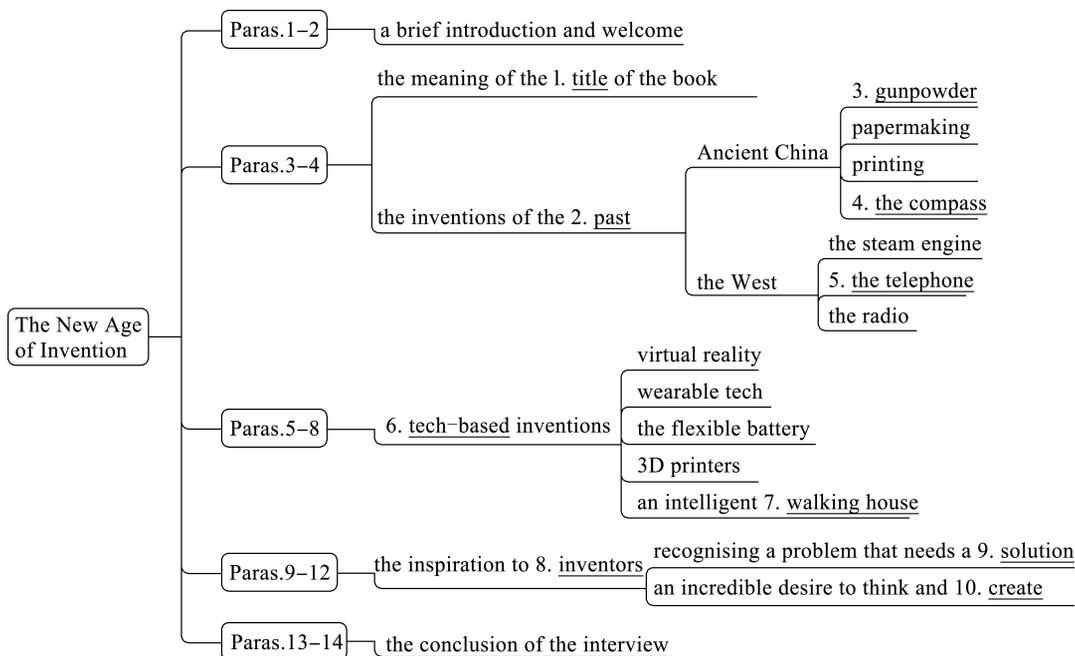
(二) 阅读词汇

1. gunpowder *n.* 火药
2. compass *n.* 指南针, 罗盘
3. virtual *adj.* 虚拟的, 模拟的
4. battery *n.* 电池
5. compute *v.* 计算
6. stuff *n.* 东西, 物品
7. never say never 别轻易说不
8. virtual reality 虚拟现实
9. wearable tech 可穿戴技术
10. work as 担任; 以……身份工作
11. start with 从……开始
12. by oneself 独自

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- What plays an important role in the advances of medicine?
 - The flexible battery.
 - Environmental science.
 - Computer power.
 - Wearable tech.
- What's the real spirit of invention?
 - Imagination of the future.
 - The desire to think and create.
 - One's hard work.
 - Technology's support.
- What can we know from the text?
 - The great age of invention is over now.
 - Lots of the inventions are tech-based.
 - A time machine will definitely be invented.
 - Richard has just published *Between the Pages*.
- What's Richard's attitude towards a time machine?
 - Negative.
 - Positive.
 - Indifferent.
 - Impossible.

答案: 1~4 CBBB

○ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- It suggests that the present day is a new age for

inventions, but many people might think that the great age of invention is over.

[句子分析] 本句是一个复合句。两个 that 都引导宾语从句; 分别作 suggests 和 think 的宾语。

[尝试翻译] 它提示现在是发明创造的新时代, 但可能很多人都认为辉煌的发明时代已经结束了。

- But what remains important is that we have an incredible desire to think and create, and that's the real spirit of invention.

[句子分析] 本句是一个由 and 连接的并列复合句。第一个分句中 what remains important 是主语; that 引导表语从句; 不定式 to think and create 作定语修饰 desire。

[尝试翻译] 不过有一点依旧重要, 就是我们对思考和创造有着一种极度的渴望, 而这正是真正的发明精神。

○ 思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- What qualities do you think an inventor should possess?

答案: 略

- In your opinion, what else inspires people to invent things?

Ways to make life easier and more comfortable.

Unit 3 课后素养评价 (九)

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

I. 阅读理解

Recently, a team of researchers at the University of Oxford found that creating fuel (燃料) for planes out of CO₂ could soon be a reality.

The process uses cheap iron as a material to catch CO₂ from the air and turns it into fuel for planes. The researchers have described their discovery as “the significant social progress” in how the plentiful greenhouse gas (CO₂) is turned into fuel and its potential to make flying more environmentally acceptable.

Aviation (航空) is a large and growing contributor to the greenhouse effect. It contributes around 10 per cent of the UK’s greenhouse gas emissions (排放). Flying has as a result become an environmental battleground—with environmentalists strongly against expansion of air travel—for increasing CO₂ emissions.

The UK, by law, is determined to get to “zero” carbon emissions by 2050, so a new form of carbon-neutral fuel must be found. The problem for aviation is that its fuel breaks down and gives off CO₂ and water, and both of them are sent out into the atmosphere.

However, the new technique would catch the gas in the air and create fuel, without the need of filling up with new fuel from the ground. CO₂ is highly stable (稳定的), but the researchers managed to turn it back into fuel by using a chemical change powered by an iron-based material—at low temperatures—and adding hydrogen (H₂).

Professor Edwards said the achievement could put Britain at a leading position of a new green industry. He expected it could increase production in two to three years and the team is in discussion with UK industries to set up a factory to put it into production. “Our plan is that the world can see that CO₂ can be used as an energy carrier to enable aviation to last,” he said.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了牛津大学的研究人员研发了一项新技术——用二氧化碳制造飞机燃料。

1. Why is the new form of fuel considered as “the significant social progress”?

- A. It is cost-effective.
- B. It’s made from CO₂.
- C. It’s environmentally friendly.
- D. It makes flying much stabler.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的 “The researchers have described their discovery as ‘the significant social progress’ in how the plentiful greenhouse gas (CO₂) is turned into fuel and its potential to make flying more environmentally acceptable.”可知,这项发现之所以是一次重大的社会进步是因为这项发现可以使飞行变得更环保。故选 C。

2. What’s the main driving factor of the achievement?

- A. The shortage of petrol.
- B. The existing law of the UK.
- C. The pressure from the environmentalists.
- D. The aim of “zero” carbon emissions by 2050.

D 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可推知,英国决心在 2050 年前实现零碳排放,这促使研究人员有了这项成就。故选 D。

3. What can we infer from what Professor Edwards said?

- A. The researchers can’t win support from UK industries.
- B. It’s easy to see that CO₂ can be used as an energy carrier.
- C. Britain has been playing a leading role in green industry.
- D. It takes time and effort to put the technique into practical use.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的 “Professor Edwards said the achievement could put Britain at a leading position of a new green industry. He

expected it could increase production in two to three years and the team is in discussion with UK industries to set up a factory to put it into production.”可推知,这项研究的成果如果想投入使用还需要时间和努力。故选 D。

4. What is the most suitable title for this article?

- A. A Significant Chemical Change
- B. Emission-free Flight Fuelled Out of CO₂
- C. CO₂—A Useful Gas if Properly Used
- D. Aviation—A Greenhouse-effect Contributor

B 标题归纳题。根据第一段的内容及全文可知,文章主要介绍了一项新的研究,可用二氧化碳制造飞机燃料;而根据第二段中的“The researchers have described their discovery as ‘the significant social progress’ in how the plentiful greenhouse gas (CO₂) is turned into fuel and its potential to make flying more environmentally acceptable.”可知,二氧化碳制造的飞机燃料是零排放的。所以“Emission-free Flight Fuelled Out of CO₂”最适合作为文章标题。故选 B。

II. 七选五

I work as a meteorologist (气象学家) in Tampa, Florida. It's my job to follow hurricanes and provide information about them for scientists.

I was working for the National Meteorological Office in Bracknell, near London, in the autumn of 1995, and I saw a documentary called *Stormchasers* with my family. 1 Two months later I came across an ad for a meteorologist to work in Florida. I was interviewed over the phone, moved to the US, and

started to work here in Tampa in May 1996.

2 I have been all over the world hunting hurricanes. It's exciting to end up in different cities and different countries day after day. If you are a meteorologist, you have to love flying. I also love working with top scientists. 3 For me, it's like a classroom in the sky.

People often ask me what an average day is like. In fact, there's no such thing as an average day in my job! 4 We often take off at a moment's notice to hunt storms.

Next, I would like to join a space programme and be the first meteorologist in space. 5 There aren't any hurricanes!

If you also want to be a meteorologist, study maths and science and get a degree in meteorology. I have taken the hurricane hunter path, but you could do research.

- A. I have learned so much from them.
- B. What I like most about my job is the travel.
- C. It's a wonderful job and the pay is pretty good.
- D. It all depends on the weather, and you can't control that.
- E. However, I haven't come up with an experiment to do in space yet.
- F. Because of the job, I'm away from my family who all live in the UK.
- G. It was about hurricane hunters and I thought, “Wow, that's an interesting job!”

答案:1~5 GBADE

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务目标

1. Understand this passage to obtain relevant details and master the language points in the text.
2. Design an interview in groups and act out the conversation in front of the class.
3. Improve critical thinking skills, and try to understand better.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The company is investing in innovative (创新的) new products and services to meet Chinese consumers' **desire** to have a better life. 愿望
2. So, if we get rid of such a bulk of old garments, we'll have to buy more new **stuff**. 东西
3. **Batteries** are small devices that provide the power for electrical items such as radios and children's toys. 电池
4. While **gunpowder**, one of the "Four Great Inventions of Ancient China", has been hailed as making a significant contribution to civilisation, the use of fireworks has been increasingly criticised. 火药
5. The adventurer had to regularly consult his **compass** to ensure he didn't steer from his path and get lost in the seemingly endless white expanse. 指南针, 罗盘

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>press</u> <i>v.</i> 按	<u>pressure</u> <i>n.</i> 压力
<u>virtual</u> <i>adj.</i> 虚拟的, 模拟的	<u>virtually</u> <i>adv.</i> 几乎, 差不多; 实际上
<u>flexible</u> <i>adj.</i> 易弯曲的, 柔韧的	<u>flexibly</u> <i>adv.</i> 灵活地; 易弯曲地, 柔软地; 有弹性地
	<u>flexibility</u> <i>n.</i> 灵活性; 柔韧度
<u>compute</u> <i>v.</i> 计算	<u>computer</u> <i>n.</i> 电脑

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>capable</u> <i>adj.</i> 有能力的	<u>capably</u> <i>adv.</i> 有能力地
	<u>capability</u> <i>n.</i> 才能, 能力
<u>shoot</u> <i>v.</i> 射出(光线等), 放射	<u>shooting</u> <i>n.</i> 枪击, 枪杀; 打猎, 狩猎
	<u>shooter</u> <i>n.</i> 射手, 枪手; 枪(炮)

III. 补全短语

1. in addition 除此之外, 另外
2. in terms of 就……而言; 依照……
3. lead to 导致, 促成
4. be capable of 能, 能够
5. instead of 相反; 代替
6. as well as 也; 又; 还
7. at the moment 目前, 现在, 此刻
8. what's more 此外, 而且

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: find + 宾语 + 宾语补足语
And now, we find ourselves in the great new age of technology.
而现在, 我们发现自己正处于伟大的科技新时代。
2. 句型公式: suggest + 宾语从句
It suggests that the present day is a new age for inventions, but many people might think that the great age of invention is over.
书名提示现在是发明创造的新时代, 但可能很多人都认为辉煌的发明时代已经结束了。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. in addition 除此之外,另外

[教材原文] **In addition**, important advances have been made in medicine and environmental science thanks to increasing computer power.

此外,得益于不断提升的计算机能力,医药与环境科学也取得了重要进展。

[归纳拓展]

(1) in addition to 除……之外

(2) add *v.* 增加;加;补充说明

add... to... 把……加到……

add to 增加;增添(多用于抽象意义)

add up 合计,把……加起来

add up to 加起来共有……,总计为……

add that... 补充说……

(3) additional *adj.* 另外的,额外的,附加的

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① In addition to reading for knowledge, we read for fun and inspiration.

② Please add all the figures up, and you will get the total.

③ As we all know, good friends add happiness and value to life.

④ An additional (add) charge is made on baggage exceeding the weight allowance.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之推荐信) 这家酒店提供免费早餐。

此外,还有一个游泳池和一个健身中心。

The hotel offers free breakfast. In addition, there is a swimming pool and a fitness centre.

② (应用文写作之人物介绍) 她除了是一位有才华的歌手之外,还是一位出色的画家。

In addition to being a talented singer, she is also an accomplished painter.

2. desire *n.* 渴望,欲望;要求,心愿 *v.* 想要,渴望,希望得到……

[教材原文] But what remains important is that we have an incredible **desire** to think and create, and that's the real spirit of invention.

不过有一点依旧重要,就是我们对思考和创造有着一种极度的渴望,而这正是真正的发明精神。

[归纳拓展]

(1) have a desire to do sth. 渴望做某事

have a desire for sth. 渴望得到某物

(2) desire to do sth. 想/渴望做某事

desire sb. to do sth. 想要某人做某事

desire that sb. (should) do sth. 想要/渴望某人做某事

名师点拨

desire 后接名词性从句(主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句、同位语从句)时,从句谓语动词用虚拟语气,即“should+动词原形”的形式,should 可以省略。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① I have a desire to spend (spend) more of my future life in writing and travelling.

② We desire that immediate help (should) be given (give) to the local villagers who have been trapped by the flood.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信) 人人都**渴望成功**,而成功只属于努力的人。

Everyone has a desire for success/desires to succeed while success only belongs to hard-working people.

3. suggest+that 从句

[教材原文] It **suggests that** the present day is a new age for inventions, but many people might think that the great age of invention is over.

它提示现在是发明创造的新时代,但可能很多人都认为辉煌的发明时代已经结束了。

[句式分析] 本句中 suggest 意为“表明;暗示”,其后的宾语从句不用虚拟语气。

[归纳拓展]

(1) 在“suggest+that 从句”中,当 suggest 意为“表明;暗示”时,其后的宾语从句不用虚拟语气。

(2) 在“suggest+that 从句”中,当 suggest 表示“建议”后跟宾语从句、同位语从句或表语从句时,从句谓语动词用虚拟语气,即“should+动词原形”的形式,should 可以省略。

[即学即练]

(1)语法填空

① Official reports suggested that the number of households with three generations living together had risen (rise) from 325,000 in 2001 to 419,000 in 2013.

② The professor's suggestion is that students (should) review (review) the notes in time after learning.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之告知信)老师建议我们为即将到来的考试更努力地学习。

The teacher suggested that we (should) study harder for the coming exams.

②(读后续写之表情描写)他苍白的脸色暗示他身体不舒服。

His pale face suggested that he was not feeling well.

多义词汇 专练

1. **press** A. *v.* 按;压 B. *v.* 逼迫 C. *v.* 挤;推 D. *n.* 新闻界

① I don't want the public, especially the **press** to know about this matter at this stage. D

② They are **pressing** us to make a quick decision. B

③ In case of emergency, break the glass and **press** the button. A

④ He **pressed** through the crowd towards the superstar. C

2. **battery** A. *n.* 电池 B. *n.* 一排;一套

① The device can recharge a **battery** in about 25 minutes. A

② They stopped beside a **battery** of abandoned guns. B

Unit 3 课后素养评价(十)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 语法填空

- These days, I can't fall asleep because the coming final exam is putting great pressure (press) on me.
- He shot at the bird with his gun but missed it.
- The world is more flexible (flexible) than you think and it's waiting for you to hammer it into shape.
- The hall is capable of holding about three hundred people.
- The funds for the project will be computed (compute) soon.
- The four great inventions (invent) in Ancient China are gunpowder, paper-making, printing and the compass.
- This kind of book is for children whose native language is Chinese.
- What I told him was that I would find him a good play.
- When Snow White came to herself, she found herself (she) surrounded by seven dwarves.
- It was only when the car pulled up in front of our house that we saw Lily in the passenger seat.

II. 短语填空

at the moment; what's more; instead of; lead to; be capable of

- I believe I am capable of handling the problem.
- The weather at the moment is not typical for July.
- To our surprise, the girl's luggage was filled with books instead of beautiful clothes.
- It's a useful book, and what's more, not an expensive one.
- It was reported that the strike had already led to cuts in electricity and water supplies in many areas.

III. 完成句子

- The road hasn't been cleaned since it snowed.
自从下过雪以后这条路一直没有清扫过。
- It was last night that John wore his best suit to the dance.
约翰是在昨晚穿着他最好的衣服去参加舞会的。
- I found it difficult to work out the maths problem so my mother suggested that I should turn to my teacher for help.
我发现很难解出这道数学题,所以我妈妈建议我向我的老师寻求帮助。

4. I, as well as Tom, am a student who comes from Beijing.

我和汤姆都是来自北京的学生。

5. The machine is/was used to provide power and light for the medical team.

这台机器用来为医疗小组提供能量和照明。

6. Is there anyone here whose name is Li Hua?

这里有叫李华的人吗?

7. With so many things to do, I won't have time to go out tonight.

有这么多事情要做,我今晚没有时间出去了。

8. He reached back into his mind, to remember what he felt as a child.

他在脑子里回忆,想记起他小时候的感觉。

IV. 完形填空

My father once worked for a big company. However, when I was one year old he 1 his job and then our family got into a difficult situation. We were 2, so we sold our house. Then we had to live with my grandmother, though she didn't like kids at all. She never 3. But I was very happy with my parents. My father was skilled at making things. I was also 4 and had a talent for designing.

We didn't have money to buy 5, so we made our own. I put two tyres together to make a horse. I learned a lot about gravity (重力) because I 6 many times.

By 10, I knew I wanted to become a(n) 7, but they didn't take women in engineering school, so I went to another school and 8 in 1945. Then I was very 9 to be accepted by the army's training programme. I learned a lot there. In 1966, I 10 serving the army. I began to work with children with learning problems. I wanted to develop something that would help them. Luckily, I 11.

I tried to retire five times but it never worked. In 1997, I went back to school to learn drawing, which was 12 for my inventions. On a TV programme in 2015, I saw David Kelley, the founder of a famous design firm. When I realised he 13 people from different backgrounds, I thought, "I have special life experiences and designing skills. I

could be of 14 to his firm."

I typed a letter to Kelley and quickly, I got a 15 that I was accepted. At that time, I was 85.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。作者介绍了自己的成长和工作经历。作者是一名女性,一生都在为自己的梦想努力,在 85 岁的时候还被著名设计师 David Kelley 的公司录用。

1. A. lost B. took

C. missed D. changed

A 句意:然而,我 1 岁的时候,他失去了工作,然后我们的家庭陷入了困境。故选 A。

2. A. in order B. in peace

C. in danger D. in debt

D 句意:我们负债累累,所以我们卖掉了房子。故选 D。

3. A. apologised B. performed

C. smiled D. worked

C 根据上文说奶奶不喜欢孩子可知,此处指她从来不笑。故选 C。

4. A. sensitive B. strict

C. pretty D. creative

D 句意:我也有创造力并具有设计的天赋。creative 意为“有创造力的”。故选 D。

5. A. clothes B. books

C. toys D. foods

C 根据下文的“I put two tyres together to make a horse.”可知,“我们”没有钱买玩具,所以自己做玩具。故选 C。

6. A. fell off B. gave in

C. looked up D. turned back

A 句意:我学到了很多关于重力的知识,因为我摔下来很多次。故选 A。

7. A. doctor B. soldier

C. dancer D. inventor

D 句意:到 10 岁时,我知道我想成为一名发明家,但工程学院不接收女生,所以我去了另一所学校,并于 1945 年毕业。inventor 意为“发明家”。故选 D。

8. A. started B. returned

C. graduated D. arrived

C 句意:到 10 岁时,我知道我想成为一名发明家,但工程学院不接收女生,所以我去了另一所学校,并于 1945 年毕业。故选 C。

9. A. afraid B. lucky C. brave D. clever
B 句意:然后我很幸运地被军队的训练项目所接受。故选 B。
10. A. finished B. enjoyed
C. escaped D. kept
A 句意:1966年,我完成了军队的服役。finish 意为“完成”。故选 A。
11. A. left B. agreed
C. succeeded D. stopped
C 句意:很幸运,我成功了。succeed 意为“成功”。故选 C。
12. A. famous B. helpful
C. fit D. ready
B 句意:1997年,我回到学校学习绘画,这对我的创造发明有帮助。故选 B。

13. A. persuaded B. recognised
C. accepted D. doubted
C 句意:当我意识到他接受来自不同背景的人时,我想,我有特殊的生活经历和设计技巧,我对他的公司很有价值。故选 C。
14. A. value B. importance
C. interest D. health
A 句意:当我意识到他接受来自不同背景的人时,我想,我有特殊的生活经历和设计技巧,我对他的公司很有价值。故选 A。
15. A. choice B. reply
C. gift D. reward
B 句意:我给 Kelley 发了一封信,很快我得到了回复,我被录用了。那时我 85 岁了。故选 B。

Section III Using language

学习任务目标

1. Identify and summarise the forms and functions of the present perfect passive through observation, and apply it correctly in different contexts and situations.
2. Understand the main idea of listening materials, gather specific details to complete the notes and explore general topics related to inventions in daily life.
3. Utilise appropriate structures to introduce scientists and their achievements in various fields.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. If you fear that the problems are **beyond** your help, seek professional help from social workers, medical professionals or government authorities.
超出(能力所及)
2. Seven baby loggerhead turtles were recently hatched after successful artificial incubation (孵化) at Qingdao Haichang Ocean Park, marking the first **instance** of artificial breeding of loggerhead turtles in the country.
例子,实例
3. We'll build a review-related database to strengthen the combination of the **theory** and practice.
理论
4. To protect and breed the rare **species**, the park established a primate research centre dedicated to conservation worldwide.
物种

5. The man is regarded as one of the **brilliant** young scientists for his great contribution to the country's space project.
聪颖的,才华横溢的
6. It was reported that at the lower **stream** of the river, the peak flood volume surpassed 1,000 cubic metres per second.
小河,小溪

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>passive</u> <i>adj.</i> 被动的	(反义词) <u>active</u> <i>adj.</i> 主动的,积极的
<u>significant</u> <i>adj.</i> 重要的,影响深远的	<u>significance</u> <i>n.</i> 含义,意思;重要性,重大意义
	<u>significantly</u> <i>adv.</i> 有重大意义地;显著地;意味深长地

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>injure</u> <i>v.</i> 使受伤, 弄伤	<u>injured</u> <i>adj.</i> 受伤的 <u>injury</u> <i>n.</i> 受伤, 伤害
<u>chemist</u> <i>n.</i> 化学家	<u>chemical</u> <i>n.</i> 化学品 <i>adj.</i> 化学的 <u>chemistry</u> <i>n.</i> 化学
<u>biologist</u> <i>n.</i> 生物学家	<u>biology</u> <i>n.</i> 生物学 <u>biological</u> <i>adj.</i> 生物的; 生物学的
<u>accurate</u> <i>adj.</i> 精确的	<u>accuracy</u> <i>n.</i> 精确, 准确
<u>minor</u> <i>adj.</i> 小的	<u>minority</u> <i>n.</i> 少数民族; 少数
<u>origin</u> <i>n.</i> 起源, 起因	<u>original</u> <i>adj.</i> 原先的, 最初的 <u>originally</u> <i>adv.</i> 原先地, 最初地
<u>mental</u> <i>adj.</i> 精神的; 精神健康的	<u>mentally</u> <i>adv.</i> 精神上, 智力上 (反义词) <u>physical</u> <i>adj.</i> 身体的, 肉体的
<u>cure</u> <i>n.</i> 药剂; 疗法	<u>curable</u> <i>adj.</i> 可治愈的, 可医好的
<u>astronomer</u> <i>n.</i> 天文学家	<u>astronomy</u> <i>n.</i> 天文学 <u>astronomical</u> <i>adj.</i> 天文学的; 巨大的
<u>extraordinary</u> <i>adj.</i> 非凡的, 出色的; 令人惊奇的	<u>extraordinarily</u> <i>adv.</i> 奇怪地; 极其, 极端地

III. 补全短语

- beyond recognition 无法辨认
- for instance 例如
- be named after 以……命名
- more than 超过; 多于; 不仅仅; 非常
- due to 因为, 由于
- be regarded/recognised as 被视作……
- break into 闯入, 强行进入, 破门而入
- at the end of 在……的末尾, 在……的尽头

IV. 补全句子

- 句型公式: as... as...

He also developed a calendar which is as accurate as the Gregorian calendar.

他还发明了一种和公历一样精确的历法。

- 句型公式: be known for; “介词+关系词”引导定语从句

British biologist Charles Darwin (1809—1882) is best known for his work *On the Origin of Species*, in which he explains changes in species due to natural selection.

英国生物学家查尔斯·达尔文(1809—1882)最广为人知的是其著作《物种起源》,他在书中解释了物种因自然选择而发生的变化。

- 句型公式: “the number of+名词”作主语

It is recognised as the most common mental disease among older people, and the number of sufferers is growing.

它被认为是老年人中最常见的精神疾病,患者人数也在不断增加。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. significant *adj.* 重要的, 影响深远的

[教材原文] But perhaps the most **significant** success that people have achieved to date is in medicine. 但也许迄今为止人们取得的最重大的成功是在医学上。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be significant for 对……是重要的, 对……有重大意义

It is significant to do sth. 做某事意义重大。

It is significant that... 重要的是……

(2) significance *n.* 含义, 意思; 重大意义, 重要性

be of great significance 非常重要

attach (great) significance to 认为……(很)重要

(3) significantly *adv.* 有重大意义地; 显著地; 意味深长地

名师点拨 ■■■■

常见“be+of+抽象名词”的短语:

be of significance=be significant

be of importance=be important

be of value=be valuable

be of help=be helpful

be of use=be useful

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① As we all know, water is of great significance to human beings.

② It is significant (significance) to put ourselves in their shoes when we have conflicts with friends.

③ Last but not least, health is also very significant for us students.

④ (2024·新课标 II 卷) Because the system is automated, it significantly (significant) reduces the amount of water needed to grow plants.

(2) 写作微练

① (2024·全国甲卷应用文写作之发言稿) 高速列车像串珠一样连接着遥远的城市, **大大缩短了旅行时间**。

High-speed trains link distant cities like beads on a string, significantly reducing travel time.

② (应用文写作之发言稿) 这个发现**对医学领域具有重要意义**, 因为它可能带来新的治疗方法。

This discovery is of significance for the field of medicine as it may lead to new treatments.

2. **cure** *n.* 药剂; 疗法; 治愈 *v.* 缓解(人或动物)的疾病症状, 治疗; 治愈

[教材原文] Currently, there's no **cure** for Alzheimer's, but scientists are researching ways to improve the quality of life for people living with the disease.

目前, 还没有治愈阿尔茨海默病的方法, 但是科学

家们正在研究提高阿尔茨海默病患者的生活质量的方法。

[归纳拓展]

(1) cure sb. of sth. 治好某人的……病; 改正某人的不良习惯

(2) a cure for... 治疗……的方法

名师点拨

其他“动词+sb.+of+sth.”型短语:

① accuse sb. of sth. 控告某人某物

② warn sb. of sth. 警告某人某物

③ remind sb. of sth. 提醒某人某物

④ rob sb. of sth. 抢劫某人某物

⑤ suspect sb. of sth. 怀疑某人某物

⑥ inform sb. of sth. 通知某人某物

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① The doctor is trying to find a cure for this rare disease.

② Kindness and understanding can cure people of loneliness.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之建议信) 笑声可以**治愈压力和忧虑**。

Laughter can be a cure for stress and worry.

② (读后续写之情景描写) 这张老照片**让那位老人想起了他在那个小镇度过的幸福时光**。

This old photo reminds the old man of his happy days spent in that small town.

语法研习课

现在完成时的被动语态

语法感知

① This evening, I'll be talking to Dr Richard Fairhurst, whose new book *The New Age of Invention* **has just been published**.

② I guess you **have been asked** about the title of your book before.

③ New inventions like 3D printers **have been used** to make replacement hearts and bone parts.

①②③句均使用了“have/has been+及物动词的过去分词”的结构, 我们称之为**现在完成时的被动语态**。

现在完成时的被动语态表示**已经完成**的动作, 且主语是动作的承受者。

语法精讲

一、现在完成时的被动语态的含义和构成

现在完成时的被动语态强调动作或状态在说话之前已经结束或持续到现在并对现在产生影响或造成结果; 同时, 主语是行为动作的承受者, 主语与谓语动词之间为被动关系, 表示“……已经被……”。

现在完成时的被动语态的结构是“主语+have/has+been+及物动词的过去分词”。

It is said that the plan **has been studied** by the experts for three times.

据说,这个计划已经被专家研究了三次了。

Paper money **has been used** for over one thousand years.

纸币已经使用了一千多年了。

These flowers **have been watered**. You can go home now.

这些花已经被浇过水了,你现在可以回家了。

二、现在完成时的被动语态的几种常规用法

1. 用于不知道动作执行者是谁时。

His bike **has been stolen**.

他的自行车被人偷了。(不清楚是被谁偷的)

2. 用于动作执行者是泛指或不言自明时。

Not a book in the library **has been taken away**.

图书馆里的书没有一本被人拿走。(没人拿书,泛指)

3. 用于动作的执行者不是人时。

The house **has been washed away** by the storm.

那栋房子已经被暴风雨冲走了。

名师点拨

现在完成时的标志词有“for+一段时间”、since、already、ever、yet、so far、up to/until now、in the last/past few years/days/minutes/months 等。

三、现在完成时的被动语态的否定式和疑问句式

1. 现在完成时的被动语态的否定式由“have/has + not + been + 及物动词的过去分词”构成。

The ink **has not been removed** from his overcoat.

墨迹还没有从他的大衣上去掉。

2. 现在完成时的被动语态的一般疑问式由“Have/Has + 主语 + been + 及物动词的过去分词”构成。

Has the date for the next meeting **been decided**?

下次会议的日期已确定了吗?

3. 现在完成时的被动语态的特殊疑问式由“特殊疑问词 + have/has + 主语 + been + 及物动词的过去分词”构成。

How long has this film been shown?

这部电影已放映多长时间了?

Who has been helped by the new computer?

谁已经得到了这台新计算机的帮助?

How many new words have been learned by these students?

这些学生已经学会了多少个新单词?

四、现在完成时的被动语态需要注意的问题

1. 现在完成时的被动语态有两个助动词,即 have/has 和 been,两者缺一不可。

He **has been selected** to take part in the sports meeting.

他已被选中参加运动会。

2. 注意与一般过去时的被动语态的区别:一般过去时的被动语态表示一个被动的动作发生在过去某个时候,不强调对现在的影响;而现在完成时的被动语态的动作或状态尽管发生在过去,但侧重说明该动作或状态对现在造成的影响和结果。

The library **has been built**.

这座图书馆已经建好了。(图书馆可以用了)

The library **was built** last year.

这座图书馆是去年建成的。(图书馆现在是否能用是未知的)

3. 由 finish、buy、start、begin、post、return、borrow、join、marry、open 等非延续性动词构成的现在完成时的被动语态不能与表示一段时间的状语如 for four days、how long 等连用,若与这些时间状语连用,需要改换动词或时态。

译:这本书借了一周了。

误:The book has been borrowed for a week.

正:The book **has been kept** for a week.

但这类动词的否定式可表示动作的持续过程,具有延续性,因而可与 since 或 for 引导的时间段连用。

The book **has not been borrowed** since last week.

自上周以来,没有人借过这本书。

4. 有些动词短语是一个不可分割的整体,在被动结构中要保持其完整性,不可省略这些动词短语中的介词或副词。

The injured bird **has been looked after** since it was saved. (after 不可漏掉)

那只受伤的小鸟获救后一直被照看着。

语法冲关

I. 语法填空

- For centuries, the ancient language has been passed (pass) on from one generation to another.
- Jenny is very careless. This is the third time that she has lost (lose) her library card.
- Mr Lee moved to New Jersey in his early twenties and he has lived (live) in the United States ever since.
- Their new house has been decorated (decorate) for two months and they will settle in it in the near future.
- When and where to go for the on-salary holiday

has not been decided (not decide) yet.

6. Great changes have taken (take) place in my hometown and you can see that a lot of factories have been set (set) up.
7. Over the past three years, the paintings have been taken (take) to more than 20 museums in the world.
8. —Why does the lake smell terrible?
—Because large quantities of water have been polluted (pollute).

II. 把下面各句改为被动语态

1. They have advertised their new cars on the Internet since last week.
→ Their new cars have been advertised on the Internet (by them) since last week.

2. My friend has bought a new personal computer.
→ A new personal computer has been bought by my friend.
3. Jack's boss has always praised him for his devotion to work.
→ Jack has always been praised by his boss for his devotion to work.
4. We have planted many trees on the hill in the last five years.
→ Many trees have been planted (by us) on the hill in the last five years.
5. She has already returned the book to the library.
→ The book has already been returned to the library (by her).

Unit 3 课后素养评价 (十一)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

beyond; due to; minor; mental; at the end of; passive; for instance; species; be recognised as; theory; be named after; extraordinary

1. Emotional or mental problems can arise from a physical cause.
2. Due to the bad weather, there may be some minor changes to the schedule.
3. What Jack had done was beyond my comprehension.
4. At the end of last year several similar theories had been put forward.
5. The city was named after Mr Brown, in memory of his great deeds.
6. It's a sad truth that children are the biggest victims of passive smoking.
7. Controlled by computers, the future home will learn about the master's likes and dislikes. For instance, it will set the heat in the house to his/her favourite temperature.
8. As the former best-seller, this book is now recognised as a classic.
9. The task requires extraordinary patience and endurance.
10. As is known to all, pandas are an endangered species.

II. 语法填空

1. He got his leg injured (injure) in a skating game.
2. We originally (original) intended to stay for just a few days.
3. Doctors are now able to cure people of many diseases which in former times would have killed them.
4. It is of great significance (significant) for him to be admitted into a key university.
5. Only when you know about these idioms can you use them accurately (accurate).
6. One of the men kept guard, while the other broke into the house.
7. More than 100 famous films have been shown (show) in the city since July.
8. Since your work has been finished (finish), you can have a rest now.
9. These houses have been built (build) by workers since two years ago.
10. This book has been read (read) by me three times.

III. 阅读理解

Modern inventions have sped up people's lives amazingly. Motor-cars cover a hundred miles in little more than an hour, aircraft cross the world a day, while computers operate at lightning speed. Indeed, this love of speed seems never-ending. Every year

motor cars are produced which go even faster; each new computer boasts (吹嘘) of saving precious seconds in handling tasks.

All this saves time, but at a price. When we lose or gain half a day in speeding across the world in an airplane, our bodies tell us so. We get the uncomfortable feeling known as jet-lag (时差); our bodies feel that they have been left behind in another time zone. Again, spending too long at computer results in painful wrists and fingers. Mobile phones also have their dangers according to some scientists; too much use may transmit harmful radiation into our brains, a consequence we do not like to think about.

However, what do we do with the time we have saved? Certainly not to relax, or so it seems. We are so accustomed to constant activity that we find it difficult to sit and do nothing, or even just one thing at a time. Perhaps the days are long gone when we might listen quietly to a story on the radio, letting imagination take us into another world.

There was a time when some people's lives were devoted simply to the cultivation of the land or the care of cattle. No multi-tasking there, their lives went on at a much gentler pace, and in a familiar pattern. There is much that we might envy about a way of life like this. Yet before we do so, we must think of the hard tasks our ancestors faced; they farmed with bare hands, often lived close to hunger, and had to fashion tools from wood and stone. Modern machinery has freed people from that primitive existence.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇论说文。文章介绍了现代发明极大地加快了人们的生活节奏,节省了时间,但也让人们付出了代价,给人们的生活带来了各种影响。

1. Why do the new products become more and more time-saving according to the passage?
 - A. Because our love of speed seems never-ending.
 - B. Because time is limited.
 - C. Because the prices are increasingly high.
 - D. Because the companies boast a lot.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Indeed, this

love of speed seems never-ending.”可知,新产品变得越来越省时是因为我们对速度的热爱似乎是无止境的。故选 A。

2. What does the underlined part “the days” in Paragraph 3 refer to?
 - A. Imaginary life.
 - B. Simple life in the past.
 - C. Times of inventions.
 - D. Times for constant activity.

B 词义猜测题。根据上文的“*We are so accustomed to constant activity that we find it difficult to sit and do nothing, or even just one thing at a time.*”和下文的“*There was a time when some people's lives were devoted simply to the cultivation of the land or the care of cattle.*”可知,也许我们可以静静地听收音机里的故事,让想象带我们进入另一个世界的日子已经一去不复返了。由此可知, the days 指代“过去的简单生活”。故选 B。

3. What is the author's attitude towards the modern technology?

A. Critical.	B. Objective.
C. Optimistic.	D. Negative.

B 观点态度题。根据第一段中的“*Modern inventions have sped up people's lives amazingly.*”,第二段中的“*All this saves time, but at a price.*”和最后一段中的“*Yet before we do so, we must think of the hard tasks our ancestors faced; they... Modern machinery...*”可知,作者既说明了现代发明让人们付出一些代价,也阐述了没有这些发明时人们的生活极为不便。由此可推知,作者对现代技术的态度是客观的。故选 B。

4. What does the passage mainly discuss?
 - A. The present and past times.
 - B. Machinery and human beings.
 - C. Imaginations and inventions.
 - D. Modern technology and its influence.

D 主旨大意题。根据第一段中的“*Modern inventions have sped up people's lives amazingly.*”和第二段中的“*All this saves time, but at a price.*”可知,文章主要讲述了现代技术及其影响。故选 D。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Understand the main idea and the key information of the text, and then summarise it.
2. Know the stylistic features of an essay and practise identifying essays.
3. Gain a thorough understanding of this unit and cultivate a spirit of scientific exploration.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. A **draft** is an early version of a letter, book, or speech. 草稿;初稿
2. After seeing a **flash** of light and a spacesuit, her grandmother started to pray and wanted to flee the scene. 闪光
3. Realism and science **fiction** both require real-life experience and profound thinking about society and the world. 虚构的事,想象的事
4. When you compare single-use plastic items with other sustainable alternatives such as glass, wood or **metal**, what will you find? 金属
5. I was particularly attracted by Wang Yaping's hair, and her zero-**gravity** hairstyle is amazing. 重力,引力
6. The **procedure** for handling Chinese passengers' documents takes about one minute, but the process takes longer for foreign passengers because more information has to be recorded. 程序,步骤,手续

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>declaration</u> <i>n.</i> 声明, 宣告	declare <i>v.</i> 宣布, 声明; 表明, 宣称
<u>experiment</u> <i>n.</i> (科学) 实验	experimental <i>adj.</i> 实验的
<u>attach</u> <i>v.</i> 系, 绑; 贴; 附加; 附属	attached <i>adj.</i> 依恋; 爱慕; 附属于
	attachment <i>n.</i> 依恋; 附件
<u>conduct</u> <i>v.</i> 传导(热、电) <i>n.</i> 行为; 品行	conductor <i>n.</i> 指挥; 公共汽车售票员

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>scientific</u> <i>adj.</i> 科学的 (上)的	science <i>n.</i> 科学
	scientist <i>n.</i> 科学家
<u>entirely</u> <i>adv.</i> 完全地, 彻底地	entire <i>adj.</i> 整个的, 完全的, 全部的
<u>account</u> <i>n.</i> 记述, 描述 <i>v.</i> 认为; 说明; 总计有	accountant <i>n.</i> 会计师, 会计
<u>proof</u> <i>n.</i> 证明, 证据	prove <i>v.</i> 证明是, 结果是

III. 补全短语

1. take place 发生
2. die from 死于……
3. come up with 提出, 想出
4. along with 与……一起; 随着; (除……之外) 又……, 加之
5. tie... to ... 把……系在……上, 把……绑在……上
6. apart from 除了
7. be known as 作为……而闻名
8. focus on 集中注意力于

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: if 引导宾语从句
People wanted to know if lightning was really produced by electricity or something else.
人们想知道闪电是否真的是由电产生的, 还是另有源头。
2. 句型公式: neither... nor...
However, neither the story nor the details of the experiment are entirely true.
然而, 这个故事和实验的细节都不是完全真实的。
3. 句型公式: there is no proof that...
... there is no proof that it hit him on the head.
……没有证据表明它(苹果)恰巧砸在了他的头上。

4. 句型公式: if 引导的条件状语从句中的虚拟语气
But scientists all agree that if Franklin had actually touched the key, he would certainly have

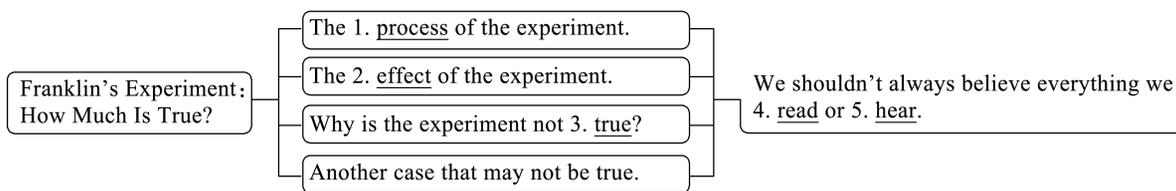
died from the electric shock.
但科学家们都一致认为,如果富兰克林真的碰到了那把钥匙,他必定会被电死。

任务型课堂

Part 1 课文理解

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- What does the text mainly talk about?
 - Scientific research should be based on truth.
 - Franklin's experiment with lightning is very famous.
 - Franklin's experiment with lightning is complete fiction.
 - We shouldn't question some famous scientists' experiments.
- What's people's attitude towards Franklin's experiment?
 - Doubtful.
 - Believable.
 - Indifferent.
 - Negative.
- Why do scientists often question accepted ideas?
 - Because they think they are cleverer than others.
 - Because accepted ideas are often wrong.
 - Because they only believe in themselves.
 - Because they want to establish the facts.
- According to the text, which statement is TRUE?
 - Scientists thought actually Franklin didn't touch the key at all.
 - Franklin died from the experiment.
 - All the scientists believed the story of the experiment.
 - Only one scientist had some doubt about the story.

答案: 1~4 ABDA

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- Although it has been proved that Franklin's experiment took place, more than one scientist has questioned what really happened.
[句子分析]本句是一个复合句。Although 引导的是让步状语从句,其中 that 引导主语从句;在主句中,what 引导宾语从句,且在从句中作主语。
[尝试翻译]虽然已证实富兰克林的这一实验确实发生过,不少科学家还是对其真实性提出了质疑。
- But scientists all agree that if Franklin had actually touched the key, he would certainly have died from the electric shock.
[句子分析]本句是一个复合句。that 引导宾语从句,在该从句中,if 引导与过去事实相反的虚拟条件句。
[尝试翻译]但科学家们都一致认为,如果富兰克林真的碰到了那把钥匙,他必定会被电死。

思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- Why did Franklin make the experiment with lightning?
He was eager to know whether lightning was really produced by electricity or something else.
- In what ways do scientists contribute to society?
Firstly, scientific discoveries promote the development of our society. Secondly, the contributions of scientists in medicine extend our life span. Thirdly, scientists have invented a lot of surprising tools that fundamentally improve our living standards.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. attach v. 系; 绑; 贴; 附加; 附属

[教材原文] A metal key was **attached** to the string.

细绳上绑着一把金属钥匙。

[归纳拓展]

(1) attach to 依附, 附属; 加入; 使依恋

attach importance to 认为……重要; 对……给予重视

attach oneself to 参加; 和……在一起

attach to... 与……有联系, 与……有关联

attach... to... 把……固定到/附/贴在……上

(2) attached *adj.* 依恋; 爱慕; 附属于

an attached sheet 附表; 附单; 附页

be attached to 依恋; 附属于

(3) attachment *n.* 依恋; 附件

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① The Indian was emotionally attached (attach) to his mountains, valleys, or prairies.

② They make every email appear as if it has an attachment (attach).

③ For further information, please contact us on the attached (attach) form.

④ Attach a recent photo to your application form.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之倡议书) 为了子孙后代的福祉, 我们应该高度重视环境保护。

We should attach great importance to environmental protection for the well-being of future generations.

② (读后续写之情感描写) 她深深地依恋着她的家人, 并尽可能多地和他们在一起。

She is deeply attached to her family and spends as much time with them as possible.

2. come up with 提出; 想出; 赶上

[教材原文] Some have even questioned the story about the apple that fell on Newton's head and led him to **come up with** his theory of gravity.

一些科学家甚至也怀疑过牛顿的故事: 一个苹果掉下来砸中了牛顿的脑袋, 促使他提出了万有引力定律。

[归纳拓展]

come up 走近; 发生; 被提及

come about 发生; 产生

come out 出来, 出现; 开花; 出版

come across 遇见; 偶然发现; 被理解

come along 一起来; 陪伴

come to 总计; 谈到; 涉及; 苏醒

when it comes to... 当涉及……时, 谈到……时

名师点拨

come up with 意为“提出”, 主语(多是人)是提出者, 后面的宾语才是被提出的内容; come up 意为“被提及”, 主语(多是物)是被提及的内容, 无被动语态。

I came up with a proposal and it soon came up at the meeting.

我想出了一条建议, 这条建议很快就在会上被讨论了。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① He is very quick-thinking, and is often able to come up with new jokes.

② When you come across such words, check a dictionary to confirm their exact pronunciations.

③ I'll never understand how it came about that you were an hour late on such a short journey.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之建议信) 当谈到学习一门新语言时, 练习是至关重要的。

When it comes to learning a new language, practice is essential.

② (读后续写之情节描写) 当我们正在讨论这个项目时, 一个新的想法突然冒了出来, 这个想法可能会改变我们工作的整个方向。

When we were discussing the project, a new idea suddenly came up that might change the whole direction of our work.

3. if 引导的条件状语从句中的虚拟语气

[教材原文] But scientists all agree that **if** Franklin **had** actually **touched** the key, he **would** certainly **have died from** the electric shock.

但科学家们都一致认为, 如果富兰克林真的碰到了那把钥匙, 他必定会被电死。

[句式分析] 本句为 if 引导的虚拟条件句, 表示对过去事情的假设, 从句部分采用过去完成时, 而主句部分采用 “would/could/should/might + have done” 结构。

[归纳拓展]

(1) 在 if 引导的虚拟条件句中, 当表示不同时间的假设时, 从句和主句部分要采用不同的结构形式。

(2) 当表示对过去的假设时, 从句用过去完成时; 当表示对现在的假设时, 从句用一般过去时; 当表示对将来的假设时, 从句用 were to do/should do 或一般过去时。

(3) 当表示对过去的假设时, 主句采用 would/could/should/might + have done 结构; 当表示对现在和将来的假设时, 主句部分采用 would/could/should/might + 动词原形结构。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① If you had read (read) the directions carefully, some mistakes in the exam would have been avoided.

② If Newton lived (live) today, he would be surprised by what has been discovered in science and technology.

③ If I should fail (fail) in the College Entrance Examination, I would have to wait for another year.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信) 如果他听了我的建议, 他就不会犯这么大的错误了。

If he had taken my advice, he wouldn't have made such a big mistake.

多义词汇 专练

1. **flash** A. *v.* (使) 闪现, 显示 B. *v.* 飞速运动; 掠过 C. *v.* 突然想到; 猛然想起

D. *v.* 闪耀, 闪光 E. *n.* 闪光

① The lightning **flashed** and distant thunder rolled.

D

② His name was **flashed** up on the screen.

A

③ A terrible thought **flashed** through my mind.

C

④ The countryside **flashed** past the train windows.

B

⑤ There was a blinding **flash** and the whole building shuddered.

E

2. **conduct** A. *v.* 指挥 B. *n.* 行为 C. *v.* 组织; 实施

① He was discharged from the police force because of his improper **conduct**.

B

② To get solid proof, he **conducted** the investigation.

C

③ He was invited to **conduct** a concert in America.

A

Unit 3 课后素养评价 (十二)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

- I drafted (起草) the instructions myself last week.
- The astronauts are conducting a series of experiments (实验) to learn more about how the body adapts to weightlessness.
- We have made it clear to them that we want facts, not fictions (虚构的事).
- Cut the wire and attach (系) its free ends to a switch.
- As is well known, to conduct (传导) an electric current means to transmit electrons.
- Mars has an insubstantial atmosphere, consisting almost entirely (完全地) of carbon dioxide.
- Economists have been concerned with establishing proofs (证明) for their arguments.

- There is a set procedure (程序) for making formal complaints.

II. 语法填空

- They will sign the declaration (declare) tomorrow.
- It's believed that scientific (science) theories must be based on facts.
- And all those things have to be taken into account as I prepare for an interview.
- According to the play, the first act (幕) took place in 1898 at the time of the Qing Dynasty.
- It was reported that a signal failure contributed to the crash.
- The farmer tied his sheep to a tree in front of his house before he went into the room to sleep.
- The man along with his wife and children often sits (sit) on the sofa watching TV.

III. 短语填空

take place; die from; apart from; come up with;
be attached to; along with; on no account; tie...
to...; for instance

1. On no account should the house be left unlocked.
2. Apart from a small team of paid staff, the organisation is made up of unpaid volunteers.
3. There is a middle school which is attached to the institute.
4. Great men have often risen from poverty, for instance, Lincoln and Edison.
5. The plotlines (主要情节) of cartoons are simple and they often take place at home or school.
6. His friend only broke his leg while Frank died from the accident.
7. She lost her job when the factory closed, along with hundreds of others.
8. In order to solve this problem, Shang Yang came/comes up with an idea.
9. In 1749, for example, thermometers (温度计) were tied to kites to measure temperatures.

IV. 完成句子

1. Neither he nor I am able to understand her.
我和他都无法理解她。
2. Mr Green, together with his wife and children, has come to China.
格林先生和他的妻子及孩子已经来到中国。
3. If you had followed my advice, you would not have failed in the exams.
假如你听了我的建议,你就不会在考试中不及格了。
4. If it were to rain tomorrow, the sports meeting would be put off.
如果明天下雨,运动会就会被推迟。
5. He's French, so he can neither speak nor write Chinese.
他是法国人,所以他既不会说汉语也不会写汉字。

V. 语法填空

Palm oil (棕榈油) is the most **1. widely** (wide) used vegetable oil worldwide. It's found in a huge variety of products ranging from vitamins to chocolate and bread. The oil is popular as it has a high melting point and contains healthy fats. The

former makes it easy to spread, **2. while/and** the latter makes it good for our body.

But the oil's popularity comes **3. at** a high price. Palm trees need a rainforest and lots of land to grow on. As **4. a** result, thousands of acres of rainforests in Indonesia, the world's biggest palm oil **5. producer** (produce), are being destroyed to make room for palm farms.

With half of the world's palm oil **6. coming** (come) from Indonesia, orangutans (黑猩猩) have suffered a lot there. In the last 20 years, over 80% of their habitat **7. has been destroyed** (destroy). What's worse, in 2015, wildfires caused by illegal destruction of some rainforests endangered two fifths of the remaining orangutans. Palm farms have also threatened **8. tigers** (tiger) and elephants, and caused water and air pollution.

The easiest solution is to stop using so much palm oil. However, it's not easy because no other natural oil has both of its qualities. Now scientists are creating a new oil **9. to replace** (replace) it by using food waste and *M. pulcherrima*, a yeast (酵母) **10. that/which** feeds on leaves, fruits and flowers.

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是光明中学的李华,请根据以下要点给你的美国笔友 Tom 写一封英文信,介绍你校刚刚建成的实验室和同学们上实验课的情况。内容包括:

1. 实验室设备齐全;
2. 老师们非常优秀,实验课生动有趣、有意义;
3. 同学们认真听课,深入思考,积极投入,他们的观察能力和实践能力迅速得到提高。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数;

3. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Dear Tom,

How are you going? Now I'm writing to introduce our new lab to you.

The new lab is equipped with all kinds of advanced facilities. Our physics and chemistry teachers are very excellent. They always make

classes lively, interesting and meaningful. And the students always listen carefully, think deeply and practise actively according to the teachers' instructions. So our abilities to observe and practise improve rapidly.

As students, we should treasure the beneficial conditions and make good use of our lab to help us study.

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Robert and Henry were two friends in the same class. They always played and went home together. One day, Robert and Henry were going home from school, when, on turning a corner, Robert cried out, "A fight! Let's go and see!"

"No," said Henry. "Let's go home quietly and not meddle with (插手) this quarrel. We have nothing to do with it and may get into trouble. Also our parents are expecting to have dinner with us together at home and I don't want them to worry about me."

"You are a coward, and afraid to go," said Robert, and he ran off. Henry went straight home, and in the afternoon he went to school as usual.

But Robert had told all the boys that Henry was a coward, and they laughed at him a great deal. From then on, they looked down upon Henry and didn't want to play with him.

Henry was sad but he wasn't angry with Robert for his rude behaviour, because he learned that true courage is shown most in bearing misunderstanding

when it was not deserved, and that he ought to be afraid of nothing but doing wrong. Thus, he just ignored the other boys' laughter and continued to go to school and study as well. However, Robert didn't invite Henry to go home with him anymore. Instead, he had some other boys who also thought Henry was a coward. Every day after school, they didn't go home directly but went to the river or somewhere to play games and had a lot of fun.

A few days later, Robert was bathing with his new friends in a river, and got out of his depth. He struggled, and screamed for help, but all in vain. The boys who had called Henry a coward got out of the water as fast as they could, but they did not even try to help him.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

Robert was sinking fast. It seemed as if Robert would be drowned. Just at that moment, Henry happened to be passing by. Hearing the screams, Henry ran to the riverside, threw off his clothes and jumped into the water without hesitation. He reached Robert just as he was sinking the last time. By great effort, and with much danger to himself, he brought Robert to the shore.

Thus, Robert's life was saved. Robert and his new friends were ashamed of having called Henry a coward. They realised that Henry had true courage. They said sorry to Henry for their rude behaviour and asked for his forgiveness. Henry forgave them happily. He and Robert were friends again and they went home together as usual. From this, Robert learned what true courage was; never be afraid to do good, but always fear to do evil.

迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

Part 1 应用文写作

——实验报告

○写作指导

把(物理、化学等)实验的目的、步骤、现象、结论等记录下来,经过整理,用书面文字的形式呈现出来,叫作实验报告。实验报告一般包括三部分的内容。

第一部分:实验报告的名称和实验目的;

第二部分:写明实验过程中需要使用的实验用品、实验报告的具体步骤、实验过程中需要注意的事项等;

第三部分:写明实验现象,得出结论。

实验报告写作过程中最为重要的一点是用词要准确,表述应具有逻辑性、连贯性、严谨性。写作过程中多采用简洁明了的语言,如不定式、祈使句、并列句等结构和形式。

○典题示例

根据下面的提示,写一篇有关水沸腾的实验报告。

实验目的:1. 观察水沸腾时的温度;

2. 观察水沸腾时的现象。

实验用品:烧杯(beaker)、水、温度计(thermometer)、酒精灯(alcohol burner)、火柴等。

实验步骤:1. 在烧杯里盛 100 克左右的水;

2. 将温度计放入水中;

3. 加热杯中的水,并观察温度计的示数和水的情况。

实验现象:当温度达到 100℃ 时,水面出现大量气泡。

实验结论:水在 100℃ 时开始沸腾,并产生大量气泡。

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	实验报告
----	------

续表

时态	一般现在时
人称	第三人称
要点	1. 描述实验目的; 2. 列出实验用品,同时具体描述实验步骤; 3. 描述实验现象,得出最终结论。

Step 2: 要点补全

① To observe (为了观察) the temperature of the water when it is boiling.

② Heat the water (加热……里的水) in the beaker, and watch the readings of the thermometer.

③ Observe what happens (观察所发生的) when the water is boiling.

④ Bubbles begin to appear when the temperature reaches (当温度到达) 100 degrees centigrade.

Step 3: 句式升级

用并列连词 and 连接 Step 2 中的句②③

Heat the water in the beaker, watch the readings of the thermometer and observe what happens when the water is boiling.

Step 4: 连句成篇

The experiment is designed to observe the temperature of the water when it is boiling and to see what happens during the process.

To carry out the experiment, we need the following things: a beaker, water, a thermometer, an alcohol burner, a beaker holder, and matches. When all these are ready, you can begin the experiment. First, fill the beaker with about 100 g

water. Next, put a thermometer in the water. Finally, heat the water in the beaker, watch the readings of the thermometer and observe what happens when the water is boiling.

As a result, we can see bubbles begin to appear when the temperature reaches 100 degrees centigrade. We can draw two conclusions from the experiment: the water boils when the temperature reaches 100 degrees centigrade, and a lot of bubbles appear during the boiling.

○学以致用

根据下面的内容提示,写一篇实验报告。

实验目的:观察冰融化的过程中,温度是否发生变化。

实验用品:冰块、大小烧杯、温度计、热水等。

实验步骤:1. 把热水倒入大烧杯,冰块放入小烧杯;

2. 把小烧杯放入热水中,同时在冰块中插入温度计;

3. 观察冰块融化为水的整个过程中的温度变化并记录数据。

实验现象:在冰融化的过程中,温度计的示数没有变化。

实验结论:在冰融化的过程中,温度没有变化。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:融化为 melt into

【参考范文】

In order to find out whether the temperature changes while ice is melting into water, we conduct an experiment.

To carry out the experiment, we need the following things: a big beaker, a small beaker, a thermometer, ice, and hot water. First, we put hot water in a big beaker and fill the small beaker with ice. Then we put a thermometer into the ice of the small beaker which is put into the hot water. While the ice is melting, we carefully observe the changing temperature and make a note of it.

Finally, ice melts and we are surprised to find that the temperature remains the same during the process. We can draw a conclusion through the experiment: the temperature doesn't change when ice is melting into water.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

Having struggled with financial difficulties for six months and failing to find a way out, I had to close my technology writing business. Fortunately, I found a new job as a salesperson and soon got a client. At the time, I wondered if it was too good to be true.

By the second month, something didn't seem right, and I developed a bad feeling about the client and the work. When the third month's check didn't arrive on time, I sent the client an email to find out what was going on. But there was no reply. Then I sent another email, and another. The check never arrived, and I never heard from the client again. With no hope in sight, I hit rock bottom. Panic replaced cautious optimism along with my last self-confidence.

I hid myself from friends and locked myself in my room. One night, the phone rang. The call was from Eric, a friend of mine from high school. When he was in high school, he told me many times about his parents' divorce and his loss of confidence in the college entrance examination. During the difficult time, I gave him much comfort and encouragement. Later, he went to college and was always grateful for what I had done.

After the greetings, I told my friend about my problems and challenges, hoping he would say something comforting. What I didn't expect was a string of sharp words. "What is wrong with you? You can do anything you want to do," he said. "You are a writer, so start writing. Write for a magazine." "Write for a magazine? Are you out of your mind? I don't know the first thing about writing for a magazine, let alone writing things

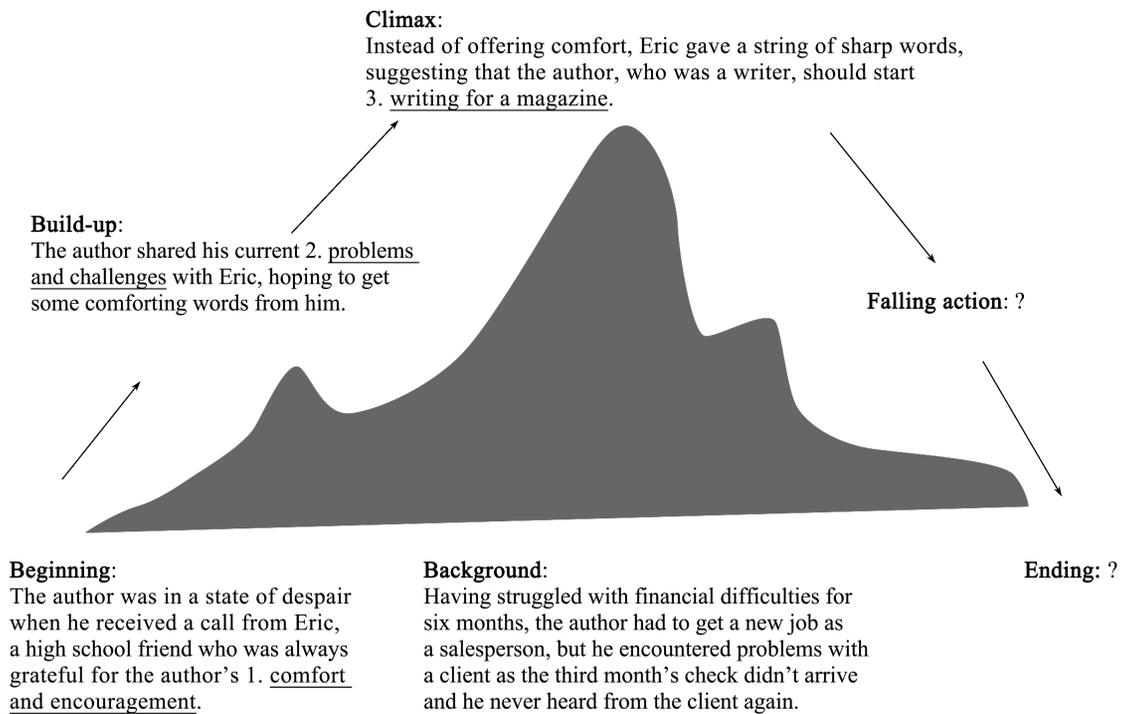
that anyone would want to read. And I have to know where I can send an application form—to what magazine and to what editor,” I shouted at him.

任务一：阅读文章，回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

The story tells that the author ended his technical writing business due to economic difficulties, found a new sales job, but then he did not hear from the customer. When the author felt hopeless about life, one of his friends from high school called Eric suggested that the author start writing for a magazine.

任务二：梳理故事情节，完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三：回答下面的问题，并根据段落开头提示语，构思和完善故事发展情节。

<p>Paragraph 1:</p> <p>Surprisingly, I felt a little better after the shouting. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. How did Eric reply after a short silence? <u>He replied in a firm voice, “I always remember what you said when I was in trouble. You said ‘No one can get you out of trouble but yourself.’”</u></p> <p>2. How did the author feel after hearing Eric's words? <u>The author was speechless and struck by the fact that it was easier to convince others than to convince ourselves.</u></p> <p>3. What did the author do the next day? <u>The author started searching for magazines and finally found one that accepted online contributions with various topics. Then he began to prepare the application form.</u></p>
---	---

<p>Paragraph 2:</p> <p>After finishing the application form I sent it to the editor. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. What did the author receive two days later? <u>The author received a positive response and an invitation to write.</u></p> <p>2. What was the author's initial writing approach and how did it change? <u>At first, the author only wrote articles he was expert in. Gradually, he began trying new types.</u></p> <p>3. Why did the author credit Eric with his success? <u>Because Eric enlightened the author and helped him regain confidence to face challenges in his life.</u></p>
---	---

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

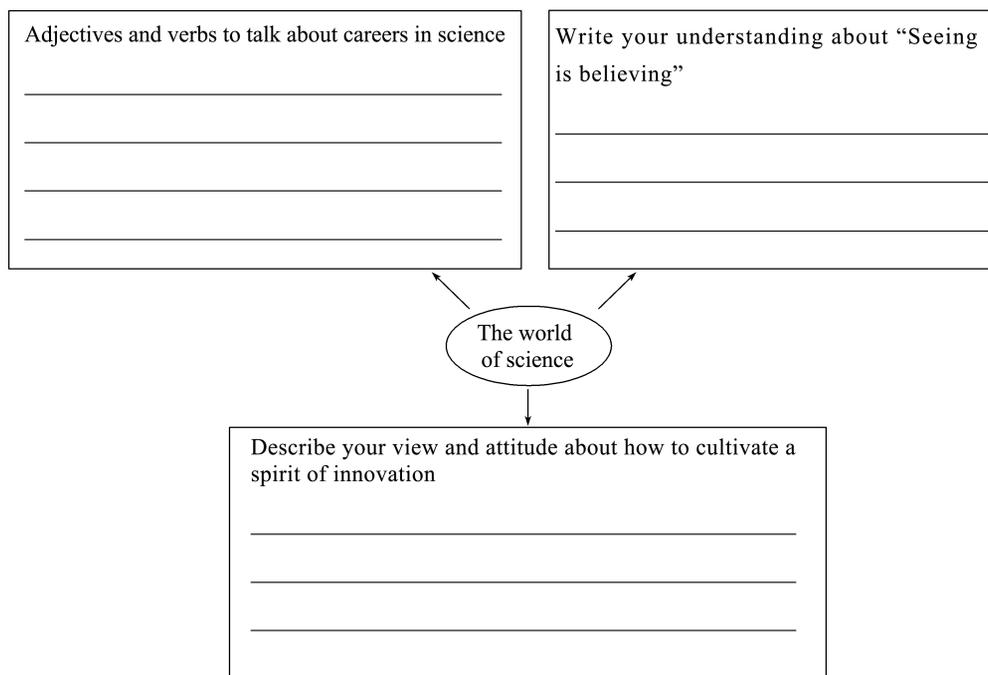
Surprisingly, I felt a little better after the shouting. After a short silence, Eric replied in a firm voice, "I always remember what you said when I was in trouble. You said 'No one can get you out of trouble but yourself.'" Hearing that, I was speechless and struck by the fact that it was easier to convince others than to convince myself. Inspired by Eric's words, I started searching for magazines the next day and finally found one that accepted online contributions with various topics. Then I began to prepare my application form.

After finishing the application form I sent it to the editor. Luckily, two days later I received a positive response and an invitation to write. At first, I only wrote articles I was expert in. Gradually, I began trying new types of articles. One day, much to my amazement, one of my articles appeared on the first page of the magazine! Since then, I have been on my way to becoming an excellent writer. That definitely should be credited to Eric. It was he who enlightened me and helped me regain confidence to face challenges in my life.

重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。



答案:略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

Assistive(辅助的) technology contains special equipment and computer software that is meant to help people with disabilities.

The latest assistive technology is being powered by artificial intelligence(AI), which might help many students who have difficulty in speaking, reading, writing, and working with language. Although many schools are struggling with how and where to use AI, some are welcoming AI applications for students with disabilities.

However, there is concern about how to make sure that students using assistive technology are still learning.

Students can use AI to organise thoughts into an outline(概要), summarise challenging reading materials, or even translate the works of William Shakespeare into today's English. A computer can read materials aloud for students who have sight and reading problems. More and more, those voices produced by

machine sound closer to human voices.

Ben Snyder is a 14-year-old freshman from Larchmont, New York, who was recently told he has a learning disability. Since then, he has been using AI to help with homework. He sometimes uses AI to explain maths problems.

He likes a program called Question AI. One day, he asked the program to help him write an outline for a book report. He finished the work in 15 minutes. Usually, it would take him an hour and a half to create the same outline. But he said he would not use AI to write the report. “That’s just fraudulent,” Ben said.

Paul Sanft is the director of a Minnesota-based centre and in it families can use assistive technology tools and borrow devices. He knows some people will use the technology to do the work they should be doing by themselves. “That’s always going to happen,” Sanft said. “But I don’t think that’s the biggest concern for people with disabilities, who are just trying to do something that they couldn’t do before.”

1. Why do people worry about using assistive technology?
 - A. Because it may leave teaching useless.
 - B. Because it may discourage students.
 - C. Because it may make students lazy.
 - D. Because it may bring trouble to teachers.
2. What do we know about Ben Snyder?
 - A. He is against the use of AI.
 - B. He uses AI in his studies wisely.
 - C. He depends on AI to read books.
 - D. He mainly uses AI to write outlines.
3. What does the underlined word “fraudulent” in Paragraph 6 mean?
 - A. Cheating.
 - B. Stressful.
 - C. Exciting.
 - D. Convenient.
4. What does Sanft think of assistive technology?
 - A. It is harmful though easy to use.
 - B. It is suitable for specific groups.
 - C. It is challenging for the disabled.
 - D. It should be kept away from students.

答案:1~4 CBAB

单元质量评估(三)

I. 阅读理解

A

Situated along the Pacific Flyway, a good migratory path that stretches from Alaska to Patagonia, Santa Cruz plays host to hundreds of bird species. Just head to one of the spots listed below and see for yourself!

UCSC Arboretum

The diverse plants that attract a wide range of birds make these gardens a wonderful place to start. Mark your calendar for the Arboretum's popular Hummingbird Days, a family-friendly festival that celebrates the tiny birds on March 5th and 6th.

Natural Bridges State Beach

This scenic park is excellent for bird watchers due to its wide sampling of local habitats. Over 250 bird species have been recorded in the area.

Neary Lagoon

Birdsong fills the air at this peaceful oasis less than a 10-minute walk from the fun of the Santa Cruz Beach. A walkway allows visitors a front-row view of birds such as American Coots.

Watsonville Wetlands

The wetlands provide a year-round home for local birds and serve as a stop for migratory birds visiting from faraway places. Drop by the Nature Centre for exhibits, maps, and suggestions for best spots to visit.

Birding Tips

● The early birder gets the worm. You're likely to see more birds earlier rather than later in the day.

● No two visits are likely to be the same. Varying times and seasons bring different birds and behaviour.

● No matter how cute those little birds are, you should resist feeding them with your bread. It's unhealthy for the birds and the surrounding ecosystem.

How to Get More Involved

We recommend joining the Santa Cruz Bird Club for public events and abundant online guides. Contact us free at Birding & Wildlife Watch Kit for registration.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了一个观鸟胜地——圣克鲁兹岛,以及人们观鸟时应该注意的一些事项。

1. Why are there many birds in the UCSC Arboretum?

- A. The place is very family-friendly.
B. There are many kinds of plants.
C. There are Arboretum's Hummingbird Days.
D. The place has wide sampling of local habitats.

B 细节理解题。根据 **UCSC Arboretum** 部分中的“The diverse plants that attract a wide range of birds...”可知,UCSC Arboretum 有很多鸟是因为这里有很多种吸引鸟的植物。故选 B。

2. Which place can one reach easily on foot from the Santa Cruz Beach?

- A. Neary Lagoon.
B. UCSC Arboretum.
C. Watsonville Wetlands.
D. Natural Bridges State Beach.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Neary Lagoon** 部分中的内容可知,从圣克鲁兹海滩步行就可以轻松到达 Neary Lagoon。故选 A。

3. When is the best time to watch more birds?

- A. In the morning. B. At noon.
C. In the afternoon. D. In the evening.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Birding Tips** 部分中的“You're likely to see more birds earlier rather than later in the day.”可知,在一天中,去得更早会看到更多的鸟,即早晨是观鸟的最佳时机。故选 A。

B

Most of us only take our temperatures when we are worried that we have a fever. But body temperature can show and be influenced by many other factors: lifestyles, habits, age, and the

environment temperature can all influence how the body disperses heat (散热).

So what is our normal body temperature? In 1851, a German physician called Carl Reinhold August Wunderlich surveyed 25,000 people in one city and established that 37°C was the standard temperature of the human body.

However, recent studies and surveys suggest that the average body temperature is now lower. For instance, a study of more than 35,000 people in the United Kingdom and nearly 250,000 temperature measurements found that 36.6°C is the average oral (口腔的) temperature. Could this difference be a result of changes in measurement tools? Or, do the new findings reflect better overall health?

Myroslava Protsiv, then at Stanford University's Division of Infectious Diseases and Geographic Medicine, in California, and colleagues decided to try and find out. The team hypothesised (假设) that “the differences observed in temperature between the 19th century and the present day are real and that the change over time provides important physiological clues to changes in human health since the Industrial Revolution”.

To test their hypothesis, the researchers analysed information from three datasets (数据集). The first included data from 1862 to 1930 collected from Union Army veterans of the Civil War. The second dataset was from the United States National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey I, which took place from 1971 to 1974. The third dataset was from the Stanford Translational Research Integrated Database Environment, which contained data from people who received healthcare through Stanford between 2007 and 2017. Overall, the scientists had access to 677,423 temperature measurements.

Some of the researchers' findings include: The body temperature of men today is, on average, 0.59°C lower than that of men born in the early 19th century. Similarly, women's body temperature dropped by 0.32°C from the 1890s to today. Overall, the analysis found a 0.03°C decrease in average

temperature every decade.

To check whether the decreases resulted from advances in thermometer technology, Protsiv and the team looked at changes within datasets, assuming (假设) that doctors in each historical period were generally using the same types of thermometers.

The results of the analysis within datasets reflected the changes in the combined data (综合数据). “Our normal temperature's not what people think it is,” says Dr Julie Parsonnet, a professor of medicine and health research. However, because gender, time of day, and age can each change our body temperature, the researchers do not advise updating the standard for all US adults.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。本文主要介绍了针对人体体温的研究发现,正常的人体体温受不同因素的影响。

4. What do we know about the normal body temperature?

- A. It is influenced by different factors.
- B. It was established in the 20th century.
- C. It was the idea of UK researchers.
- D. It is more related to lifestyle habits than to age.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“*But body temperature can show and be influenced by many other factors: lifestyles, habits, age, and the environment temperature can all influence how the body disperses heat (散热).*”可知,正常的人体体温受不同因素的影响。故选 A。

5. How did the researchers at Stanford University carry out their research?

- A. By working with doctors.
- B. By studying healthcare users.
- C. By analysing existing data.
- D. By using different thermometers.

C 细节理解题。根据第五段中的“*To test their hypothesis, the researchers analysed information from three datasets (数据集).*”可知,斯坦福大学的研究人员通过分析现有的数据开展研究。故选 C。

6. What have the researchers at Stanford University found?

- A. Women are naturally a bit colder than men.
- B. Men's temperatures dropped more greatly than women's.
- C. Human body temperatures have dropped 0.03°C since the 1890s.
- D. Doctors have been using the same types of temperature measurements.

B 推理判断题。根据第六段的内容可知,斯坦福大学的研究人员发现男性的体温下降幅度比女性大。故选 B。

7. What might be the best title for the text?

- A. Why Are Humans Cooling Off?
- B. Saying Goodbye to 37°C Forever
- C. Updating the Standard of Body Temperature
- D. Body Temperature: What Is the New Normal?

D 标题归纳题。第一段的内容介绍人体的体温受很多因素影响;根据第二段中的“So what is our normal body temperature?”以及下文针对人体温度的研究过程与研究结果的详细阐述可知,文章主要介绍了关于体温的研究发现。所以 D 选项适合作为文章标题。故选 D。

C

Australian magpies (喜鹊) are common in Australia, loved and feared in equal measure. The fear arises from the fact that nesting females aggressively dive at animals—including, or perhaps especially, humans, often drawing blood. The love comes from the fact that they are simply everywhere, easy to identify, and possessed of a song that has come to represent the sound of nature.

And they also seem rather clever. Now, research by zoologists at the University of Western Australia has corroborated this—but their levels of intelligence are dependent on the size of the group they belong to.

To reach this conclusion, the Australian scientists examined 56 birds from 14 groups of wild magpies living in the suburbs of Western Australia's capital city, Perth. The groups ranged between 3 and 12 individuals. Each magpie—tested separately

to avoid the risk of it getting help from its mates—was put through four tasks that tested its cognitive (认知的) abilities. These included finding food hidden in a transparent container, finding food hidden in differently coloured containers, and a memory test involving finding hidden food. Adult and young birds were tested repeatedly and the results were clear. The birds that lived in larger groups were quicker to master the tasks than those that lived in smaller ones. The difference between intelligent big group members and less intelligent small group members appeared very early in the birds' lives.

In a paper published in the journal *Nature*, lead author Benjamin Ashton and his colleagues report that birds living in large groups “show increased cognitive performance”. Moreover, this “general intelligence factor” is strongly linked to reproductive (生殖的) success in females.

Ashton suggests that the findings indicate the evolution of intelligence is influenced by pressures present in a complex social group. “Our results suggest that the social environment plays a key role in the development of cognition,” he says.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章讲述的是澳大利亚的科学家们发现,澳大利亚的喜鹊的智力水平与它们所属的群体大小密切相关。

8. Which word best describes Australians' feelings about Australian magpies?

- A. Frightened.
- B. Loving.
- C. Mixed.
- D. Tolerant.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“Australian magpies (喜鹊) are common in Australia, loved and feared in equal measure.”可知,澳大利亚人对喜鹊又爱又恨,有着复杂的情感。故选 C。

9. What does the underlined word “corroborated” in Paragraph 2 mean?

- A. Assessed.
- B. Confirmed.
- C. Disapproved.
- D. Doubted.

B 词义猜测题。根据第二段中的“And they also seem rather clever.”以及画线词后的句子“but their levels of intelligence are dependent on the

size of the group they belong to”可知,此处表示科学家们的研究证实了澳大利亚的喜鹊是很聪明的。故画线词的意思是“证实”,与 B 选项为同义词。故选 B。

10. How were the magpies treated in the research?
- A. They were allowed to seek help.
B. They were put in containers.
C. They were divided into some groups.
D. They were studied individually.
- D 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“Each magpie—tested separately to avoid the risk of it getting help from its mates—was put through four tasks that tested its cognitive (认知的) abilities.”可知,在研究中,每只喜鹊都被单独测试(以避免它们向伙伴寻求帮助)。故选 D。
11. Which of the following can be the best title for the text?
- A. Magpies Seem to Be More Social Birds
B. Magpies in Small Groups Often Perform Better
C. Large-group Living Increases Magpies' Intelligence
D. Cognitive Levels Affect Magpies' Reproductive Success
- C 标题归纳题。通读全文,结合第二段中的“*And they also seem rather clever.*”,第三段中的“*The birds that lived in larger groups were quicker to master the tasks than those that lived in smaller ones.*”以及最后一段中的“*Our results suggest that the social environment plays a key role in the development of cognition*”可知,文章讲述的是科学家们通过研究发现,生活在大群体中的喜鹊能够更快地完成任务,并且表现出了较高的认知水平。故 C 选项适合作为文章标题。故选 C。

D

Scientists and ordinary people alike have long wondered why mosquitoes are more attracted to some people than to others. Growing evidence suggests that a person's unique odour (气味) plays a large part in it, with several odorants known as mosquito attractants. Now, the smell of carboxylic acids (羧酸) can be added to that list, researchers at

Rockefeller University reported.

“Everybody asks why some people are more attractive to mosquitoes than others,” Leslie Vosshall, a study coauthor and neurobiologist, says.

So Vosshall and her colleagues gathered 64 volunteers and asked each of them to wear nylon stockings around their arms for six hours to collect their unique skin odour. They then placed two stockings into separate containers side by side, and released mosquitoes to see which stocking they moved towards. After pitting the different stockings against each other, the team came out with a winner that was about 100 times more attractive than the last-place stocking.

The scientists repeated these experiments over three years with the same volunteers, finding that the volunteers' attractiveness rating remained stable over time despite changes in diet or skin product usage.

Then the scientists performed a chemical analysis on the stockings. Sure enough, they found that the stockings that were highly attractive to mosquitoes had high levels of carboxylic acids. “If you have high levels of this stuff on your skin, you're going to be the one at the picnic getting all the bites,” says Vosshall.

The scientists tried genetically changing the insects to reduce their sensitivity to the acids. However, this did not affect the mosquitoes' preferences.

“I think this shows the fact that mosquitoes are choosing who to bite based on several odours from our skin.”

“It also shows outstanding performance in the olfactory (嗅觉的) system of the mosquito: when one receiver is disturbed, the relevant odour can still be found by a different receiver,” Vosshall says.

Unfortunately, it's difficult to change the production of carboxylic acids or other odorants without affecting skin health negatively, Vosshall says. And it is unlikely that any single product could change a person's skin odour to enable them to avoid mosquitoes entirely. “Mosquitoes have many other

plans to be able to find us and bite us,” she says.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了一项研究,研究发现皮肤分泌羧酸多的人比其他人更吸引蚊子。

12. What does the underlined word “pitting” in Paragraph 3 probably mean?

- A. Mixing. B. Exchanging.
C. Comparing. D. Covering.

C 词义猜测题。根据第三段中的“the different stockings against each other, the team came out with a winner that was about 100 times more attractive than the last-place stocking”可知,画线词所在的句子表示“在将不同的长筒袜相互比较后,该团队选出了比例数第一名的长袜吸引力高 100 倍的冠军长袜”。由此可知,画线词 pitting 在语境中的意思是“比较”,和 comparing 意思相近。故选 C。

13. What can we learn from the passage?

- A. People’s attractiveness changes if they use different skin products.
B. Mosquitoes have limited receivers to odours that are easily disturbed.
C. People with high levels of carboxylic acids are more attractive to mosquitoes.
D. Mosquitoes’ preferences can be changed if their sensitivity to the acids is reduced.

C 细节理解题。根据第五段中的“Sure enough, they found that the stockings that were highly attractive to mosquitoes had high levels of carboxylic acids. ‘If you have high levels of this stuff on your skin, you’re going to be the one at the picnic getting all the bites,’ says Vossall.”可知,皮肤分泌羧酸多的人对蚊子更有吸引力。故选 C。

14. What can we infer from the last paragraph?

- A. Carboxylic acids are harmful to skin health.
B. Mosquitoes prefer people who don’t use skin product.
C. People have many plans to stay away from mosquitoes.
D. Products changing skin odour can hardly prevent mosquitoes.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“‘And it is unlikely that any single product could change a person’s skin odour to enable them to avoid mosquitoes entirely.’”可推知,改变皮肤气味的产品很难阻止蚊子(叮咬)。故选 D。

15. Which would be the best title for this passage?

- A. Why Are Some People More Attractive to Mosquitoes than Others?
B. What Can People Do to Protect Themselves from Mosquitoes?
C. When Are Mosquitoes Most Sensitive to the Acids?
D. How Do Mosquitoes Impact People’s Skin Health?

A 标题归纳题。通读全文,尤其是第一段的内容可知,文章介绍了一项研究,研究发现皮肤分泌羧酸多的人比其他人更吸引蚊子。由此可知,A 项适合作为本文的最佳标题。故选 A。

II. 七选五

People don’t really care what you say. 16 Actions speak louder than words. But always you are saying it more than you are doing it. At the end of the day, your words don’t mean much. People will remember you by your actions, not by your words. Someone says, “I’m going to be successful, I’m going to be famous, and I’m going to be a millionaire.” But every time you see them, they are just chatting and relaxing, just being lazy. So they only have the words, not the actions. 17

The lyrics (歌词) to your favourite song on paper don’t mean much. They are just words. It’s the singer that can bring the words alive through their actions. Talk is cheap, actions are expensive. In other words, words don’t do much, actions do everything.

All of the famous people who had successful stories didn’t get there by simply talking about being there. 18 They worked hard to be where they are today. They made something happen. Their words became their actions. Their deeds became their habits.

19 You would regret all the opportunities that you’ve turned down and all the chances that you

never took. It was just because you were afraid or you were worried about what other people think. If you wish someone to believe you when you say something, you have to do something. Words are the talk, actions are the walk. **20**

- A. They did something about it.
 B. All you have got to do is walk the talk.
 C. They pay more attention to what you do.
 D. They would like to explore how to be doers.
 E. What I mean is that words and actions are functioning differently.
 F. If you had one week left to live, you would regret so much in your life.
 G. What I need you to understand is words are the talk, actions are the walk.

答案: 16~20 CGAFB

III. 完形填空

I was the type of student who rarely spoke in class. I was 21 and excited by the material, but when it came to 22 or asking questions, I was so afraid of looking 23 that I typically dummed up (缄口不言)—so much that a high school classmate of mine, a good friend, once yell-whispered “Say something!” to me during a heated class 24 in which I was anxiously silent.

What I came to notice, though, through high school and beyond, was that people would often ask questions or make observations that I'd been 25, but that hadn't occurred to me to say. And then I'd get 26 that I hadn't!

There, again, was the belief that I had 27 new or interesting to say. The fear went deeper, 28 in all the ways I felt different. I worried that no one could relate to me. By remaining 29, I believed, I could avoid the pain of feeling 30, or avoid the 31 of having to discuss life circumstances that were overwhelming.

Whether 32 others or within myself, the 33 of rejection was everywhere. And so for years I unconsciously 34 my opinions before they fully surfaced in my mind, but they were validated (验证) whenever someone echoed them.

Gradually, I've learned that I'm really too

35 for perfection. However, our experience matters more than we know, and sharing it could create the permission someone else needs to do the same.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者因担心丢面子,尽管在课堂上对讨论的素材很感兴趣,但就是不敢参与讨论,更不敢提出问题。后来作者逐渐意识到,每个人的经历和看法都是不同的,分享我们的体验与看法可以获得认同感。

21. A. confused B. engaged
 C. shocked D. disgusted
 B 根据下文连词“and”可知,本空与 excited 构成并列关系,应该也是一个积极词汇。故选 B。
22. A. admission B. translation
 C. discussion D. invention
 C 根据上文的“rarely spoke in class”以及下文的“I was so afraid of”可知,作者比较腼腆,不敢在课堂上问问题或者讨论(discussion)。
23. A. stupid B. humorous
 C. joyful D. satisfactory
 A 根据语境可知,作者害怕让自己看起来愚蠢(stupid),所以缄口不言。
24. A. fight B. struggle
 C. debate D. quarrel
 C 根据上文的“Say something”可知,朋友鼓励作者在课堂辩论(debate)中说出自己的观点。
25. A. working with B. judging by
 C. looking into D. thinking of
 D 经过中学之后,作者注意到人们问的问题和阐述的观点恰恰就是自己心里想(thinking of)的东西,但是作者就是没有说出来。
26. A. accused B. charged
 C. interested D. annoyed
 D 此处是指,作者因自己想到了却没有说出来而感到懊恼(annoyed)或者后悔。
27. A. anything B. nothing
 C. everything D. something
 B 根据下文的“The fear went deeper”可知,作者担心自己的想法没有(nothing)新意。
28. A. however B. therefore
 C. though D. thus
 C 下文的“in all the ways I felt different”与上文的“The fear went deeper”构成让步关系。

Finally, you can go to visit your friends or stay with your family to communicate with them face to face rather than online. The world is so wonderful, so don't get trapped in an unreal world.

I hope the advice will be helpful.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

One evening I went to the park to refresh myself as usual. I rested on the bench and leaned back, stretching my legs. I did nothing but watch the kids playing over there. My eyes fell upon a pair of cute children. I was fascinated by their gaming, screaming and saying innocent words. Perhaps, they used to come regularly, but I didn't notice them before. They seemed to be brother and sister, and I guessed they were under ten years old. I stared at them as they involved themselves in their fun game: hide-and-seek. Their loose coats put a barrier to hide and easily one of them was caught by the other. Then I joined their game and enjoyed it without being an onlooker.

While playing, the girl came running towards me to hide behind the bench. The moment I saw her, she gestured, clamping her finger on her lips. I sat straight to help her to hide, acting as if I didn't know anything. After finishing his countdown, the boy searched for her here and there. At last, he spotted her behind me and screamed, "Grace, come out. I saw you."

She shouted loudly, "No, Christian, you cheated. You have to find me again. Go back behind the tree and start counting again." The boy clapped his hands cheerfully. He laughed out loud, "No, I did it. You are caught." They both started pulling each other. Somehow, I enjoyed their bane fully. Suddenly, I noticed Grace pull her brother towards the fence. A homeless little dog was struggling with pain.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

Grace rushed towards the little dog and kept it on her lap. The dog was alone and not far away from the bench where I rested. So many other visitors were there but nobody paid any attention to it. It had a slight wound on the leg. I saw Grace let her hair down and wrap the wound with her wide ribbon. And Christian took out his water bottle and fed it on water. They both sat there for some time. Grace softly moved her tiny palm over its body and whispered a few comforting words.

Grace was really unwilling to go home, leaving the homeless dog in that condition. But Christian promised her that they would visit it again the next morning. Finally, they both went home. The park was almost empty. I remained there for a moment. Thinking of the attitude of the two children towards the dog, I was lost in thought. The kindness must be inherited from their parents! How happy the life of everyone would be if the humanity compassion became increasingly popular everywhere! I picked up the dog silently, hoping to catch up with them and play with them again.

阶段质量评估

I. 阅读理解

A

Building with 3D printing technology is sparking widespread interest in the construction industry. Besides reducing waste and our impact on the environment, it can speed up construction from weeks, or months, to days. To see how the technology can change the world around us, here are some projects that highlight bold ideas in 3D printed buildings.

Instant Neighbourhood

Community building takes on new meaning with the creation of a neighbourhood of 3D printed homes in Tabasco, Mexico, aimed at tackling global homelessness. American non-profit New Story and tech company ICON built each concrete house from start to completion in 24 hours. New Story says its aim is to provide shelter for people without homes around the world.

Nested Housing

Shambhalla is the idea of Italian 3D print construction company WASP. This project uses soil and straw to build a home in days that costs only 48 Euros in materials and energy. Its round designs are based on the wasp (黄蜂) nest. Each home features a laboratory with a desktop 3D printer for making furniture, artistic objects and more.

Think Schools

Madagascar, an African island state, is hosting one of the world's most forward-thinking school building projects. Non-profit Thinking Huts is using 3D print technology to provide schools where children have little or no access to education. Schools are built using local materials and low-carbon concrete in under a week.

Concrete Steps

Researchers at the Swiss University ETH Zurich used concrete 3D printing to build the 16-metre long curved Striatum footbridge in a couple of days. The project used 500 layers of concrete and 53 hollow blocks, held in place by compression(压缩). This reduces materials by up to 70 percent, and the

entire bridge can be taken down and recycled.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了四个利用3D打印技术建造的创新项目,展示了3D打印技术在建筑行业中的巨大潜力和影响力。

1. What could be the inspiration behind the design of Nested Housing?

- A. A featured laboratory.
- B. A forward-thinking school.
- C. A round wasp nest.
- D. A long stone bridge.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Nested Housing** 部分中的“*Its round designs are based on the wasp (黄蜂) nest.*”可知,Nested Housing 的设计灵感来源于圆形的黄蜂巢。故选 C。

2. Which 3D construction project can be torn down and reused?

- A. Instant Neighbourhood.
- B. Concrete Steps.
- C. Think Schools.
- D. Nested Housing.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Concrete Steps** 部分中的“*This reduces materials by up to 70 percent, and the entire bridge can be taken down and recycled.*”可知,Concrete Steps 这个 3D 建筑项目可以被拆除并重新利用。故选 B。

3. What do these four 3D building projects have in common?

- A. They use local materials.
- B. They are affordable to the homeless.
- C. They are high in cost.
- D. They make construction faster.

D 推理判断题。根据 **Instant Neighbourhood** 部分中的“*American non-profit New Story and tech company ICON built each concrete house from start to completion in 24 hours.*”,**Nested Housing** 部分中的“*This project uses soil and straw to build a home in days*”,**Think Schools** 部分中的“*Schools are built using local materials and low-carbon concrete in under a week.*”以及 **Concrete Steps** 部分中的“*Researchers at the Swiss University ETH Zurich used concrete 3D printing to build the 16-metre long curved Striatum*

footbridge in a couple of days.”可知,这四个 3D 建筑项目的共同之处在于它们都加快了建筑施工速度。故选 D。

B

When Andres Valencia starts drawing at school, his friends gather around to watch. And they are not the only ones who have noticed his talent. Andres has surprised the art world as he makes his first global auction (拍卖).

The Californian art talent first picked up a paintbrush when he was five and now sells his pieces for tens of thousands of dollars. He has even been called “Little Picasso”. He uses a stepladder (折梯) to create his larger works and his talent was found early by his parents. They encouraged his work, which is influenced by Pablo Picasso, but just wanted him to enjoy painting.

“To be quite honest, we try not to talk too much about it in front of him,” Mr Valencia, his father, told CNN. “We certainly don’t refer to him as a talent or anything like that. We just keep it simple with him. At home, he just does his art.”

Mr Valencia said that he and his wife had resisted calls to homeschool their son so that he could focus more on painting. “We want him to go to school like a normal kid,” he said. “And because he’s a primary school student, he’s not like a lot of artists, who spend six, eight, or ten hours a day painting. He paints after school and on weekends, and he also plays with his friends.”

Andres earned global recognition at Miami Art Week. Art Miami director Nick Korniloff said that experts were impressed before they knew Andres’ age. Mr Korniloff said, “We’ve had everybody attend our shows, all great celebrities and personalities, but this little boy brought the house down.”

Mr Korniloff was unwilling to predict what the primary school student’s work may be worth to future investors but was positive that it would last. “His works are as good as anything else I’ve seen in a long career,” he said.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要介绍了年轻的艺术家的 Andres Valencia 的故事。他五岁开始画画,其作品深受艺术界认可,被称为“Little Picasso”;

同时,文章也展示了他父母对他成长的态度和期望,以及 Art Miami 总监 Nick Korniloff 对他的高度评价。

4. What was Andres Valencia’s parents’ expectation of him?

- A. He could focus on his study.
- B. He could become another Picasso.
- C. He could enjoy himself painting.
- D. He could be famous at an early age.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“‘They encouraged his work, which is influenced by Pablo Picasso, but just wanted him to enjoy painting.’”可知,Andres Valencia 的父母希望他能享受绘画的过程。故选 C。

5. Why did Andres Valencia’s parents refuse to homeschool their son?

- A. Because they had little time to help him study.
- B. Because they wanted him to live a normal life.
- C. Because they wanted more people to know his talent.
- D. Because they planned to make him paint for longer hours.

B 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“‘Mr Valencia said that he and his wife had resisted calls to homeschool their son so that he could focus more on painting. ‘We...,’ he said.’”可知,Andres Valencia 的父母拒绝让他在家上学是因为他们希望他过正常的生活。故选 B。

6. What did Mr Korniloff think about Andres Valencia’s future?

- A. He expressed his confidence.
- B. He showed no interest.
- C. He voiced his doubts.
- D. He expressed his disappointment.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“‘Mr Korniloff was unwilling to predict what the primary school student’s work may be worth to future investors but was positive that it would last. ‘His works...,’ he said.’”可知,Korniloff 先生对 Andres Valencia 的未来有信心。故选 A。

7. What is the main idea of the text?

- A. A little boy brought about a change in drawing.
- B. A little boy turned his interest into a career.
- C. A little boy excited the world with his paintings.

D. A little boy's works were put up for global auction.

C 主旨大意题。根据第一段中的“*When Andres Valencia starts drawing at school, his friends gather around to watch. And they are not...*”, 第四段中的“*Mr Valencia said that he and his wife had resisted calls to homeschool their son so that he could focus more on painting. ‘We...,’ he said.*”以及最后一段中的“*Mr Korniloff was unwilling to predict what... ‘His works are as good as anything else I’ve seen in a long career,’ he said.*”可知,全文围绕着年轻的艺术家 Andres Valencia 展开,讲述了他五岁开始画画,其作品深受艺术界认可,被称为“Little Picasso”。文章不仅介绍了他的才华,也展示了他父母对他成长的态度和期望,以及 Art Miami 总监 Nick Korniloff 对他的高度评价。C 项最能概括文章主旨。故选 C。

C

I love watching football games and couldn't help but notice how many footballers chew gum while playing! I always thought of it as a choking danger, so why would they risk it?

When we chew something, the receptors in our mouth that sense taste and pressure from the jaw movements start firing and sending electrical signals to the brain. These electrical nervous system signals move to the brain, which works to understand these signals. This added brain activity places the mind in a more attentive state, which is why focus and concentration are improved.

Additionally, chewing gum has been reported to decrease stress and anxiety levels. The brain activity stimulated (刺激) by chewing gum occurs mainly in the prefrontal cortex, the front part of the brain responsible for decision-making and emotional regulation. When chewing gum, the prefrontal cortex is activated, leading to the release of a “feel-good” neurotransmitter called dopamine (多巴胺). Dopamine is known to promote a sense of pleasure and reward, helping to relieve feelings of stress and anxiety.

So does this mean that the harder you chew,

the better the focus levels? Yes... to an extent. Chewing harder gum does boost attention more than softer gum. Similarly, chewing flavoured gum is better for cognitive (认知) functioning, as it activates more receptors in the mouth than chewing flavourless gum.

With lower stress levels and better focus, athletes have better decision-making abilities in the middle of the game. It also helps them keep their anxiety levels in check during big games. Chewing gum does give your body a little boost, lifting up your spirits. That explains why athletes prefer chewing gum while playing a sport. But for the sake of safety, you'd better chew just one piece to reduce the choking risk.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要阐述了足球运动员在比赛时嚼口香糖的原因:嚼口香糖可以提高注意力。此外,嚼口香糖还能减轻压力和降低焦虑水平。但为了安全起见,作者建议只嚼一块口香糖以减少窒息风险。

8. What does the underlined word “it” in Paragraph 1 probably refer to?

- A. Chewing gum during games.
- B. Suffering from sports injuries.
- C. Swallowing gum for pleasure.
- D. Choking while watching games.

A 代词指代题。根据画线词前面的句子“*I love watching football games and couldn't help but notice how many footballers chew gum while playing! I always thought of it as a choking danger*”可知,作者总是会看到很多足球运动员在比赛时嚼口香糖,认为这有窒息的风险。故画线词指代的内容是在比赛时嚼口香糖有窒息的风险,与 A 选项相符。故选 A。

9. How can chewing help improve focus?

- A. By affecting the digestive system.
- B. By releasing high pressure.
- C. By adding muscle strength.
- D. By stimulating the brain.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“*When we chew something, the receptors in our mouth that sense taste and pressure from the jaw movements*

start firing and...”以及“These electrical nervous system signals move to the brain, which works to understand these signals. This added...”可知,嚼东西时口腔内的感受器会向大脑发送信号,使大脑更加警觉,从而提高了注意力。故选 D。

10. What does Paragraph 3 mainly talk about?

- A. Gum proves a healthy snack for athletes.
B. Chewing gum benefits mental health.
C. Dopamine contributes to better focus.
D. Brain activity helps relieve anxiety.

B 段落大意题。根据第三段中的“Additionally, chewing gum has been reported to decrease stress and anxiety levels.”以及“When chewing gum, the prefrontal cortex is activated, leading to the release of a ‘feel-good’ neurotransmitter called dopamine(多巴胺). Dopamine is known to promote a sense of pleasure and reward, ...”可知,第三段主要讨论了嚼口香糖如何通过激活大脑的前额皮层、释放多巴胺来减轻压力和降低焦虑水平,这对心理健康有益。故选 B。

11. What is the author’s attitude to chewing gum?

- A. Hopeful. B. Supportive.
C. Doubtful. D. Uncaring.

B 观点态度题。根据最后一段中的“With lower stress levels and better focus, athletes have better decision-making abilities in the middle of the game. It also helps them...”可知,作者在最后一段中提到,嚼口香糖可以提升情绪、提高运动员的注意力以及减少焦虑。这表明作者对嚼口香糖持支持态度。故选 B。

D

The World Happiness Report, a United Nations agency report, measures (估量) how happy people are, and why. Norway is the happiest place on Earth—beating neighbour Denmark from the number one position.

Denmark, Iceland, Switzerland and Finland round out the top five, while the Central African Republic comes last. Western Europe and North America take up most of the places at the top of ranking, with the US and UK at 14th and 19th.

The World Happiness Report mainly depends

on asking a simple question of more than 1,000 people every year in more than 150 countries. “Imagine a ladder (梯子), with steps numbered from 0 at the bottom to 10 at the top,” the question asks. “The top of the ladder is the best possible life for you and the bottom of the ladder is the worst possible life for you. On which step of the ladder would you say you personally feel you stand at this time?”

The average result is the country’s score—from Norway’s 7.54 to the Central African Republic’s 2.69. But the report also tries to explain why one country is happier than another. It looks at reasons including economic strength, social support, freedom of choice, and generosity.

This year’s report also has a text titled “restoring (恢复) American happiness”, which examines why happiness levels in the United States are falling, despite continually-increasing economic improvement. “The United States can and should raise happiness by solving America’s social problems—rising inequality and distrust—rather than focusing mainly on economic growth,” the authors said.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍的是《世界幸福报告》及各国排名,指出影响幸福感排名的因素,包括经济实力、社会支持、选择自由和慷慨程度。

12. Which of the following is the correct order of the countries in terms of happiness levels?

- A. Denmark, the UK, the US, the Central African Republic.
B. Denmark, the US, the UK, the Central African Republic.
C. The US, Denmark, the UK, the Central African Republic.
D. Denmark, the US, the Central African Republic, the UK.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段的内容可知,丹麦、美国、英国和中非共和国的幸福感排名从高到低。故选 B。

13. How does the World Happiness Report measure happiness?

- A. By asking a question.
- B. By having a conversation.
- C. By doing scientific research.
- D. By carrying out an online survey.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“The World Happiness Report mainly depends on asking a simple question of more than 1,000 people every year in more than 150 countries.”可知,《世界幸福报告》就是通过问问题来衡量幸福感的。故选 A。

14. What can we know about America from the passage?

- A. Its people live an unhappy life.
- B. Its economy is going downhill.
- C. Its social problems are hard to solve.
- D. It has a lower happiness level than before.

D 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“This year’s report also has a text titled ‘restoring (恢复) American happiness’, which examines why happiness levels in the United States are falling, despite continually-increasing economic improvement.”可以推断出,美国人的幸福感没有以前高。故选 D。

15. What’s the author’s purpose of writing the passage?

- A. To explain the reason for being happy.
- B. To introduce the World Happiness Report.
- C. To talk about America’s social problems.
- D. To discuss the policies by the American government.

B 写作意图题。本文主要介绍了《世界幸福报告》及各国排名,并指出影响幸福感排名的因素,所以作者的目的是介绍《世界幸福报告》。故选 B。

II. 七选五

No one likes to fail. Failure is painful and it can also be costly in terms of time, money, or both.

16 If you never suffer a failure, then you’re probably not pushing yourself to your full potential. The following are some tips on how to pick yourself up after you’ve failed.

Remember that other people fail too. 17

They’ll tell you about that great new contract (合同) they signed, not the deal that failed eventually. But failure is normal, and lots of people fail many times before succeeding.

Remind yourself of your past successes. Failing doesn’t mean you’ll never achieve what you want.

18 Maybe you had high marks last term, or you lost weight, or you learned to play a musical instrument. You might want to write down a list of successes. If you ever lack confidence, you can go back and read over that list.

19 Your past successes are important, but so are your past failures. You’ve made mistakes before, and you’ve survived them. By acknowledging your failures, you can remind yourself that today is no different. Just as you recovered in the past, you can recover from your recent failure too.

20 Whatever goes wrong, you’re probably facing some sort of decision. Don’t rush into making a hasty decision, but do look for a forward path. That might require some deep thinking.

- A. Make a decision wisely.
- B. Limit the damage caused.
- C. Remind yourself of your past failures.
- D. However, failure is a normal part of life.
- E. Get some advice and support from others.
- F. Most people don’t talk openly about their failures.
- G. Think of all the times in the past when you’ve succeeded.

答案:16~20 DFGCA

III. 完形填空

We moved there on my third birthday. My first 21 is our neighbour Arlene handing me strawberries from her garden through a hole in the chain-link fence. She and her husband, Bill, lived next door.

One day, my parents asked Bill and Arlene whether they’d watch me 22 they were out on a date. This 23 well for everyone, so it became a somewhat monthly occurrence. Arlene and Bill didn’t have kids. They had a 24 room in their house, which became “my” room. I had several

boxes of toys and books in that room. Arlene and I would do crafts together. Bill taught me how to 25 the lawn tractor and eventually a car (stick and automatic).

When I was about five, I had an idea. My parents were watching TV when I spit it out: “What if I adopt Bill and Arlene as my 26?” My parents said I could go over and ask them. I 27 on Bill and Arlene’s door, sat down in their living room, and said, “Will you guys be my grandparents?” They started crying and 28 accepted. Soon after, they printed out an adoption 29, and it hung on their living room wall from then on.

I remember being surprised that they took my 30 so seriously—not because I wasn’t serious but because I was just a kid. They could have 31 it off. Thinking of that moment still brings tears to my eyes. There is something truly wonderful about a child offering up her love and 32 being so excited to accept it. Every child in this world 33 enthusiastically responded love.

Arlene passed away in 2013, two days before our adoption anniversary (周年纪念). Bill gave her eulogy (悼词). At the end, he said, “Arlene 34 her husband, Bill. And the greatest joy of her life, her granddaughter, Katie.”

After the funeral, Bill gave me the ring he’d gifted to Arlene on their 25th wedding anniversary. It’s a simple gold ring that I wear on my finger as a 35 of the kind of love I wish to put into this world.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者童年时与邻居 Arlene 和 Bill 之间深厚的情感,以及他们如何成为作者心中的祖父母,展现了超越血缘的爱。

21. A. memory B. impression
C. thought D. communication

A 根据下文的“is our neighbour Arlene handing me strawberries from her garden through a hole in the chain-link fence”可知,下文说的是作者的记忆。故选 A。

22. A. unless B. though
C. while D. because

C 根据下文的“they were out on a date”可知,是在父母出去约会的期间。故选 C。

23. A. improved B. worked
C. performed D. operated

B 根据下文的“so it became a somewhat monthly occurrence”可知,这成了每月都会发生的事情。由此可推理出这种安排是有效的。故选 B。

24. A. spare B. private
C. public D. smooth

A 根据下文的“which became ‘my’ room”可知,这个房间是多余的。故选 A。

25. A. store B. build
C. drive D. select

C 根据下文的“the lawn tractor and eventually a car”可知,Bill 教作者驾驶草坪拖拉机。故选 C。

26. A. relations B. friends
C. children D. grandparents

D 根据下文的“Will you guys be my grandparents?”可知,作者想让他们做自己的祖父母。故选 D。

27. A. observed B. called
C. broke D. knocked

D 根据下文的“on Bill and Arlene’s door”可知,作者敲了门。故选 D。

28. A. voluntarily B. wildly
C. enthusiastically D. unwillingly

C 根据上文的“They started crying”可知,他们很感动,热情地接受了。故选 C。

29. A. software B. certificate
C. message D. blog

B 根据下文的“and it hung on their living room wall from then on”可知,他们把收养证书挂在了墙上。故选 B。

30. A. offer B. charge
C. sentence D. favour

A 根据上文的“Will you guys be my grandparents?”可知,这是作者的提议。故选 A。

31. A. kicked B. wiped
C. kept D. laughed

D 根据上文的“not because I wasn't serious but because I was just a kid”可知,他们本可以不把孩子的话当回事,一笑而过。故选 D。

32. A. people B. parents
C. adults D. friends

C 根据上文的“Will you guys be my grandparents?”以及“and it hung on their living room wall from then on”可知,Bill 和 Arlene 是成年人。故选 C。

33. A. refuses B. hopes
C. receives D. deserves

D 根据上文的“a child offering up her love”以及下文的“enthusiastically responded love”可知,作者认为孩子主动给予爱,是值得被爱的。故选 D。

34. A. counts on B. leaves behind
C. gives away D. tells off

B 根据上文的“Arlene passed away in 2013”可知,Arlene 去世了,离开了丈夫。故选 B。

35. A. reminder B. suggestion
C. proof D. present

A 根据下文的“of the kind of love I wish to put into this world”可知,戒指是一种提醒,提醒自己要把这种爱投入到这个世界上。故选 A。

IV. 语法填空

Tianshui, a small city in Northwest China's Gansu Province, has recently gained great **36. popularity** (popular) on Chinese media for its spicy hot pot, or *malatang*.

37. As a significant part of the Hexi Corridor, Gansu has **38. historically** (historical) served as a vital road connecting Central Asia with China's Central Plains. The local northwestern Chinese cuisine primarily **39. consists** (consist) of boiled or grilled beef and mutton, as green leafy vegetables are seldom found in Gansu. If you want to find leafy greens, it is better for you **40. to visit** (visit) a Sichuan restaurant.

However, the local spicy hot pot restaurants also provide dinners with **41. a** variety of vegetables. In places like Tianshui, **42. where** the cuisine has been influenced by Sichuan traditions, the hot pot's

flavour is enriched using *doubanjiang* (broad bean sauce) and Sichuan peppercorns, with a pleasant spicy smell **43. added** (add) to both meat and vegetables.

44. Different (difference) from Sichuan cuisine, the secrets for Tianshui's spicy hot pot come from local specialty ingredients—Maiji peppercorns and Gangu chili peppers. Currently, many spicy hot pot shops have even extended their business hours to accommodate the **45. increasing** (increase) number of customers from all over the country.

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是高中生李华。你校拟组织校园“国际音乐节”。请写信给你的美国交换生朋友 Clement,告知他相关活动事项,并鼓励他参加其中的“校园歌手大赛”。内容包括:

1. 活动目的;
2. 活动内容;
3. 发出邀请。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Dear Clement,

I hope this letter finds you well. Our school is scheduled to hold an “International Music Festival” on campus, aiming to celebrate the rich diversity of musical cultures and talents from around the world.

This festival is comprised of a variety of activities. A highlight will be the “Campus Singer Contest”, a platform where students can exhibit their singing talents and capture the hearts of the audience. Given your musical abilities, I highly encourage you to participate and share your talents with us. This will not only provide an excellent opportunity for cultural exchange but will also be a fun and enjoyable event for all.

I am eagerly anticipating your presence at the festival.

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

8-year-old Evan was standing by the sidewalk when he noticed Mrs Carter opening her shop again.

Several days ago, when Evan was passing by her store, he saw a closed sign on the store's door. When the shop remained closed for not just two days, Evan was worried he'd never be able to get his "dream job".

85-year-old Mrs Carter was a woman selling flowers for a living and Evan had befriended her when he helped her cross the street one day.

Seeing her again now, Evan ran up to her and greeted her. "Can I help you today, Evan? Do you want flowers?" Mrs Carter asked. Evan smiled, "I'm looking for a job! Can you please hire me?"

"A job?" the elderly lady laughed, thinking Evan was too little for that. But Evan proudly replied he knew many things, like making sandwiches and helping his mum get grocery bags from the car. Mrs Carter laughed and asked Evan how much money she would have to pay him if she hired him.

Evan shook his head. "All I want is a big bouquet (花束) for my mum. Her name is Stacey and her birthday is one week away. Mum says we should work hard for what we want. I want to work hard for that bouquet. Can you hire me?" Evan asked. Mrs Carter was impressed and nodded.

Then for a whole week, Evan would come to Mrs Carter's store in the evenings and help her, and having Evan around relieved Mrs Carter's boredom while she was working. Some customers thought Evan was lovely and entertaining, so they bought

more flowers. Mrs Carter's business became better.

A week later, on Evan's last day on the job, Mrs Carter was emotional. They had grown close for working together, and Evan had become like a grandchild to her. While making a huge bouquet for Evan's mother, Mrs Carter secretly placed an envelope into the bouquet. The envelope contained \$200. When handing him the bouquet, she said, "Will you come to see me someday, Evan? I'd be delighted to have you here."

"I will!" Evan smiled and waved goodbye to Mrs Carter.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

Carrying the flowers, Evan rushed home to surprise his mum. "Happy birthday, Mum!" he cried, running up to her. Stacey was shocked at the huge bouquet. "Where did you get it?" she asked. When Evan told the whole story, Stacey was delighted and hugged her son closely. Evan smiled and was about to give her the bouquet when he suddenly noticed the envelope. He pulled it out and found the money in it. "But I told Mrs Carter not to pay me! I think this got here by mistake!" said Evan.

Then, Evan and his mum hurried to return the money to Mrs Carter. When they reached her shop and were about to return the money, Mrs Carter smiled and said, "It's my payment for Evan. He did a very good job. Keep it. The flowers are my gift for you." Stacey was grateful for Mrs Carter's kindness and invited her home for dinner that night to celebrate her birthday together. From then on, Stacey started to join Evan in helping Mrs Carter in her shop and they became friends.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and society, whose topic is various art forms and related artists' stories. This unit starts by introducing several common art forms, and then showcases classic, folk, and modern artworks from around the world, as well as stories of art creation, to guide students to learn about painting, sculpture, paper cutting, and other art forms and related artists, and the importance of art. Ultimately, students will understand that art is not something distant, but is all around us, and that art originates from life. With creativity, anyone can create their own artwork.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与“多种艺术形式和相关艺术家的故事”主题相关的单词和词块来理解和表达。
		语法	能恰当使用现在进行时的被动语态描述正在发生的事情。
		语篇	能围绕本单元的主题语境内容,理解单元提供的网络直播文稿、图表、人物介绍等多模态语篇。
		语用	能谈论自己印象最深的艺术作品,并说明原因。
	语言技能	听	听懂并谈论与艺术作品相关的话题,发表自己的看法。
		说	使用新学的词汇描述多种艺术形式。
		读	综合运用各种语言技能,读懂语篇内容。
		写	了解常见的几种中国传统艺术形式,并用新学的相关词汇和表达来描述这些艺术形式。
学习能力	能运用各种学习策略,在自主学习、合作学习与探究式学习的过程中,结合单元所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整学习内容和进程,激发英语学习的兴趣,提高理解和表达能力,最终促进语言能力、文化意识、思维品质和学习能力的综合提升。		

核心素养	具体要求
文化意识	能使用本单元所学词汇介绍艺术作品,了解中外艺术作品、艺术形式和有代表性的艺术家,了解中国传统艺术和现代艺术,比较中外艺术的特点;能运用本单元所学词汇和表达,联系自身经历,描述身边的艺术,向他人介绍中国的艺术作品和艺术家。
思维品质	能思考人类艺术创作的价值,初步增强艺术鉴赏力。

◦ 必备知识

必备单词	greet, broadcast, stair, load, battle, fold, exhibition, neighbourhood, calligraphy, demonstrate, needle, elegant, carve, contemporary, cigarette, lack, wine, sponsor, emperor, fond, frequent, vase, mostly, shade
重点表达	get a load of..., have a mind of one's own, but then again, reach out to, by the way, by accident, be fond of..., on the move, day after day, sing high praises for
重点知识	1. it's time to do sth. 2. as if 引导方式状语从句 3. 独立主格结构
单元语法	现在进行时的被动语态
单元写作	描述一件艺术品

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas — Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Watch a video and extract the key information from it.
2. Master the important words and phrases and understand the long and difficult sentences in the text.
3. Understand the basic information about the art pieces introduced in the text.
4. Improve critical thinking skills and establish proper artistic values.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. greet *v.* 问候, 迎接, 招呼
2. broadcast *n.* 广播节目, 电视节目
3. stair *n.* 楼梯
4. load *n.* 某物的量
5. fold *v.* 折起
6. exhibition *n.* 展出, 展览
7. battle *n.* 战斗, 战役
8. get a load of... 注意, 仔细看(常用于表示惊讶或羡慕)
9. make an impression on 给……留下印象

10. by the way 顺便说一下

11. come up 走近; 发生; 被提及

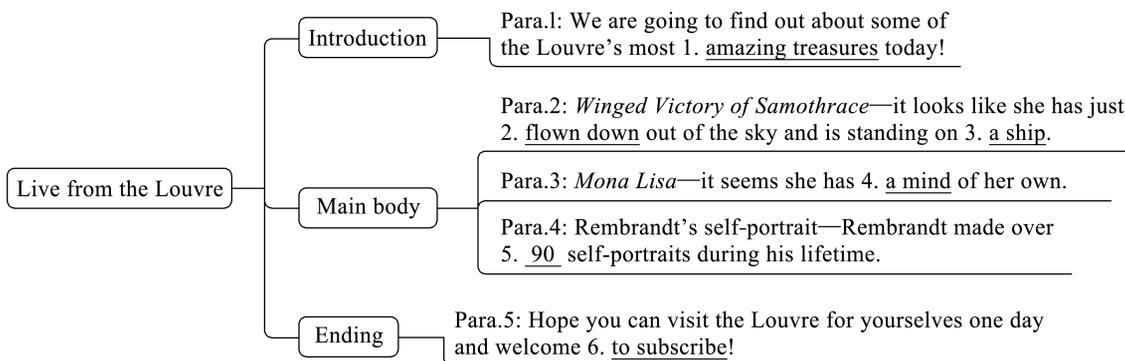
(二) 阅读词汇

1. sculptor *n.* 雕刻家, 雕塑家
2. portrait *n.* 人物照片; 肖像
3. selfie *n.* 自拍照
4. have a mind of one's own 有自己的主见
5. but then again 不过
6. reach out to 接触; 把手伸向
7. for now 目前, 暂时
8. get up close and personal with 近距离亲身了解
9. quite a bit 相当多, 很多, 不止一点点

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- According to the text, what is Zack doing in the Louvre?
 - He is guiding the visitors.
 - He is painting a self-portrait.
 - He is broadcasting a programme.
 - He is enjoying some wonderful works.
- According to the text, who painted self-portraits throughout his life?
 - Rembrandt.
 - Van Gogh.
 - Paul Gauguin.
 - Da Vinci.
- How many works of art are now being displayed in the Louvre?
 - Around 48,000.
 - Around 35,000.
 - Around 30,000.
 - Around 40,000.
- Where does the text come from?
 - A live TV show.
 - A live radio programme.
 - A web page.
 - A newspaper.

答案: 1~4 CABA

○ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- Her head and arms are missing, but you can imagine her holding her arms up high, celebrating the result of an ancient battle.

[句子分析]本句为 but 连接的并列句。第二个分句中 celebrating the result of an ancient battle 是现在分词短语作伴随状语。

[尝试翻译] 她的头部和手臂已经遗失了,但是你们仍然可以想象她正高举双臂,庆祝一场古老战役的胜利。

- I'll say bye for now, and hope you can all visit this fantastic place one day to feel the power of these great works of art for yourselves.

[句子分析]本句为 and 连接的并列句。第二个分句中 you can all visit this fantastic place... 是宾语从句;不定式 to feel the power of... 表示目的。

[尝试翻译] 此刻我要说再见了,希望有一天你们都能来参观这个奇妙的地方,亲身感受这些伟大艺术作品的力量。

○ 思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- As far as Zack is concerned, why does *Mona Lisa* attract so many tourists every day?
Because it has a mixed feeling of sadness and laughing in her smile.
- Which of the three artworks, the *Winged Victory of Samothrace*, *Mona Lisa*, Rembrandt's self-portrait, makes the greatest impression on you? Why?

答案:略

Unit 4 课后素养评价 (十三)**Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending****I. 阅读理解**

Eggs are a common ingredient. They're at the centre of the age-old question, "What came first, the chicken or the egg?" and the classic idiom, "Egg someone on." And, most fascinatingly, they're the subjects of art, film and fashion.

From Jean-Baptiste Greuze's painting *Broken Eggs* and Claude Monet's painting *Still Life with Eggs* to Giovanni Battista Recco's *Still Life with Chickens and Eggs*, there's no shortage of egg illustrations. Within the field of art, eggs are a complex theme.

Simply put, an egg is more than just food—it is

"a symbol and a shape-shifter... an industry and an inspiration, a cross-cultural expression of rebirth and potential," according to a book called *The Gourmand's Egg: A Collection of Stories & Recipes*.

Written by David Lane and Marina Tweed of the contemporary food and culture journal *The Gourmand*, the latest publication explores this phenomenon through a collection of images, stories and recipes focused on eggs. There's also a section devoted to egg accessories, further illustrating how the egg became so remarkable in culture.

Perhaps the earliest mythological subject of eggs is

the world egg, which thinks that the universe came into existence via a hatched (孵化) egg. Eggs then became a symbol of celebration.

Eggs were first showcased in art during the Renaissance. Take for example Piero della Francesca's *Breru Madonna*, in which the hanging egg is a symbol of both creation and purity. There's also Hieronymous Bosch's oil painting *The Garden of Earthly Delights*, which shows yet another floating unhatched egg that is "a symbol of unrealised hope, or hidden power".

As *The Gourmand's Egg* wrote, "The egg is a cinematic chameleon (变色龙). It has been a symbol of brotherly love, a Freudian red flag, or a symbol of life."

Additionally, as in so many pictures, the egg often features not only as an everyday foodstuff but as a container of countless meanings.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要通过一些艺术作品介绍了鸡蛋在艺术领域作为主题的历史。

1. Why does the author list some paintings in Paragraph 2?

- A. To appeal to the readers' attention.
- B. To give examples of best painted eggs.
- C. To prove there are many paintings about eggs.
- D. To show the egg subject makes many famous paintings.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段中的 "And, most fascinatingly, they're the subjects of art, film and fashion." 可知,鸡蛋是艺术、电影以及时尚领域的创作主题;然后第二段中的 "From Jean-Baptiste Greuze's painting *Broken Eggs* and Claude Monet's painting *Still Life with Eggs* to Giovanni Battista Recco's *Still Life with Chickens and Eggs*, there's no shortage of egg illustrations." 介绍了几个以鸡蛋为主题的画作。由此推断,作者列举这些画作是为了说明有许多关于鸡蛋的画作,进而支持“鸡蛋是很多艺术作品的主题”这一观点。故选 C。

2. What is covered in David Lane and Marina Tweed's new book?

- A. The culture of eggs.
- B. Skills of egg hatching.
- C. The kinds of eggs.
- D. Types of egg containers.

A 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可知,新书

中提到了以鸡蛋为主题的图片、故事以及食谱,这些展现的都是有关鸡蛋的文化。故选 A。

3. What does the egg stand for in Bosch's painting?
A. Life. B. Potential.
C. Love. D. Purity.

B 细节理解题。根据倒数第三段中的 "There's also Hieronymous Bosch's oil painting *The Garden of Earthly Delights*, which shows yet another floating unhatched egg that is 'a symbol of unrealised hope, or hidden power'." 可知,在他的作品中鸡蛋是潜力的象征。故选 B。

4. What is the author's purpose in writing this text?
A. To sell a newly-published book.
B. To discuss famous paintings about eggs.
C. To introduce different egg cooking techniques.
D. To show the complex meaning of eggs in works of art.

D 写作意图题。本文主要通过一些艺术作品介绍了鸡蛋在艺术领域作为主题的历史。由此推断,作者写这篇文章的目的是展示鸡蛋在艺术作品中的复杂意义。故选 D。

II. 七选五

Art is all around us. It can be found everywhere, including fancy galleries, people's living rooms, and on the sides of buildings. So, why is art important?

It promotes expression and creativity. As humans, we're naturally drawn to art as a form of expression and communication. 1 It's a way for them to express themselves before they're able to speak. In fact, participation in the arts may even assist kids with language, motor skills, and visual learning development.

2 When someone applies for a job, there are certain skills they need to have like data analysis or bookkeeping. However, many employers also understand the very important need for the skills which are hard to measure and often difficult to define. Some examples include a person's ability to adapt to change, think creatively, or collaborate with team members.

It provides historical context. 3 This is why people dedicate their lives to studying cave art, Shakespearean plays, and so much more. When we take the time to dive into art created in the past, we

can learn about other generations and eras. We can study art to find out what those before us were facing and how they overcame it. 4

In therapy (疗法) settings, art also provides an opportunity for digging deeper and expressing emotions that are difficult to discuss. 5 In one important study, children between 6 and 12 were asked to draw a house as a distraction after thinking about something upsetting. This group was able to improve their mood when compared with children who were instructed to draw the negative event or

simply copy another drawing.

- A. These are its major benefits.
- B. Children love to draw, sing, and dance.
- C. Art and human history go hand in hand.
- D. How does it have an impact on our life?
- E. It helps all of us develop necessary soft skills.
- F. It can help people handle both their past and present problems.
- G. Similarly, future generations will learn about our current events by the art we leave behind.

答案:1~5 BECGF

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas — Language points

学习任务目标

1. Get some information about the Louvre and arts in the Louvre from the text.
2. Master the language points in the text.
3. Comprehend this text by grasping key information and details.
4. Grasp the skills of how to describe the types of art and underline the words and expressions describing them.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Scan the QR code to follow the live **broadcast** at 8:30 pm on Wednesday. 电视节目
2. Thousands of soldiers were willing to go into **battle** to fight the enemy. 战斗, 战役
3. A **portrait** of Yuan Longping, an agricultural scientist known as the “father of hybrid rice”, is seen in a paddyfield in Nantong, Jiangsu Province. 人物照片; 肖像
4. The old couple took a **selfie** and sent it to their kids before taking off. 自拍照

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>greet</u> v. 问候, 迎接, 招呼	<u>greeting</u> n. 问候, 招呼 <u>greeter</u> n. (餐馆、商店等处的) 门迎, 迎宾员
<u>stair</u> n. 楼梯	<u>upstairs</u> adv. 在(或向)楼上 <u>adj.</u> 楼上的 <u>downstairs</u> adv. 在(或向)楼下 <u>adj.</u> 楼下的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>load</u> n. 某物的量 v. 装载	<u>unload</u> v. 卸下 <u>download</u> v. 下载 <u>overload</u> v. 使超载
<u>fold</u> v. 折起	<u>unfold</u> v. 展开 <u>folding</u> adj. 可折叠的
<u>sculptor</u> n. 雕刻家, 雕塑家	<u>sculpt</u> v. 雕刻, 雕塑 <u>sculpture</u> n. 雕刻品, 雕塑品
<u>exhibition</u> n. 展出, 展览	<u>exhibit</u> v. 展览

III. 补全短语

1. have a mind of one's own 有自己的主见
2. by the way 顺便说一下
3. but then again 不过
4. reach out to 接触; 把手伸向
5. come up 走近; 发生; 被提及
6. at the top of 在……的顶部

7. get a load of ... 注意,仔细看(常用于表示惊讶或羡慕)

8. hold up 举起;阻碍

9. look into sb.'s eyes 与某人对视

10. laugh at 嘲笑

11. pay for 为……付钱

12. for now 目前,暂时

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:it's time to do sth.

And now, it's time to get up close and personal with one of history's greatest artists—Rembrandt!

现在,是时候近距离亲身了解历史上最伟大的画家之一——伦勃朗了!

2. 句型公式:the way of doing sth.

Perhaps it was his way of taking a 17th-century selfie?

也许这是他在17世纪自拍的方式?

3. 句型公式:as if 引导方式状语从句

They really do reach out to us across the centuries as if time itself were nothing.

这些作品穿越了几个世纪,出现在我们面前,仿佛时间没有流逝一般。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. get a load of... 注意,仔细看(常用于表示惊讶或羡慕)

[教材原文] Now, at the top of these stone stairs... get a load of that!

现在,我们到了这段石头阶梯的顶端……仔细看那个!

[归纳拓展]

(1) load *n.* 负载,负荷;工作量;装载量

a load of/loads of 大量,许多

take a load off one's mind 某人如释重负

(2) load *v.* 装上,装入;装载

load... with... 用……装载……

load sth. into... 把某物装入……

(3) unload *v.* 卸,取下;拆掉,取出(子弹、胶卷等)

unload... from... 从……卸下……

(4) loaded *adj.* 装满的;装有(子弹、胶卷等)的

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① Be careful, please! That gun is loaded (load).

② (2023·新课标Ⅱ卷) After some goodbyes, I asked George and his wife to help me load Tiffany into the plane.

③ It takes a load off the nurse's mind to have her mother take care of her daughter.

(2) 写作微练

① (读后续写之环境描写) 那个装满水果的篮子被放在了桌子上。

The basket, loaded with fruits, was placed on the table.

② (读后续写之动作描写) 她提着一大堆食品杂货上楼梯,艰难地承受着重量。

She carried a load of groceries up the stairs, struggling with the weight.

2. it's time to do sth.

[教材原文] And now, it's time to get up close and personal with one of history's greatest artists—Rembrandt!

现在,是时候近距离亲身了解历史上最伟大的画家之一——伦勃朗了!

[归纳拓展]

(1) It's (high/about) time + that sb. did/should do... 到了某人做……的时间了。

(2) It/This is the first/second... time that sb. have/has done sth.

It/This was the first/second... time that sb. had done sth.

是某人第一次/二次/……次做某事。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① I think it's high time we made/should make (make) an adjustment.

② This is the first time that I have been (be) away from my home for such a long time.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之倡议书) 是我们采取措施保护环境的时候了。

It is high time that we took/should take measures to protect the environment.

3. as if 引导方式状语从句

[教材原文] They really do reach out to us across the centuries as if time itself were nothing.

这些作品穿越了几个世纪,出现在我们面前,仿佛时间没有流逝一般。

[句式分析] 本句为 as if 引导的方式状语从句,由于 as if 后的内容与事实相反,故用虚拟语气。

[归纳拓展]

(1) as if (= as though) 意为“似乎,好像”,除了引导方式状语从句之外,还可以用在 look, seem, sound 等系动词后引导表语从句。

(2) as if/as though 所引导的从句中的语气及时态:

① 陈述语气(真实或极有可能发生的情况)

② 虚拟语气(不真实或不可能发生的情况)

虚拟现在: did/were

虚拟过去: had done/been

虚拟将来: would/might/could + do/be

(3) 在 as if/as though 引导的方式状语从句中,如果主句的主语与从句的主语一致,从句常省略主语和谓语,特别是从句的谓语含有 be 动词时,从句的主语和 be 动词常一起省略。as if 后可接介词短语、动词不定式、现在分词或过去分词等。

[即学即练]

(1) 根据提示补全句子

① It looks as if/as though it is going to rain (好像要下雨了)。

② He talks as if/as though he knew (好像他知道) where she was.

③ He talked about Rome as if/as though he had been there before (好像他以前去过似的)。

④ He opened his mouth as if to say something (要说什么)。

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之神情描写)他兴奋地说着话,好像他刚刚中了彩票一样。

He talked excitedly, as if/as though he had just won the lottery.

多义词汇 专练

1. **fold** A. *v.* 折叠,对折(纸、织物等)

B. *n.* 褶皱 C. *v.* 包;裹

① Make another **fold** and turn the ends together.

B

② She gently **folded** the baby in a blanket.

C

③ He **folded** the map up and put it in his pocket.

A

2. **load** A. *n.* 大量;许多 B. *n.* (责任或忧虑的)沉重感

C. *n.* 装载量;容纳量

① He put half a **load** of washing in the machine.

C

② Uncle Jim brought a whole **load** of presents for the kids.

A

③ She thought she would not be able to bear the **load** of bringing up her family alone.

B

Unit 4 课后素养评价(十四)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 语法填空

- “Hello” is a kind of greeting (greet) which is used in everyday face-to-face communications now.
- The concert will be broadcast (broadcast) live on television and radio tomorrow.
- Can you imagine her becoming (become) a famous hostess of CCTV?
- All the football players on the playground cheered loudly, saying (say) that I had a talent for football.
- He lost his pocket money on the way to school. That is why he is so sad.
- It's time to have (have) breakfast now.
- It was John who broke the window. Why are you talking to me as if I had done (do) it?
- When I passed by, he seemed to be doing (do) his homework so I didn't disturb him.
- He just stood there with his arms folded (fold) when

he might have given me a hand.

10. Get a load of Mike feeding the baby.

II. 短语填空

be famous for; get a load of; make an impression on; laugh at; but then again; reach out to; subscribe to

- If you subscribe to the newspaper, it'll be delivered to your door.
- Is there a way to reach out to someone even less fortunate than you?
- Don't be afraid of making mistakes. No one will laugh at you.
- He was/is famous for drawing horses.
- I think he made an impression on the girls at the English Corner the other day.
- Get a load of the boy over there. I wonder what he is doing.

C. stick D. pen

B 根据下文的“with the cloth”可知此处选 B。

9. A. present B. free

C. ready D. useful

C 根据此空所在句的副词 too 可知,第二个艺术家说“我的墙壁(的画)也准备好了”。故选 C。

10. A. see B. touch

C. research D. cover

A 此处意为“国王去看第一个艺术家画的墙”。故选 A。

11. A. Amazing B. Exciting

C. Famous D. Valuable

A 根据下文“每条线都和对面墙上的一样”可知,amazing“令人惊讶的”符合语境。故选 A。

12. A. knew B. warned

C. noticed D. wondered

D 此处表示“国王想知道第二个画家是怎么做到的”。故选 D。

13. A. briefly B. naturally

C. safely D. correctly

A 此处表示“第二个画家简要地说”。故选 A。

14. A. set B. added

C. showed D. took

C 句意:第一幅画的倒影就显现在墙面上。show up“出现”符合语境。故选 C。

15. A. story B. world

C. king D. painter

B 根据下文的“the world will be sad”,且结合本段可知,其实世界(world)也是你反射出来的影像。故选 B。

Section III Using language

学习任务目标

1. Identify and summarise the forms and functions of the present continuous passive through observation, and apply it correctly in different contexts and situations.
2. Understand the main idea of the listening materials, gather specific details to complete the table and learn to describe Chinese art forms, artworks and artists.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The firefighters often give out toys to children living in the poor **neighbourhood**. 社区,街坊
2. The traditional Chinese culture courses, such as **calligraphy**, paper cutting and traditional Chinese painting, are very attractive to exchange students. 书法
3. She pricked (刺破) her finger on the **needle** while sewing up (缝补) the hole in my trousers. 缝衣针
4. Please do not **carve** on the bamboo when going sightseeing. 刻(图形或字母)
5. He brushed the **cigarette** ash from his sleeve. 香烟

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>demonstrate</u> v. 示范,演示	demonstration n. 示范,演示

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>vividly</u> adv. 生动地	vivid adj. 生动的;鲜明的,鲜艳的 (反义词) dull adj. 不鲜明的;沉闷的
<u>elegant</u> adj. 高雅的,优美的	elegantly adv. 优雅地;高贵地
<u>contemporary</u> adj. 当代的	(形近词) temporary adj. 短暂的,暂时的,临时的
<u>lack</u> v. 没有,缺乏 n. 不足,缺乏	lacking adj. 没有的,缺乏的
<u>stimulate</u> v. 刺激,促使,促进	stimulation n. 刺激;激励

III. 补全短语

1. put up 搭建; 张贴; 留宿
2. catch one's attention 吸引某人的注意
3. that is 也就是说
4. look up 向上看
5. in the shape of 以……的形状
6. throw away 扔掉
7. lie in 在于
8. be aware of 知道, 了解
9. next to 紧挨着
10. mistake... for ... 把……误认为……

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: 现在进行时的被动语态

And just look at how her dress is being folded by the wind!

看她的裙子被风吹出的褶皱!

2. 句型公式: it is + *adj.* + to do sth.

Anyway, it's easy to see great art nowadays, because people are creating it everywhere you look.

不管怎样, 现在很容易看到伟大的艺术, 因为人们在你所看到的任何地方都在创造它。

3. 句型公式: what 引导主语从句

What caught my attention first was a 15th-century *qinghua* bowl in a breathtaking exhibition of Chinese porcelain.

在一个令人叹为观止的中国瓷器展中, 首先引起我注意的是一个 15 世纪的青花碗。

4. 句型公式: whatever 引导让步状语从句

Everyone can create art, whatever their background.

无论背景如何, 每个人都可以创造艺术。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. **shape** *n.* 形状, 外形; 状况 *v.* 使成为……形状; 塑造

[教材原文] With help from the artist, I managed to make one in the **shape** of a fish.

在艺术家的帮助下, 我设法做了一个鱼的形状(的剪纸)。

[归纳拓展]

(1) in shape 在形状上; 健康状况良好

out of shape 变形, 走样; 健康情况不佳

in the shape of 以……的形式

take the shape of 呈……的形状, 以……的形式出现

(2) shape... into... 把……加工成/塑造成……

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① My daughter always shapes the dough into a ball.

② (2024·九省联考) Running is a great way to get in shape and just about everyone can do it.

(2) 写作微练

① (读后续写之环境描写) 桌子上有一个**星星形状**的蛋糕。

There is a cake in the shape of a star on the table.

② (读后续写之外貌描写) 他曾经很健康, 但由于久坐不动的生活方式, 现在他**身体走样**了。

He used to be fit, but now he's out of shape due to his inactive lifestyle.

2. **lack** *v.* 没有, 缺乏 *n.* 不足, 缺乏

[教材原文] While some say contemporary art **lacks** skill, meaning and artistic value, others argue that its worth lies in its ability to stimulate new discussions and understanding of everyday objects, such as water pipes and iron wires.

尽管有人说当代艺术缺乏技巧、意义和艺术价值, 但也有人认为它的价值在于能够激发人们对日常事物的新的讨论和认识, 比如水管和铁丝。

[归纳拓展]

(1) a lack of... 缺乏/缺少……

for lack of 因缺少……

(2) lacking *adj.* 没有的, 缺乏的

be lacking in 缺少……, ……不足

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① Though lacking (lack) money, his parents managed to send him to university.

② It is said that junk food and a lack of regular exercise can lead to some diseases.

③ For lack of independence, most students have difficulty adapting to college life at present.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之人物介绍) 他**缺乏定期锻炼**, 结果他的身体状况很差。

① He lacks regular exercise, so he is in poor physical condition. (lack *v.*)

② He is lacking in regular exercise, so he is in poor physical condition. (lacking *adj.*)

③ Lacking regular exercise, he is in poor physical condition. (分词作状语)

语法研习课

现在进行时的被动语态

语法感知

① This broadcast **is being brought** to you from one of the largest museums on Earth—the Louvre!

② I'm **being pushed** around quite a bit, in fact.

③ About 35,000 works **are currently being displayed** in over 300 rooms in the Louvre, and it would take a lifetime to see everything!

④ And just look at how her dress **is being folded** by the wind!

①②③④句中均使用了现在进行时的被动语态,其结构为“am/is/are+being+过去分词”。

语法精讲

一、现在进行时的被动语态的含义

现在进行时的被动语态表示“某人/某事此时此刻正在被……”,主语是动作的承受者。

To be honest, the plan **is not being carried out** well.

说实话,这个计划进展得不是很顺利。

二、现在进行时的被动语态的构成

现在进行时的被动形式:am/is/are+being+过去分词。它的否定形式是把 not 放在第一个助动词 am/is/are 之后,即 am/is/are+not+being+过去分词。一般疑问句的形式是把第一个助动词放在句首,句末改为问号,即 Am/Is/Are+主语+being+过去分词? 特殊疑问句的形式是把特殊疑问词放在一般疑问句的前面。

Books **are being read** by the students in Class 8.

八班的学生们正在读书。

Are books being read by the students in Class 8?

八班的学生们正在读书吗?

What is being done by the students in Class 8?

八班的学生们正在做什么呢?

三、现在进行时的被动语态的基本用法

1. 表示现在正在进行的被动动作,常与 now、at the moment、look 等词连用。

Look! The baby **is being taken care of** by her aunt.

瞧!那个婴儿正由她的姑姑照料着。

What I want to tell you is that our car **is being repaired** now in the garage.

我想告诉你的是我们的汽车现在正在汽车修理厂修理。

2. 表示现阶段正在进行的被动动作,说话时不一定在进行。

It is reported that many new houses **are being built** at present in the disaster area.

据报道,现在灾区有许多新房子正在建设中。

Many speeches about traditional Chinese culture **are being held** these days.

这一阵子许多有关中国传统文化的讲座正在举行。

3. 少数及物动词的进行时表示按计划、安排将要承受某个动作。

Some rock music **is being played** by them next.

下面将由他们演奏一些摇滚音乐。

A birthday party **is being held** tonight at Mary's house.

玛丽家今晚将要举办一场生日晚会。

4. 表示一种习惯性的被动行为,常和 always、often、constantly 等词连用,表示赞赏、羡慕、讨厌等感情色彩。

Tom **is always being praised** by the teacher.

汤姆总是受到老师的表扬。

四、使用现在进行时的被动语态时应注意的问题

1. 在现在进行时的被动语态中,am/is/are 为第一助动词,being 为第二助动词,缺一不可,且位置不可互换。

But now that information **is being spread** and **monitored** in different ways, researchers are discovering new rules.

但是既然信息正在以不同的方式被传播和监控,研究者也在发掘新的规则。

2. take care of、look after、talk about、think of 等动词与介词构成的短语用于现在进行时的被动语态时,其中的介词不可省略。

The ways to stop illegal hunting **are being talked about**.

阻止非法捕猎的方法正在研讨中。

3. “am/is/are+under/in/on+n.”有时可相当于现在进行时的被动语态。

These high-tech products **are on display** these days.

→These high-tech products **are being displayed** these days.

这几天这些高科技产品正在展出。

The highway **is under construction**.

→The highway **is being constructed**.

这条公路正在建设中。

4. 一些表示状态、心理活动、拥有、存在的动词,如 stay、love、have、want、belong to 等一般不用于进行时,因而也没有进行时的被动语态,而常用一般现在时的被动语态表示此刻或目前主语正承受谓语动词表示的动作。

The runaway of the traffic accident **is wanted** by the police.

警方正在通缉这场交通事故的逃逸者。

语法冲关

I. 语法填空

1. With more forests being destroyed, huge quantities of good earth are being washed (wash) away.
2. To our relief, with more and more people realising the importance of protecting animals, some animals are being protected (protect) well enough now.
3. It is reported that the water in the lake is not being protected (not protect) now.
4. Their washing machine is being repaired (repair) this week, so they have to wash their clothes by hand.

5. The young player has made great progress recently and is always being praised (praise) by his coach.

6. The sports meeting is being held (hold) in our school at present.

7. I am sure the experiment which is being done (do) at the moment will be a great success.

8. Much more help is wanted (want) to control the spread of the disease.

9. My car is being repaired (repair). Can you give me a lift?

II. 把下面的句子改为被动语态

1. The scientists are making great progress in science and technology in China.

→Great progress in science and technology is being made by the scientists in China.

2. The workers are setting up a lot of tall buildings, and people will move in sometime next year.

→A lot of tall buildings are being set up by the workers, and people will move in sometime next year.

3. I'm sorry, sir. Your recorder isn't ready yet. The repairman is repairing it in the factory.

→I'm sorry, sir. Your recorder isn't ready yet. It is being repaired by the repairman in the factory.

4. We are taking some effective measures to protect wildlife resources.

→Some effective measures are being taken by us to protect wildlife resources.

5. His sister is always asking him to give her money.

→He is always being asked to give his sister money.

Unit 4 课后素养评价 (十五)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

for lack of; put up; mistake... for...; be aware of; catch one's attention; demonstrate; elegant; shape; throw away; contemporary; stimulate

1. They put up their tents and settled down for the night.
2. I mistook her offer for a threat yesterday and apologised to her for my mistake.

3. The girl sitting in front of me is elegant as well as kind.

4. People around the world should be aware of the real situation of water shortage.

5. I'm interested in contemporary Chinese literature.

6. The article can be used to stimulate discussion among students.

7. Several research institutions were closed down for lack of fund.

8. In addition, the tutor will also demonstrate the basic techniques used in ink painting.
9. Looking up, a kite in the shape of a monkey caught his attention and the boy looked at it with fixed eyes.
10. We had better not throw away the empty bottles; that is, we should recycle them.
11. He bent the wire into the shape of a square.

II. 语法填空

1. The beauty of the city lies in the unique style of its buildings.
2. With my eyes tightly closed (close), I dived in and made my way to the other end.
3. As far as I'm concerned, it is urgent (急迫的) to strengthen people's awareness (aware) of environmental protection.
4. The characters in the novel were very vividly (vivid) depicted (描写).
5. Though lacking (lack) money, his parents managed to send him to university.
6. Huge quantities of good soil are being washed (wash) away at the moment.
7. Food supplies in the flood-stricken area are running (run) out.
8. The bridge being built (build) now was designed by a local company.
9. What they want to visit is Hangzhou, which is famous for the West Lake.
10. The man went into the neighbourhood and came away with a bag.
11. It's exciting to think (think) that we are going to travel around the world.
12. She knew that, whatever she decided, her family was right behind her.

III. 阅读理解

The traditional Chinese Shaoxing Opera has a long history, but these days it seems that young people don't show much interest in it.

Nowadays, as pop music and online films are popular with the public, Shaoxing Opera is struggling for its survival. The market of the opera is becoming smaller. It remains popular only with the older generation. According to Zhejiang provincial cultural department, the majority of fans of Shaoxing Opera, China's second largest traditional opera, are

above 40 years old. And many teenagers know nothing about Shaoxing Opera and have never been to the theatre.

Yang Jianxin, head of the department, said, "Now, young people are crazy about other art forms but not the traditional operas. The largest problem for Shaoxing Opera today is how to become acceptable to the young."

Actually, not only Shaoxing Opera but also many other traditional Chinese operas are in danger. That's really worrying. Luckily, people are trying to protect them. For example, *kunqu* has been listed as one of the Masterpieces (杰作) of the Oral and Intangible Heritage of Humanity by UNESCO since 2001.

In 2006, Shaoxing Opera, for the first time in history, entered the pubs (酒吧). It was really a good try to attract the youth. Besides, a Shaoxing Opera group opened a Shaoxing Opera blog on the Internet to invite people, especially the young, to express their opinions about this traditional art form.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了越剧的现状、面临生存困境的原因以及近年来为应对这一危机而进行的一些尝试。

1. What is the purpose of Paragraph 1?
- A. To introduce the topic.
B. To show young people's preference.
C. To recommend Shaoxing Opera.
D. To talk about the history of Shaoxing Opera.
- A 推理判断题。作者在第一段提出传统的中国越剧具有悠久的历史,但是现在年轻人对它兴趣不大,目的是引出下文的话题。故选 A。
2. Why is it hard for Shaoxing Opera to survive?
- A. Because the market of art is closed to it.
B. Because theatres don't accept it any longer.
C. Because the young generation have got tired of it.
D. Because modern art is becoming increasingly popular.
- D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Nowadays, as pop music and online films are popular with the public, Shaoxing Opera is struggling for its survival.”可知,流行音乐和网络电影越来越受公

众欢迎,越剧的生存现状不容乐观。故选 D。

3. What does the underlined word “them” in Paragraph 4 refer to?

- A. Modern arts.
B. Chinese operas.
C. The masterpieces.
D. Shaoxing Opera and *kunqu*.

B 代词指代题。根据第四段中的“Actually, not only Shaoxing Opera but also many other traditional Chinese operas are in danger. That’s really worrying.”可知,后面句子中的“them”应该

指的是前句中所提到的“Chinese operas”。故选 B。

4. How does the author sound at the end of the text?

- A. Anxious. B. Satisfied.
C. Hopeful. D. Bored.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“It was really a good try to attract the youth. Besides, a Shaoxing Opera group opened a Shaoxing Opera blog...”可知,作者对这些做法持肯定的态度,这说明作者对越剧的发展及传承充满希望。故选 C。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Understand the main idea of the text and summarise the life of Han Gan.
2. Get specific information about Han Gan and his masterpiece, draw a mind map and introduce Han Gan and his masterpiece.
3. Understand the local folk artists and folk art forms, and select the most interesting “community artists”.
4. Use the language learned in this unit to describe artists and artworks, and explain the reasons for recommendation.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The athlete called upon local and state governments to **sponsor** national sports events.

资助

2. A volunteer teaches the children how to arrange flowers in a **vase**.

花瓶

3. He passed milky white waterfalls and mountains in many **shades** of blue.

色度

4. She is the only female **emperor** in Chinese history, and was an outstanding politician.

皇帝

5. The drink menu is also a highlight with plenty of choices of cocktails, beer and **wine**.

葡萄酒

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>magnificent</u> <i>adj.</i> 宏伟的, 壮丽的	magnificence <i>n.</i> 壮观
<u>bare</u> <i>v.</i> 使暴露, 露出 <i>adj.</i> 赤裸的; 光秃秃的	barely <i>adv.</i> 几乎没有; 勉强才能

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>dirt</u> <i>n.</i> 灰尘, 尘土	dirty <i>adj.</i> 脏的; 卑鄙的
<u>frequent</u> <i>adj.</i> 经常发生的, 频繁的	frequently <i>adv.</i> 经常, 频繁地 frequency <i>n.</i> 频繁; 频率

III. 补全短语

1. be regarded as 被视为
2. by accident 偶然, 意外地
3. be fond of ... 喜欢……
4. day after day 日复一日
5. sing high praises for 高度赞扬
6. on the move 在行进; 在发展变化; 四处奔波

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: not only... but also...

Its artist, Han Gan, is known for his skill in capturing not only the physical features of the animal, but also its inner spirit and strength.

它的创作者——画家韩干以其神形兼备的画马技艺闻名于世。

2. 句型公式: while doing sth. 结构

While waiting at the gate, Han Gan used a stick to draw pictures in the dirt and was seen by the poet himself.

在门口等候时,韩干用一根木棍在泥土上画画,正巧被诗人(王维)看到了。

3. 句型公式: the + 比较级, the + 比较级

The more time he spent observing these animals, the more his understanding of them grew.

他观察这些动物的时间越长,对马的了解程度就越深。

4. 句型公式: 独立主格结构

Day after day, Han Gan painted the horses, his brush presenting every detail that he saw with his own eyes.

韩干日复一日地画马,用画笔把眼睛观察到的每一处细节都呈现出来。

5. 句型公式: It + be + 过去分词 + that...

It is said that when the Emperor asked Han Gan to take a master of horse painting as his teacher, the artist replied...

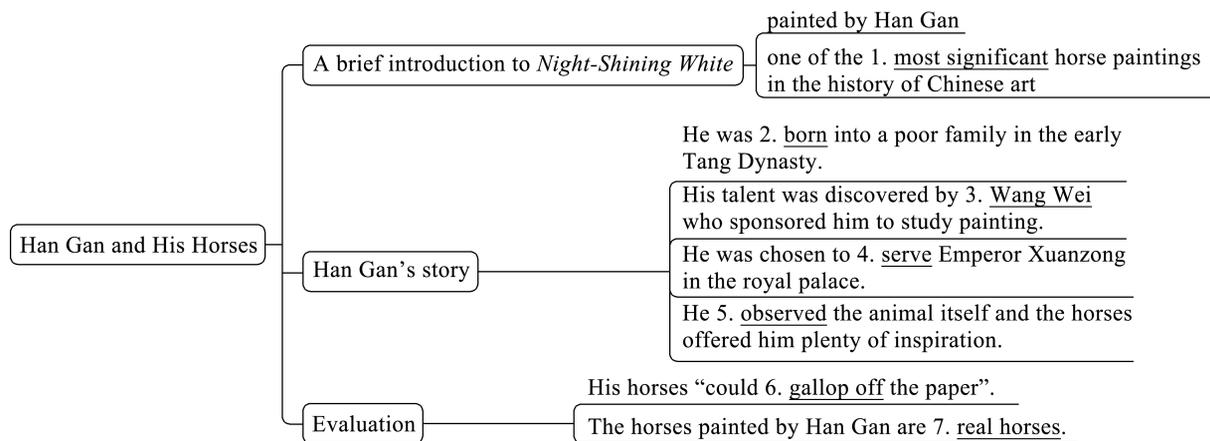
据说,皇帝曾让他选一位画马大师为师,韩干却回答……

任务型课堂

Part 1 课文理解

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What's Han Gan famous for?

- A. Writing poems.
- B. Painting horses.
- C. Serving the Emperor.
- D. Teaching as an artist.

2. What do we know about Han Gan?

- A. He was born into a well-off family.
- B. He once worked in a local shoe shop.
- C. He was chosen as a teacher by the Emperor.
- D. He was sponsored by the famous poet Wang Wei.

3. Why is Han Gan different from others?

- A. Because he lived with horses and observed them carefully.
- B. Because he once served as a stable worker.
- C. Because he often visited many places of interest.
- D. Because he painted horses by copying previous painters.

4. What's the text mainly about?

- A. The horse painting *Night-Shining White*.
- B. The life story of the great artist Han Gan.
- C. The famous artist Han Gan and his paintings.
- D. The history of Chinese art.

答案: 1~4 BDAC

○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Day after day, Han Gan painted the horses, his brush presenting every detail that he saw with his own eyes.

[句子分析] his brush presenting every detail 是独立主格结构, 相当于状语, that he saw with his own eyes 是定语从句, 修饰先行词 every detail.

[尝试翻译] 韩干日复一日地画马, 用画笔把眼睛观察到的每一处细节都呈现出来。

2. Those who saw Han Gan's horse paintings all sang high praises for his unique skill, saying that his horses "could gallop off the paper".

[句子分析] 本句为复合句。who 引导定语从句, 修饰先行词 Those, 且在从句中作主语; saying... 为现在分词短语作伴随状语, 其中 that 引导的从句作 saying 的宾语。

[尝试翻译] 看过韩干的骏马图的人都对他独特的技艺赞赏有加, 称他的马“跃然纸上”。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. What made Han Gan a successful painter?

His natural talent and years of hard work.

2. What does Su Shi's comment mean to you?

It means that the horses painted by Han Gan look like real horses due to his talent, skill and careful observation.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. be regarded as... 被视为……

[教材原文] *Night-Shining White*, now kept in New York's Metropolitan Museum of Art, is regarded as one of the most significant horse paintings in the history of Chinese art.

《照夜白图》, 现收藏于纽约大都会艺术博物馆, 被认为是中国艺术史上最为重要的骏马图之一。

[归纳拓展]

(1) regard *v.* 认为, 看作 *n.* 关注, 关心; 尊重
regard... as... 把……当作……(被动: be regarded as...)

as regards = as for/to 关于, 至于
with regard to 关于

(2) regardless *adv.* 不管, 不顾
regardless of 不管……, 不顾……

(3) regarding *prep.* 关于, 至于

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① However, most people don't regard pronunciation as a very important part of communication skills.

② As regards environmental issues, the government will enforce existing regulations.

③ With regard to gifts, in my opinion, some traditional Chinese cakes and fruits will be OK, or your local specialties will be better.

④ (2024·九省联考) Regardless of how much they like a playmate, they may still grab his toys, refuse to share, and get bossy.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之推荐信) 这座被视为文化中心的城市每年都吸引着许多游客。

The city, which is regarded as a cultural centre, attracts many tourists every year.

2. recommend *v.* 推荐, 介绍; 劝告; 使受欢迎

[教材原文] Wang Wei decided to sponsor the young man to study painting and recommended him to a master.

王维决定资助这个年轻人学画, 并把他引荐给了一位绘画大师。

[归纳拓展]

(1) recommend sb./sth. to sb. 向某人推荐某人/某物

recommend sb. for sth. 推荐某人担任某职务

recommend doing sth. 劝/建议做某事

recommend sb. to do sth. 建议某人做某事

recommend that... (should+) do 劝/建议……

It is recommended that... 建议……

(2) recommendation *n.* 推荐, 介绍; 建议

名师点拨 ■■■■

recommend 后面跟从句时, 从句谓语动词用 (should+) do。以下动词具有相同的用法:

一坚持: insist

二命令: order、command

三建议: suggest、advise、recommend

四要求: demand、request、require、ask

再加一个敦促: urge

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① The doctor recommended me to change (change) my way of life.

② If you want to visit the museum, I recommend going (go) there by underground.

③ The teacher recommended that everyone (should) take (take) an active part in the English party.

④ Knowing that you're interested in the traditional Chinese culture and keen on learning more about it, I'm writing to offer my recommendation (recommend).

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信) 强烈建议学校给学生更多的自由时间去参加体育活动。

It is/It's strongly recommended that the school (should) give students more free time to take part in sports activities.

3. due to 由于; 应归于

[教材原文] Due to Han Gan's natural talent and years of hard work, he was eventually chosen to serve Emperor Xuanzong in the royal palace.

由于韩干的天赋和多年的努力,他最终被选入宫中成为唐玄宗的画师。

[归纳拓展]

be due to do sth. 预计做某事

be due to sb. 某人应得的

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① Due to his carelessness, he failed to pass his English test.

② The committee is due to make (make) a decision this week.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之人物介绍) 她的成功很大程度上归功于她的努力。

Her success was largely due to her efforts.

4. 独立主格结构

[教材原文] Day after day, Han Gan painted the horses, **his brush presenting every detail** that he saw with his own eyes.

韩干日复一日地画马,用画笔把眼睛观察到的每一处细节都呈现出来。

[句式分析] 句中的 his brush presenting every

detail 为独立主格结构,相当于伴随状语。

[归纳拓展]

(1) 独立主格结构的逻辑主语与主句的主语不一致,它独立存在。该结构在句中一般作状语,表示时间、条件、原因、伴随状况等。

(2) 常见的独立主格结构形式:

① 名词/代词+现在分词/过去分词/不定式

② 名词/代词+形容词/副词/介词短语

③ 名词/代词+名词

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① The guide leading (lead) the way, we had no trouble getting out of the forest.

② All things considered (consider), her suggestion is of greater value than yours.

③ Many trees, flowers and grass to be planted (plant) next spring, our newly-built school will look even more beautiful.

(2) 写作微练

① (读后续写之动作描写) 他坐在那里,手托着头。

He sat there, head on hand.

② (读后续写之环境描写) 树叶五彩缤纷,秋天的景色令人惊叹。

With the leaves colourful, the autumn scenery was breathtaking.

多义词汇 专练

1. **shade** A. *n.* 背阴;(树)荫 B. *n.* 浓淡深浅;色度
C. *n.* 差别;不同 D. *v.* 给……遮挡(光线)

① Politicians have many **shades** of opinion on this issue. C

② Our courtyard was **shaded** by high trees. D

③ Tired and thirsty, we sat down in the **shade** of the wall for rest. A

④ Sunflowers in three **shades** of yellow represent different stages of life. B

2. **sponsor** A. *n.* 倡议者 B. *v.* 资助

C. *n.* 赞助商

① She found a company to **sponsor** her through college. B

② The race organisers are trying to attract **sponsors**. C

③ The **sponsor** of the programme invested heavily to receive public recognition. A

Unit 4 课后素养评价 (十六)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

- The tourists cannot help wondering how the ancient people could manage to complete the magnificent (宏伟的) building without modern equipment.
- I can't say which wine (葡萄酒) is better—it's a matter of personal taste.
- The first emperor (皇帝) of China, Qinshihuang, introduced a new writing system, currency, and a set of measurements.
- The engineer held frequent (频繁的) meetings concerning technical problems.
- In the morning, the sky appeared a heavy shade (色调) of mottled grey.
- Polar bears live mostly (大部分) on sea ice, which they use as a platform for hunting seals.
- These vases (花瓶) are believed to be worth over \$20,000 each.
- The young man couldn't carry out his plan because of lack (缺少) of money.

II. 语法填空

- Buses run frequently (frequent) between the city and the airport.
- We barely (bare) had time to catch the train.
- Two lawyers have donated \$50,000 to sponsor (sponsor) our school's campaign "Help the Needy".
- The congress opened with a minute's silence in memory of those who died in the struggle.
- What beautiful flowers they are!
- It is human nature for parents to be fond of their children.
- The police officer was sent to Ryan's home.
- According to their report, most young people sing high praises for this kind of show.

III. 短语填空

be regarded as; range from... to...; on the move;
day after day; by accident; due to

- I met him by accident at the bus stop.
- He works from morning till night, day after day.
- The town was cut off from the rest of the world due to the heavy snow.
- An elephant group is on the move in the national park.
- Mountains are regarded as spiritual places by many cultures.
- The participants' average age is 27, ranging from 22 to 33.

IV. 完成句子

- The thief was observed to enter the bank.
有人看见小偷进了银行。
- So many workers being absent, our manager recommended that the training programme (should) be put off.
这么多工人缺席,我们经理建议推迟培训计划。
- Not only does swimming benefit our health, but also it helps us have a strong will.
游泳不但对我们的身体有好处,而且能培养我们坚强的意志。
- Whether we go to your place or stay here, we need to find something to eat.
不管我们是到你那里去还是待在这儿,我们都需要找点东西吃。
- It is believed that tea is good for our health.
人们相信茶对我们的健康有益。
- While travelling, it's difficult for us to get enough sleep.
旅行的时候,我们很难获得充足的睡眠。
- The more difficult the questions are, the less likely he is able to answer them.
问题越难,他回答出来的可能性就越小。

8. Although he lacked experience, he got the job finally.

尽管他缺乏经验,最终他也得到了这份工作。

V. 语法填空

Having grown up in northern Arizona, I believe that the southwestern state is home **1. to** the most beautiful landscapes on the planet. That is, until I **2. was invited** (invite) to explore Guizhou Province by an organisation many years ago. There is nothing like seeing with one's own eyes.

My father used to drag my brothers and me on **3. fishing** (fish) trips around Arizona. We would compete to catch the **4. largest** (large) fish. On my trip to Guizhou I had the opportunity to canoe on Wanfeng Lake, **5. where** I enjoyed the silence and took in the surrounding karst mountains.

During my trip around **6. the** city of Xingyi, in Guizhou, I saw the artwork of the Bouyei ethnic group. They use dyes (染料) **7. produced** (produce) from local plants to make clothing and blankets. Local elders still practise weaving with wooden machines and pass that tradition on to their grandchildren. The designs were ancient, and carried **8. wisdom** (wise) within them. **9. Seriously** (serious), I got the feeling of being home while looking at the art on display in Xingyi.

I **10. have lived/have been living** (live) away from Arizona for 10 long years, making my own living in China. I've managed to build a family, a career, a livelihood, and passion projects. I feel as though I have everything I need. In Guizhou, I feel at home.

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是校学生会文艺部(the Department of Art)部长李华,请根据下面的内容提示用英语给你校的外籍教师 Mr Robert Martin 发一封电子邮件,邀请他参加学校即将举办的艺术节(School Art Festival)活动。要点包括:

1. 时间:下周四和周五

2. 地点:校礼堂

3. 内容:(1)介绍艺术节内容(各班的唱歌比赛和其他文艺节目表演);

(2)邀请 Mr Robert Martin 参加艺术节,并担任评委;

(3)恳请光临,并希望尽早回复。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:礼堂 auditorium; 评委 judge

【参考范文】

Dear Mr Robert Martin,

I'm Li Hua, and I'm mainly in charge of the Department of Art of the Students' Union at our school. I'm writing to invite you to take part in the coming School Art Festival.

It is to be held next Thursday and Friday in the school auditorium, when there will be a singing competition among all classes and a lot of performances given by students and teachers. Meanwhile I'd like to invite you to act as a judge for the singing competition.

We would be extremely grateful if you could manage to come, and I'm looking forward to your early reply.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I am a proud mother of three children. My last little baby was born in the middle of August and her name is Aida.

Shortly after having Aida, my mother-in-law Ann showed me something she learned from her friend's mother in an art class she attended weekly. She had a loom (织布机) and showed me how to knit (编织) a scarf. After I learned some skills, she gave me a small loom with her half-done project.

I was looking after my sweet little baby at home, so I had some extra time to do something

with my hands throughout the day. I enjoyed making the scarf so I bought a full loom set and tons of thread (线) and started to make woollen hats since it was winter.

I realised the homeless population in my town really needed some more warm clothes. I started to give away my hats to the people asking for food outside the food shop down the street I live in.

My oldest son Siddhartha got involved in the project and made a hat as well. I found that there was a non-profit organisation on the way home, which made masks for farm workers and was asking for winter warm clothing donations. I made a lot of woollen hats and gave them to the organisation which would hand them out to farm workers.

Then I, together with my son, made woollen hats for everyone in my family as birthday gifts, and gave woollen hats to all my neighbours I was close to. There was a new family that moved in down the street. I did not know them very well but why not break the ice with some handmade gifts? So I made hats for the mum and the one-year-old baby. I knocked on the door and handed the gifts over and my neighbour was so happy to receive them. We chatted happily and I learned she worked in a

hospital.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

The new neighbour had limited knitting skills so she asked me to create sweaters for kids in hospital together. I agreed to the act of kindness because I had always been doing such similar things. In my spare time from babysitting, I was making children's sweaters. A month later, I had made 20 sweaters. My new neighbour, my son and I sent our gifts to the hospital. We explained our purpose, handed out sweaters to the parents and wished their kids a quick recovery. They all thanked us for our gifts.

Later, my new neighbour wanted to learn my knitting skills to serve the elderly in the nursing home. She really admired my skills, and I was glad to teach her, so she bought a set of loom just like mine. She quickly mastered the skills. Together we made winter hats for the old people in the nursing home. We soon made enough hats and gave them away to the old people, who needed these things badly. I hope that our gifts will make their life a little more comfortable. I'm happy to continue spreading the love to more people.

迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

Part 1 应用文写作

——描述一件艺术品

○写作指导

描述一件艺术品属于说明文类写作范畴。我们在进行此类内容的写作时,需要注意以下几个方面:

1. 写作内容必须全面,不仅要把所给出的要点内容全部包含在内,而且需要在必要的情况下,适当增加细节,以使上下文的内容表述连贯、自然。
2. 写作的时态和人称要固定。说明文写作往往采用一般现在时,个别情况下使用一般过去时。在人称上以第三人称为主。
3. 避免使用单一的句式和枯燥、低级的词汇。写作前,我们需要选择几个不同的句式结构,这样可以使文章更具有语言表达上的美感。同时要注意尽量避免使用平庸的词汇,尽量使用高级词汇,这样可以给文章增色不少。

○典题示例

请根据下面的内容写一篇介绍《清明上河图》(*Along the River During the Qingming Festival*)的文章。

《清明上河图》为北宋画家张择端创作的长卷风俗画,是中国十大传世名画之一,属国宝级文物。作品采用散点透视的方法生动记录了北宋都城汴京的城市面貌和当时社会各阶层人民的生活状况,是北宋全盛时期都城汴京繁荣的见证。全图大致分为汴京郊外春光、汴河场景、城内街市三部分。

注意:1. 词数 150 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:散点透视 scatter perspective; 描绘 portray; 巧妙地 subtly

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	说明文
时态	一般现在时
人称	第三人称
要点	1. 《清明上河图》的价值及重要性; 2. 《清明上河图》的绘画技巧及主要内容; 3. 总结全文。

Step 2: 要点补全

- ① *Along the River During the Qingming Festival* is painted by (由……绘画) Zhang Zeduan.
- ② It is a masterpiece of realism (写实主义的杰作) in the history of Chinese paintings.
- ③ It's one of the ten most world-famous Chinese paintings (中国十大传世名画之一).
- ④ It is regarded as (被视为) a national treasure level cultural relic.
- ⑤ Zhang Zeduan adopts the method of scatter perspective (采用散点透视的方法).
- ⑥ He vividly portrays various buildings and daily lives of people (生动地描绘了各种各样的建筑物和人们的日常生活) in Bianjing, the capital of the Northern Song Dynasty.
- ⑦ Zhang Zeduan plans the composition of (规划……的构成) people, buildings, transportation, trees, and streams subtly, achieving a sense of (达到……感) three-dimensional space.
- ⑧ *Along the River During the Qingming Festival* has

very high historical value (有很高的历史价值) and artistic value.

Step 3: 句式升级

①用过去分词短语作定语连接 Step 2 中的①②两句
Along the River During the Qingming Festival painted by Zhang Zeduan is a masterpiece of realism in the history of Chinese paintings.

②用 not only... but also... 连接并采用倒装升级 Step 2 中的③④两句

Not only is it one of the ten most world-famous Chinese paintings, but also regarded as a national treasure level cultural relic.

③用现在分词短语作状语连接 Step 2 中的⑤⑥两句
Adopting the method of scatter perspective, Zhang Zeduan vividly portrays various buildings and daily lives of people in Bianjing, the capital of the Northern Song Dynasty.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Along the River During the Qingming Festival painted by Zhang Zeduan is a masterpiece of realism in the history of Chinese paintings. Not only is it one of the ten most world-famous Chinese paintings, but also regarded as a national treasure level cultural relic.

It's painted in hand scroll format, which is a typical genre painting of the Northern Song Dynasty. Adopting the method of scatter perspective, Zhang Zeduan vividly portrays various buildings and daily lives of people in Bianjing, the capital of the Northern Song Dynasty. It mainly consists of three main sections. The first part is the beautiful spring scenery in the suburb. The middle part is the busy scene of the Bian River and the bridge. The third part is the crowded downtown streets. Zhang Zeduan plans the composition of people,

buildings, transportation, trees, and streams subtly, achieving a sense of three-dimensional space.

Along the River During the Qingming Festival has very high historical value and artistic value.

○学以致用

请根据下面的内容要点介绍世界上最著名的画作之一《蒙娜丽莎》。

1. 《蒙娜丽莎》是 16 世纪文艺复兴时期意大利画家列奥纳多·达·芬奇创作的一幅油画;
2. 这幅画为法国政府所有,挂在巴黎卢浮宫的墙上;
3. 这幅画是一幅半身像,她的微笑让人难以揣摩;这幅画作可能是从卢浮宫被盗并找回的最著名的画作。

注意: 1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇: 文艺复兴 Renaissance; 神秘的, 费解的 enigmatic

【参考范文】

A Brief Introduction to Mona Lisa

Mona Lisa is a 16th-century portrait painted in oil by the Italian painter Leonardo da Vinci during the Italian Renaissance. The work is owned by the French government and is on the wall in the Louvre in Paris. It is perhaps one of the most famous paintings in the world.

The painting is a half-length portrait and shows a woman whose facial expression is often described as enigmatic. When you look into her eyes, it seems she has a mind of her own. One moment she seems to be laughing at you, but then again you catch a sense of sadness in her smile. It is probably the most famous painting that has ever been stolen from the Louvre and recovered.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

Maybe we all need to treat others with more patience and understanding. Then we might be repaid in unexpected ways.

Fifteen years ago, I took a trip to Lecce in southern Italy. Lecce is an important place for art and culture lovers. Walking among churches and old buildings in the city centre is a dive into the past. More importantly, it's an ideal place for photographing.

One morning, I got up early enough for a sweeping view of the sunrise, the blue sea, white buildings and green trees. After climbing up a hill, I paused to catch my breath. As I looked around, I was shocked by the breathtaking views in front of me.

When I positioned myself to take some pictures, a woman suddenly approached from behind, and planted herself right in front of my view. Like me, I thought, this woman was here to stop for a short break, and enjoy the scenery. Beyond my expectations, she stood still as if something caught her attention, not noticing anyone else's presence around her.

For about 10 minutes, I used my camera to scan the sun and review the shot I would eventually take. Patient as I was, I got bored finally. "Is it too much to ask her to move aside so that I can take just one picture of the landscape?" I asked myself.

Of course, I could have asked her, but something prevented me from doing so.

She seemed so absorbed in her observation that I didn't have the heart to mess with it. So I decided to wait.

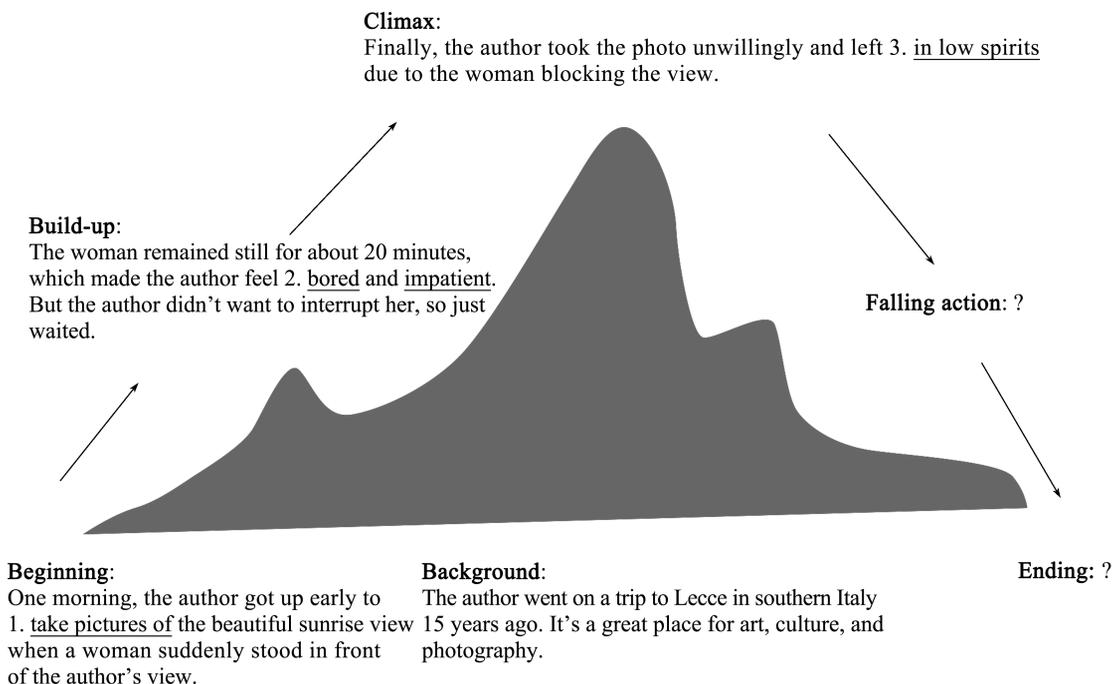
Another 10 minutes passed. However, the woman was still there. I grew really impatient. I decided to take the photo anyway. With an unwilling touch of the shutter (快门), I left in low spirits.

任务一: 阅读文章, 回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

It tells the story that when the author went to take a photo, a woman accidentally blocked his view and enjoyed the scenery. The author decided to take the photo anyway.

任务二: 梳理故事情节, 完成故事山 (Story Mountain)。



任务三:回答下面的问题,并根据段落开头提示语,构思和完善故事发展情节。

<p>Paragraph 1:</p> <p>After the photos were printed, I tried to find the photo “ruined” by the woman. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. What was the result of the photo that the author thought was ruined? <u>The author’s unwilling touch led to a perfect picture.</u></p> <p>2. What did the author do with the picture that he loved? <u>The author put the picture in a frame and sent it to a photography contest.</u></p> <p>3. What was the outcome of the photography contest for the author? <u>The author got the first prize in the photography contest.</u></p>
<p>Paragraph 2:</p> <p>Now this photo hangs on a wall in my study. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. Why did the author hang the photo on the wall? <u>Because it is his favourite picture and it can be a reminder.</u></p> <p>2. What can the photo remind the author to do when encountering something annoying? <u>It can remind the author to be patient when meeting with something annoying.</u></p> <p>3. According to the author, what might happen if we try to understand others? <u>If we try to understand others, we can build closer bonds and live in harmony with each other, and we might be rewarded in unexpected ways.</u></p>

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

After the photos were printed, I tried to find the photo “ruined” by the woman. However, it turned out that my unwilling touch led to a perfect picture. Actually, it was exactly the woman’s presence that made the image come to life and breathe. I loved the picture so much that I put it in a frame and sent it to a photography contest. To my surprise, this picture was highly thought of by some professional photographers too. Several days later, I received a letter saying that I got the first prize in the photography contest.

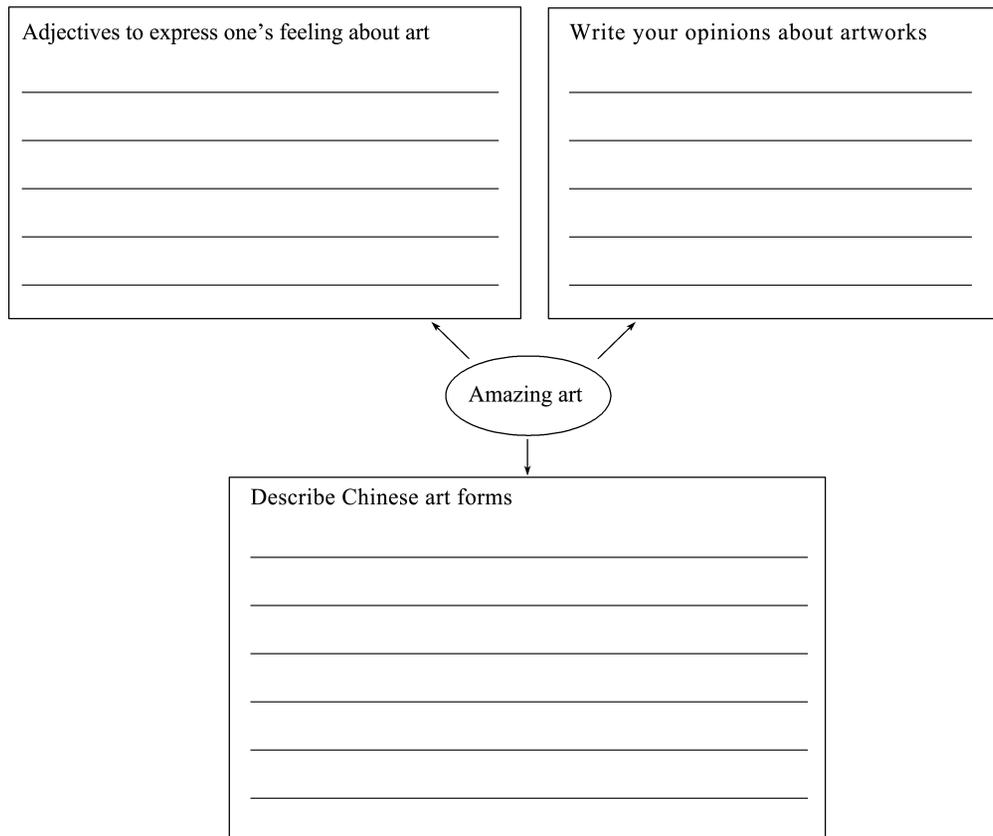
Now this photo hangs on a wall in my study. I hung it there not only because it is my favourite picture, but also because it can be a reminder. For one thing, it can be a reminder for me to be patient when meeting with something annoying. For another, I want to remind myself that we all live in the same space and share a common desire for beauty. If we can try to understand others, we can build closer bonds and live in harmony with each other. Then we might be rewarded in unexpected ways though we expect nothing in return.

★ ★ ★

重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。



答案:略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

Mona Lisa is Leonardo da Vinci's painting of a woman. This week, the painting gave away a secret. Scientists used X-rays to scrutinise a small part of the more than 500-year-old painting. The researchers discovered a method Leonardo used in the work. They discovered an oil paint used for *Mona Lisa* was a special, new paint mixture.

The research suggests that the Italian artist may have been in an experimental state when he set to work on the painting early in the 16th century.

"He was someone who loved to experiment, and each of his paintings is completely different," said Victor Gonzalez, the study's lead writer. "In this case, it's interesting to see that indeed there is a special

method for the ground coat of *Mona Lisa*,” he said.

The researchers found a mixture in Leonardo’s first coat of paint. The discovery proved that Leonardo da Vinci most likely used lead oxide(铅氧化物) to thicken and help dry his paint.

The scientists looked into its structure(结构). The machine works at close to the speed of light, allowing researchers to look deeper into the paint structure.

Dutch artist Rembrandt may have used a similar mixture when he was painting in the 17th century. Gonzalez and other researchers have found the same material in his work, too.

Leonardo is thought to have used lead oxide, which has an orange colour. “What you will get is an oil that has a very nice golden colour,” Gonzalez said. “It flows more like honey(蜜).”

But *Mona Lisa*—said by the Louvre to be a picture of Lisa Gherardini, the wife of a silk businessman—and other works by Leonardo still have other secrets to tell. “There are plenty, plenty more things to discover,” Gonzalez said.

1. What does the underlined word “scrutinise” in Paragraph 1 mean?
 - A. Create.
 - B. Improve.
 - C. Remove.
 - D. Examine.
2. What does Victor Gonzalez think of Leonardo da Vinci’s method of creation?
 - A. It is traditional.
 - B. It is common.
 - C. It is simple.
 - D. It is pioneering.
3. Why did Leonardo da Vinci use the mixture to create his painting?
 - A. To enhance the paint’s drying.
 - B. To prevent the paint from drying.
 - C. To make the painting colourful.
 - D. To keep the painting in good condition.
4. What can we learn about Leonardo’s works from the last paragraph?
 - A. They need further research.
 - B. They were all painted with special oils.
 - C. Many secrets are to be covered by them.
 - D. Actions will be taken to protect them.

答案:1~4 DDAA

单元质量评估(四)

I. 阅读理解

A

Here are some performances to be put on in March.

Mary Poppins The magical story is successfully brought to the stage with dazzling choreography, incredible effects and unforgettable songs. It is brilliantly adapted from the wonderful stories.

Performance Time: Monday to Saturday at 7:30 pm, Wednesday and Saturday at 2:30 pm.

Address: Phoenix Theatre, Charlies Rd.

The Lion King It has been a success since 1994, telling the story of Simba and his difficult path to become a king. You'll almost feel part of the story as you journey through Simba's world. The director combined live performers with special effects. It is really a fantastic singing and dancing show.

Performance Time: Tuesday to Saturday at 7:30 pm, Saturday and Sunday at 2:30 pm.

Address: Lyceum Theatre, Huston Street.

Back to the Future When Marty McFly finds himself transported back to 1955 in a time machine, he changes the course of history. Now he's in a race against time to fix the present, escape the past and send himself back to the future. Audience will enjoy the works by musicians!

Performance Time: Only 10 March (Friday) at 3 pm.

Address: Adophix Theatre, Lida Street.

Frozen The exciting story of love and sisterhood is beautifully retold for the stage in the new musical. It brings together the two sisters who melted hearts across the world to cast a whole new spell over the West End. It's moving and joyful.

Performance Time: Thursday to Friday at 7 pm, Saturday and Sunday at 1 pm and 5:30 pm.

Address: Pauline Theatre, James Street.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍的是

3月将上演的一些演出的相关信息。

1. Which of the following best suits people who have free Mondays?

A. *Mary Poppins*.

B. *The Lion King*.

C. *Back to the Future*.

D. *Frozen*.

A 细节理解题。根据第一部分中的“**Performance Time:** Monday to Saturday at 7:30 pm”可知, *Mary Poppins* 最适合周一有空的人。故选 A。

2. Where can a music lover enjoy a science-related show?

A. At Phoenix Theatre.

B. At Lyceum Theatre.

C. At Adophix Theatre.

D. At Pauline Theatre.

C 推理判断题。根据第三部分中的“**When Marty McFly finds himself transported back to 1955 in a time machine, he changes the course of history. Now he's in a race against time to fix the present, escape the past and send himself back to the future. Audience will enjoy the works by musicians!**”和“**Address:** Adophix Theatre”可知, 音乐爱好者在 Adophix 剧院可以欣赏到与科学相关的节目。故选 C。

3. What do the four performances have in common?

A. They are all based on famous novels.

B. They all offer people wonderful music.

C. They have all won well-known awards.

D. They are all adapted from real-life stories.

B 细节理解题。根据第一部分中的“The magical story is successfully brought to the stage with dazzling choreography, incredible effects and unforgettable songs.”, 第二部分中的“**It is really a fantastic singing and dancing show.**”, 第三部分中的“**Audience will enjoy the works by musicians!**”和第四部分中的“**The exciting story of love and sisterhood is beautifully retold for the stage in the new musical.**”可知, 这四场表演的共同之处在于它们都为人们提供美妙的音乐。故选 B。

B

In my very first job with some archaeologists, I

wasn't digging objects out of the ground. Instead, I was employed as an artist, drawing what they found. However, I was soon more interested in the stories behind the objects than in drawing them and that's how my career in archaeology started. I still draw what I find in my work as a specialist on the Silk Road, the old trade route connecting the East and the West, and I also work on some underwater projects too.

In archaeology, my all-time hero is an American called Raphael Pumpelly. I first heard about him when I was a student on a trip to Turkmenistan, a country right in the heart of Asia. To get around the country, I had to learn Russian so that I could speak to the local people. When I got there I thought, "Wow! I'm one of the first Americans here!" Then an old man told me about an American archaeologist, Raphael Pumpelly, who was there doing the same thing over 100 years ago.

Archaeology is in my family. My wife is in the same profession, and, although our two boys aren't interested in the future in archaeology themselves, we've been on some great digs together and they love what we do because they get to travel with us. Last summer, we took them to Lake Titicaca in South America in the high areas of the Andes Mountains. My best experience was when I was digging on the Egyptian Red Sea coast. There's very little rain and it's so dry that everything is kept as it was. In an old house, where the owner used to store goods from the ships that came in, I picked up a 700-year-old doormat in front of the house and there, under it, after all that time, was the house key with the owner's name carved on it. It felt like he could be on his way home any minute! And I thought, "Hey, I do just that. This man's not much different to me!"

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者从事考古的经历和感受。

4. What did the author do in his first job?
- Dig out ancient objects.
 - Find out stories behind the objects.
 - Draw pictures of the objects found.
 - Take photos of what was dug out.
- C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的 "In my very

first job with some archaeologists, I wasn't digging objects out of the ground. Instead, I was employed as an artist, drawing what they found." 可知,他的第一份工作是绘制挖掘出的物品的图画。

5. While seeing the key under the doormat, how did the author feel?
- People from different centuries can be so similar.
 - The doormat was in such a good condition.
 - People had difficulty living in such a dry place.
 - There had been so much trade in that area.
- A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的 "It felt like he could be on his way home any minute! And I thought, 'Hey, I do just that. This man's not much different to me!'" 可知,作者看见地垫下的钥匙,感觉 700 年前的那个人和现在的自己没有什么不同。
6. What is the writer's main purpose in writing the text?
- To describe the life of an archaeologist he admires.
 - To persuade people to take up archaeology as a career.
 - To explain what he enjoys about being an archaeologist.
 - To show how archaeologists work.
- C 写作意图题。根据第一段中的 "I was soon more interested in the stories behind the objects than in drawing them" 和最后一段中的 "My best experience was when I was digging on the Egyptian Red Sea coast." 可知,作者在文中介绍了自己从事考古工作喜欢做的事情。
7. What's the main idea of the passage?
- How to become a famous archaeologist.
 - The writer's job as an archaeologist.
 - The best experience the writer went through.
 - The first archaeologist to learn Russian.
- B 主旨大意题。通览全文内容可知,本篇文章主要讲述作者作为一名考古学家的工作内容、对待这份工作的观点态度等,由此可知 B 项正确。

C

A wildfire in New Mexico, a state in the southwestern US, has burned for nearly two months, consuming more than 315,000 acres of land—an area about the size of the city of Los

Angeles.

“With climate change, it seems like the dominoes are beginning to fall,” the hydrologist JT Reager told the BBC. “We get warmer temperatures. We get less rain and snow. The reservoirs (水库) start drying up, then in a place like the West of the US, we get wildfires.”

In recent years, wildfires have wreaked havoc across countries including the US and Australia.

These fires destroy homes and businesses, claim lives and also negatively impact the environment. As climate change worsens, global temperatures increase and so does the risk of wildfires. A recent report from the United Nations Environment Programme and GRID-Arendal, a partner organisation in Norway, reveals that wildfires are becoming more frequent and severe.

This is harmful to people around the globe. According to the joint UN report, it is estimated that the yearly “economic burden from wildfire for the United States is between \$7.1 billion and \$347.8 billion”.

Another article published in *Nature* journal found that wildfires have created seasonal pollution patterns in the northwestern US. Between 2002 and 2018, carbon monoxide (一氧化碳) levels increased every year for the month of August in the area.

In 2019 and 2020, Australian bushfires displaced millions, filled the air with deadly clouds of smoke and killed thousands of koalas.

Forest fires are common in China too. In the recent decade, the total number of forest fires in the country every year has increased to more than 2,000 cases, according to *The Paper*.

Greater Hinggan Mountains (大兴安岭) is one of the important forestry bases in China. The National Forestry and Grassland Administration adopted mountain watchtowers, forest cameras and aerial drones (无人机) to prevent forest fires in summer.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了野火正变得越来越频繁,危害也越来越大。

8. What's the author's purpose of quoting Reager's words in the second paragraph?

A. To show the seriousness of the recent wildfire in the US.

B. To list some environmental problems caused by wildfires.

C. To explain how climate change contributes to wildfires.

D. To provide possible solutions to wildfires around the globe.

C 推理判断题。通读第二段的内容可知,作者在第二段引用 Reager 的话是为了解释气候变化如何导致野火。故选 C。

9. What does the underlined phrase “wreaked havoc” in Paragraph 3 probably mean?

A. Created pollution.

B. Been out of control.

C. Caused great damage.

D. Drawn much attention.

C 词义猜测题。根据第四段中的“*These fires destroy homes and businesses, claim lives and also negatively impact the environment.*”和常识可知,近年来,野火在美国、澳大利亚等国家造成了严重破坏。所以 *wreaked havoc* 为“造成严重破坏”之意。故选 C。

10. How has wildfire affected the American Northwest according to the text?

A. Millions of people have been displaced.

B. It has caused seasonal patterns of pollution.

C. It has led to around \$7.1 billion economic loss annually.

D. Carbon monoxide levels have increased year on year.

B 细节理解题。根据第六段中的“*Another article published in Nature journal found that wildfires have created seasonal pollution patterns in the northwestern US.*”可知,野火在美国西北部形成了季节性的污染模式。故选 B。

11. What do we know about forest fires in China?

A. There have been over 2,000 cases in the last decade.

B. Greater Hinggan Mountains experienced the largest one.

C. They were not very common several decades ago.

D. Measures have been taken to prevent them from happening.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“*The National Forestry and Grassland Administration*

adopted mountain watchtowers, forest cameras and aerial drones (无人机) to prevent forest fires in summer.”可知,中国已经采取措施防止森林火灾的发生。故选 D。

D

Researchers at Baylor University were curious about whether there was a way to improve student performance. In particular, they wondered whether a technique called “targeted memory reactivation (激活;重启) (TMR)” could be useful for studying. In TMR, certain signals reactivate memories formed during the day while a person is asleep. The researchers focused on music.

A few university students took part in the experiment. They were asked to take a class on microeconomics (微观经济学), which they would be tested on the following day. During the lesson, all participants listened to three pieces of classical music. Then they spent the night in the sleep lab and while they were fast asleep, sounds were played in the background. For half of the participants, the sound was white noise, but the other half were played the three pieces they had listened to while studying. The next day they took the test and the test scores showed that the students who had been exposed to the “study music” while sleeping performed better on the test.

There were a few reasons the research group selected three classical music pieces as study music. Such music is much less distracting than music with lyrics (歌词). And the researchers also wanted to make sure that the music they played had obvious melodies (旋律), so that the brain could more easily form connections between the music and the study material. The three pieces they chose fit the bill perfectly.

Unfortunately, music could improve test scores the next day, but after a few months the music listeners were back to the same level as the students who slept with white noise in the background. Besides, the effect seemed to be more noticeable for female students than it was for men. Either way, listening to music at night is a study trick that could just make the difference between a passing or failing test for some people.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了研究者们利用三首古典音乐来研究音乐对学生们的考试成绩的影响。

12. What did the Baylor researchers try to find out?

- A. The benefits of classical music.
- B. Why TMR is helpful for studying.
- C. Whether music can improve study.
- D. Ways to ensure a good night's sleep.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知,贝勒大学的研究者想弄明白音乐是否会提高学生的成绩。故选 C。

13. What did the participants do during the experiment?

- A. They played different music in class.
- B. They listened to study music while taking the test.
- C. They put on the music of their choice while sleeping.
- D. They listened to either white noise or study music at night.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“During the lesson, all participants listened to three pieces of classical music. Then they spent the night in the sleep lab and while they were fast asleep, sounds were played in the background. For half of the participants, the sound was white noise, but the other half were played the three pieces they had listened to while studying.”可知,一半参与者在睡觉的时候听到的是白噪声,但另一半参与者们听到的是他们在学习时听过的三首曲子。故选 D。

14. Why were these pieces of classical music selected as study music?

- A. They are related to the study material.
- B. They have distinct melodies.
- C. They have memorable lyrics.
- D. They are familiar to students.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段的内容可知,研究人员之所以选择这三首音乐,是因为它们有明显的旋律,这样的音乐比有歌词的音乐更不会让人分心。故选 B。

15. What can we infer from the last paragraph?

- A. The effect of music wore off over time.
- B. The study trick made no difference to tests.
- C. White noise had the same effect as classical

music.

D. Male students benefited greatly from the study trick.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“Unfortunately, music could improve test scores the next day, but after a few months the music listeners were back to the same level as the students who slept with white noise in the background.”可知,随着时间的推移,音乐提高学生们的考试成绩的效果会逐渐消失。故选 A。

II. 七选五

Some people think working overtime means you're a hard worker. You have to sacrifice your personal time to stay at work, produce something, help the company, and be a more devoted employee. But is that right? 16 This means it takes you longer to produce something than someone else.

A good manager knows how to encourage his employees to work to their full potential instead of expecting them to work late even if they don't have something to do. People who stay in their office until late hate their jobs. 17

Overworking may negatively influence the level of productivity and efficiency (效率). Any company that makes their employees work those hours is not being managed well. The fault lies with management, who should take a good look at themselves. 18 And the boss would prefer you to work efficiently 7 hours and then go back home rather than 8 hours with poor efficiency.

19 The fact is that the competition is so fierce that if you don't work hard someone will easily and willingly replace you, especially in the IT industry. Employees are told they need to work longer hours or they don't belong here or are denied promotions. It is time to abandon the culture of overworking, to work smarter, more efficiently and have a balance with personal life.

Nowadays, it's hard for a young person to build a good future, for pressures are on his (or her)

shoulders: housing, children, parents, themselves, etc. But everyone must keep working hard to have ourselves on the way to the good future, which is not certain. 20

A. No one wants to work overtime.

B. The boss thinks highly of overworking.

C. Working too many hours only means you are inefficient.

D. And it affects their performance, as well as other aspects of their life.

E. What's sure is that if you're lazy and don't work hard, no good future will come.

F. Managers believe that overworking is an evidence of devotion from their employees' side.

G. In many countries, overworking would be criticised because it reflects poor work efficiency.

答案:16~20 CDGAE

III. 完形填空

It was a bitter, cold evening in Virginia years ago. The old man's beard was glazed by winter's frost while he 21 a ride across the river. The wait seemed 22. His body became numb from the 23 cold wind.

He 24 the steady rhythm of 25 hooves (蹄) galloping along the path. He watched as several horsemen rounded the bend. He let the first one pass by without an effort to get his 26. Then another passed by, and another. Finally, the last rider 27 the spot. As this one drew near, the old man caught the rider's eye and said, "Sir, would you mind giving an old man a(n) 28?"

Reining (勒住) his horse, the rider replied, "Sure." Seeing the old man was unable to 29 his half-frozen body from the ground, the horseman helped him 30 the horse. The horseman took the old man not just across the river, but to his 31, which was a few miles away.

As they neared the cottage, the horseman's 32 caused him to inquire, "Sir, I notice you let several other riders pass by without 33 a ride.

I'm curious why you would wait and ask the last rider. 34 I had refused?"

"I've been here for some time. I reckon I know people pretty well," the old man replied. Then he continued, "I looked into the eyes of the other riders and immediately saw there was no 35 for my situation. It would have been useless even to ask them for a ride. But when I looked into your eyes, kindness was evident."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了一位老人请求一位骑手帮助他过河的故事。

21. A. waited for

B. looked around

C. hanged out

D. stepped forward

A 句意:当老人等着(帮助)过河时,他的胡子被冬天的霜冻弄得像上了釉似的。根据下文的描述亦可知,此处表示老人“等待(帮助过河)”。

22. A. helpless

B. restless

C. endless

D. faithless

C 根据下文的“His body became numb from the 23 cold wind.”可知,此处表示“等待似乎是无止境的”。

23. A. completely

B. extremely

C. desperately

D. obviously

B 句意:他的身体在极其寒冷的风中变得麻木。extremely 意为“极其地”。故选 B。

24. A. sensed

B. watched

C. heard

D. imagined

C 句意:他听到了道路上飞驰而来的有节奏的马蹄声。根据上下文的描述可知,这里指老人“听到了马蹄声”。

25. A. approaching

B. providing

C. expecting

D. advancing

A 句意:他听到了道路上飞驰而来的有节奏的马蹄声。approach 意为“靠近”。故选 A。

26. A. attraction

B. patience

C. potential

D. attention

D 句意:他没有努力引起他的注意,就让第一个人过去了。此处表示“没有引起第一个骑手的注

意”。

27. A. challenged

B. occupied

C. neared

D. received

C 句意:终于,最后一个骑手接近老人坐着的地方。根据下文的“As this one drew near...”亦可知答案。

28. A. ride

B. position

C. platform

D. action

A 根据上文的内容可知,此处表示“先生,你介意载一位老人到对岸去吗?”。故选 A。

29. A. tie

B. lift

C. collect

D. drop

B 此处“lift one's body from the ground”表示“把身体从地面上抬起”。

30. A. onto

B. in

C. by

D. down

A 此处“help sb. onto the horse”表示“扶某人上马”。

31. A. requirement

B. bottom

C. destination

D. path

C 句意:骑手不仅把老人带到河对岸,还把他带到几英里外的目的地。根据下文的“As they neared the cottage...”亦可知答案。

32. A. confidence

B. responsibility

C. appreciation

D. curiosity

D 根据下文的“I'm curious why...”可知,此处表示“骑手的好奇心驱使他问问题”。

33. A. securing

B. finding

C. offering

D. charging

A 由上文可知,老人在前几个骑手经过时并没有要求带他过河,也就是“without securing a ride”。secure 此处意为“(尤指经过努力)获得,得到”。

34. A. If only

B. What if

C. But for

D. How about

B 句意:要是我拒绝了你怎么办呢?根据句意可知 B 项正确。

35. A. concern

B. anxiety

C. nervousness

D. pleasure

A 句意:我看着其他骑手的眼睛,立刻发现他们

并不关心我的处境。

IV. 语法填空

Oil-paper umbrellas, with a history of over 1,000 years in China, once **36. were** (be) everywhere. Nowadays people use the hand-made umbrellas **37. less** (little) in daily life than before. However, they are a symbol of **38. traditional** (tradition) Chinese culture.

Yuhang in Hangzhou is known for **39. making** (make) oil-paper umbrellas for over 230 years. Umbrellas here take more than 70 steps to make, such as making bamboo ribs and pasting (糊) paper. **40. It** takes at least a week to make an umbrella. In 2007, this kind of umbrella was added to Zhejiang Province's intangible (无形的) cultural heritage (遗产) list.

In 2015, Liu Weixue left a well-paid job to learn this art **41. from** his grandfather. "I want to bring this art to life," Liu said. "When it rains, someone uses the oil-paper umbrella—that's **42. what** I want to see."

After Liu mastered the skills, a studio **43. was started** (start) in Yuhang, where he gathered umbrella-making masters. **44. To sell** (sell) umbrellas, Liu opened an online shop in 2017. It now has more than 80,000 followers.

Liu hopes this art can be passed on. He goes to schools in Yuhang to teach students. He also shows up at **45. events** (event) and activities in different places to show more people the charm of this art.

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,你的美国笔友 Tom 来信询问你在高中时为什么选择学习艺术。请根据以下要点给他写一封回信。要点包括:

1. 第一次去美术馆看展览的经历;
2. 美术馆里有各种各样的绘画作品,诸如山水画、肖像画和水彩画;
3. 从此对绘画产生了兴趣;
4. 在高中选择学习艺术并立志成为一名画家。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

参考词汇:山水画 landscape painting; 肖像画 portrait; 水彩画 watercolour painting

【参考范文】

Dear Tom,

I'm glad to receive your letter. In your letter, you asked me why I chose to learn art in high school. Now I'd like to tell you something about it.

I still remember the first time I was taken to an art gallery to see an exhibition. There were a wide range of paintings, including landscape paintings, portraits and watercolour paintings, but what impressed me most was an oil painting named *Father*, which reminded me of my grandfather. Since then I have developed an interest in painting. I am fond of traditional Chinese painting style, especially Qi Baishi's shrimps and Xu Beihong's horses. That's why I chose to learn art in high school and aimed to be a painter. I am confident that my dream will surely be realised.

That's all I want to share with you. Looking forward to hearing from you.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Everyone in my drama class saw the paper in my hands shaking when I stood up to try out for a lead role in the yearly school play. I was there because the teacher wanted everyone to try out for a part.

Being shy and not confident, I began nervously reading the part for the main character, Star. She had no parents. Feeling so sorry for her, I finished reading.

Later when reading the name list, the teacher looked at me and announced, "Patty, you play Star. Come and get your script (剧本)." I was shocked.

Jim, an excellent boy, was playing the other lead. To learn my lines, I practised every day and finally memorised them. I became more confident and happier.

Then we started practising acting. Jim played the character, a Scrooge (吝啬鬼), who is unwilling to put a candle in his window so that the light will show passers-by the slippery ice on the path below. On the day, Star comes along, falls on the ice and gets injured.

Finally feeling bad, the Scrooge helps her up. To thank him, Star kisses his hand.

One day, before our drama class started, I saw a terrible drawing of me on the blackboard with words: Falling Star. I was laughed at by someone.

The teacher asked, “Who did this?” Nobody knew. We started rehearsing (排练), but my heart wasn't in it. The teacher told me not to care about the silly trick; it wouldn't happen again. But I was sad and anxious, wanting to quit. Finally I moved on and continually worked hard for the play.

Soon it was the day before the show. It was time for the dress rehearsal. I was excited. Everything went smoothly at the dress rehearsal until the scene where I slipped on the ice and the Scrooge helped me up.

When I kissed his hand, a terrible noise and laughter sounded from behind the set. I quickly left the stage and hurried into an empty room. With tears, I said, “I can't do it. Please get someone else!”

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

Suddenly, I felt a gentle hand on my shoulder. I heard voices, and a warm hand took mine. I looked up and saw the faces. Jim and several other classmates had come after me. “Please, don't drop out...” they said and tried to comfort me. Later, the teacher found the troublemaker Peter, who loved making silly tricks. And he apologised to me. Encouraged by my friendly teacher and so many kind classmates, I went back onstage and finished the scene with no further interruptions.

The following day, we were ready for the play. Throughout the performance, we could hear laughter from the audience from time to time. When the performance was over, they gave us a big round of applause. In the following weeks, schoolmates often came up to say, “You were good!” I was glad my hard work and determination as well as many people's support had helped me to perform successfully. It positively shaped my later life.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and nature, whose topic is human exploration activities and their significance. The unit introduces the topic through the introduction of famous explorers in history, then discusses the story of people climbing Mount Qomolangma, analyses the characteristics of explorers, guides students to think about the significance of exploration, and shows the uniqueness of the underwater world and its attraction to people through the selected reading of science fiction *Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea*. Finally, readers are inspired to think about the relationship between man and nature and self-worth.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与“人类的探险活动及其意义”主题相关的单词和词块来理解和表达。
		语法	能理解和运用过去将来时,并将其正确运用到表达之中。
		语篇	能通过略读或扫读的方式了解主旨和目标信息,明确作者的写作目的,理解文本结构和文本逻辑,识别其恰当表意所采用的手段。
		语用	能使用较为复杂的语言和词汇来表达对探险的观点。
	语言技能	听	能听懂描述的核心思想和细节信息并进行提炼和讨论。
		说	能有效地使用口语和书面语表达意义和进行交流。
		读	能通过阅读理解文章主要内容,分析登山者的动机,并通过探讨主旨大意、细节理解和开放性问答等活动,加深对文章的理解。
		写	能根据广告发挥想象力,写一篇日记记录一次假想的水下探险经历。
学习能力	能理解和感悟本单元所学的知识,探讨人类的探险活动及其意义,分析探险家的探险“天性”和探险活动的价值,实现知识与思维能力的拓展和迁移,养成勇于探索的精神;能通过恰当运用各种学习策略,在自主学习、合作学习与探究式学习的过程中,结合单元所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整学习内容和进程,激发英语学习的兴趣,提高分析和解决问题的能力,提高理解和表达能力。		

核心素养	具体要求
文化意识	能获得探险文化知识,并理解其内涵,比较中西文化异同,从其中汲取文化精华,形成正确的价值观;坚定文化自信,形成自尊、自信、自强的良好品格,具备一定的跨文化沟通和传播文化的能力。
思维品质	能辨析语言和文化中的具体现象,梳理和概括信息,分析推断信息的逻辑关系;批判性地看待各种思想观点,创造性地表达自己的观点,具备多元思维意识和创新思维能力。能评价探索的意义,表达自己对探索的看法。

◦ 必备知识

必背单词	initial, thus, zone, oxygen, border, confirm, crowd, attempt, failure, psychologist, port, unaware, alcohol, rubber, cotton, wool, guideline, cloth, bleeding, liquid, injury, stretch, league, servant, charge, captain, ahead, permit, chapter, relate, nut, astonish, ray, consume, distinguish, gradually, surround, wrinkled, shore, carpet, intensity, depth, broad, beneath, resident, male
重点表达	good money, make money, succeed in, take one's life, bring... into focus, figure out, human nature, refer to..., leave an impression on/upon sb., account for, in broad daylight
重点知识	1. either... or... 2. 状语从句的省略
单元语法	过去将来时
单元写作	旅游日志

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas
Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Watch a video and extract the key information from it.
2. Master map analysis skills.
3. Comprehend this text by grasping key information in detail.
4. Enhance critical thinking skills and view things from different perspectives.

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. thus *adv.* 因此, 从而
2. confirm *v.* 证实, 证明
3. crowd *n.* 人群
4. attempt *n.* 努力, 尝试
5. failure *n.* 失败
6. bring... into focus 使……成为焦点
7. succeed in 在……取得成功
8. figure out 弄清楚, 弄明白, 理解
9. refer to... as... 把……称作……
10. make money 赚钱

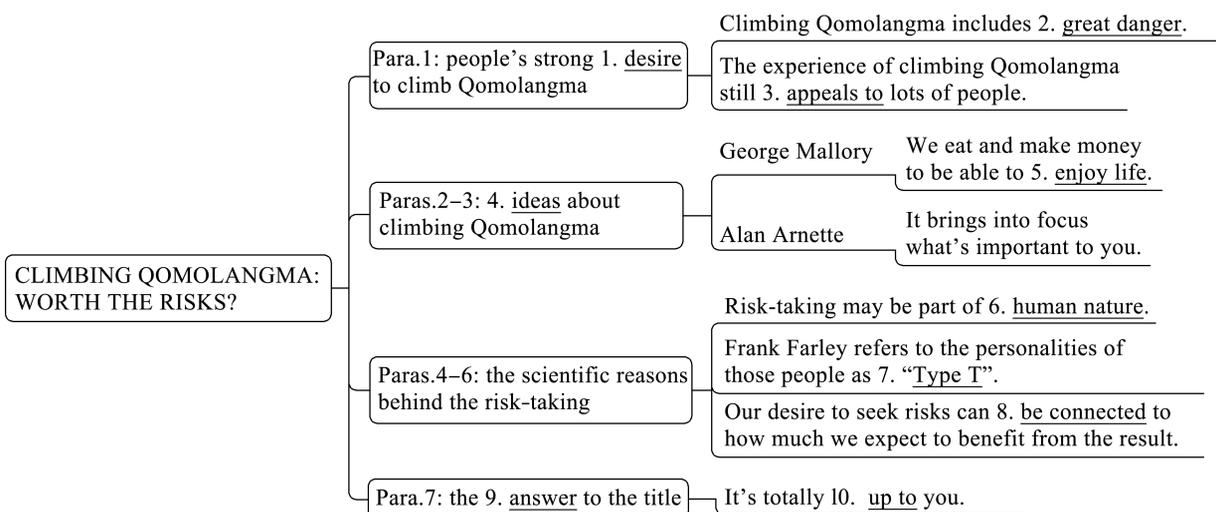
(二) 阅读词汇

1. initial *adj.* 开始的, 最初的
2. zone *n.* 地区, 地带
3. oxygen *n.* 氧气
4. border *n.* 国界, 边界
5. sheer *adj.* 纯粹的, 十足的
6. psychologist *n.* 心理学家
7. thrill *n.* 惊险, 刺激
8. good money 一大笔钱
9. take one's life 夺去某人的生命
10. human nature 人类的天性
11. take risks 冒险

任务型课堂

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- Why did some people want to climb Qomolangma?
 - They thought it was an experience like no other.
 - They hoped to raise their social reputation.
 - They thought they should do so.
 - They were not afraid to lose their lives.
- Once you have the physical as well as mental toughness, what will you do according to the text?
 - Stop going ahead.
 - Keep remaining still.
 - Move on.
 - Set about exercising.
- What does the text mainly tell us?
 - Climbing a mountain is worth it.
 - Most people are against climbing.
 - People could benefit from climbing.
 - Whether climbing Qomolangma is worth it is a fair judgement.

答案:1~3 ACD

○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. It is still not known if he succeeded in reaching the top of Qomolangma before it took his life.
[句子分析]本句为复合句。It 是形式主语,真正的主语是 if 引导的从句;before 引导时间状语从句。

[尝试翻译]至今人们也不知道他生前是否成功登顶了珠峰。

2. In 2011, words similar to those of Mallory were spoken by American mountain climber Alan Arnette, who climbed Qomolangma in that year and was going to climb other high mountains around the world.

[句子分析]本句为复合句。主句中使用了被动语态;who 引导非限制性定语从句,修饰 Alan Arnette。

[尝试翻译]2011年,美国登山者艾伦·阿内特也说过与马洛里类似的话,那一年他登上了珠峰,之后又准备去攀登世界各地其他的高山。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following question

What do George Mallory and Alan Arnette have in common?

They both found the benefits of climbing Qomolangma were worth the risks.

Unit 5 课后素养评价 (十七)

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

I. 阅读理解

Antarctica (南极洲) is the coldest, windiest, highest and driest continent (大陆) on the planet. The lowest temperature ever recorded on Earth was -94.7°C in East Antarctica in 2010. The continent experiences regular Katabatic winds, reaching 300 km per hour. There is little rainfall and the air is very dry. Indeed, the Polar Plateau (极地高原) is regarded as a desert which experiences similar rainfall levels to the Sahara Desert.

It is the fifth-largest continent and is almost 1.5 times the size of the United States. Its coastline covers about 18,000 km. About 98% of the continent is covered in a thick continental ice sheet and the remaining 2% is rock.

Antarctica has six months of daylight followed by six months of darkness. It contains 70% of the

planet's fresh water and 90% of the world's ice.

Strong winds and wild storms have been closely connected with Antarctica since its discovery and continue to be a main challenge for modern explorers. Most of the early diaries and tales of exploration of Antarctica are filled with stories of how the weather is man's biggest enemy on the continent. Nature's power is seldom seen as ferocious as it is in Antarctica, making it one of the most difficult places to live on Earth.

Robert Scott's British expedition (探险队) reached the South Pole but all members unluckily died on their return journey. But prior to that expedition, the Norwegian-led expedition of Roald Amundsen reached the South Pole on December 14, 1911, which was unprecedented.

Before this, the thought over the existence of a

“southern land” was not confirmed until the early 1820s. At this time, British and American business operators and British and Russian national expeditions began exploring the Antarctic Peninsula area and other areas south of the Antarctic Circle. In 1840, it was believed that Antarctica is indeed a continent and not just a group of islands.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了地球上最冷、风最大、海拔最高、最干燥的大陆——南极洲。

1. What can we know about Antarctica from Paragraph 1?

- A. It is covered by sand.
B. It hardly rains there.
C. The air there is wet.
D. The average temperature there is high.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“There is little rainfall and the air is very dry. Indeed, the Polar Plateau (极地高原) is regarded as a desert which experiences similar rainfall levels to the Sahara Desert.”可知,南极洲很少下雨。故选 B。

2. What does the underlined word “ferocious” mean in Paragraph 4?

- A. Strong. B. Gentle.
C. Common. D. Amazing.

A 词义猜测题。根据画线单词后面的“making it one of the most difficult places to live on Earth”可知,画线单词所在句指的是大自然的力量在南极洲尤为凶猛,这使南极洲成为地球上最难以生存的地方之一。故选 A。

3. Which expedition first arrived at the South Pole?

- A. Norwegian. B. British.
C. American. D. Russian.

A 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“But prior to that expedition, the Norwegian-led expedition of Roald Amundsen reached the South Pole on December 14, 1911, which was unprecedented.”可知,第一个到达南极点的探险队来自挪威。故选 A。

4. Which is the most suitable title for the text?

- A. Antarctica: A Dream Place
B. Antarctica: A Challenging Place
C. Antarctica: A Plateau
D. Antarctica: Expedition's New Goal

B 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的“Antarctica (南

极洲) is the coldest, windiest, highest and driest continent (大陆) on the planet. The lowest temperature ever recorded on Earth was -94.7°C in East Antarctica in 2010. The continent experiences regular Katabatic winds, reaching 300 km per hour. There is little rainfall and the air is very dry.”可知,南极洲环境恶劣;再根据第四段中的“Strong winds and wild storms have been closely connected with Antarctica since its discovery and continue to be a main challenge for modern explorers.”可知,探索南极洲极富挑战性。结合本文内容可知,文章主要介绍了南极洲,并认为其是一个充满挑战的地方。由此可推知,B项最适合作为文章的标题。故选 B。

II. 七选五

Gorge Walking in Wales

Gorge walking is climbing, jumping, swimming and going down a rock by holding on to a rope, which is full of fun and entertainment. If you are looking for the best gorge walking, then Gorge Walking in Wales has all the adventure and excitement that you can manage. There are various gorges that suit all ages and abilities. 1

Gorge walking is one of the best outdoor activities that you can do. Basically it involves climbing up or down a river or a stream.

This might seem quite boring, but it is the type of river that makes the difference. 2 These challenges include going down 30 feet waterfalls, climbing up 15 to 20 feet waterfalls, jumping 26 feet into pools and many other fun and exciting activities along the way.

Even though Gorge Walking in Wales is an exciting outdoor activity, it is made as safe as possible. All the instructors (教练) are experienced climbing instructors as well as experts in gorge walking. 3

Their aim is to give you and your friends the most fun, the most excitement and the best adventure that you have ever had. And don't feel frightened by the photos. 4 By the time you get to the larger climbs you will be more than ready for them and if you feel that you don't want to do a certain challenge then there are always other choices.

During the gorge walking there is someone who

will take photos of you and your friends at all the best spots. They will then send a CD/DVD with all the pictures to you. 5

You can go gorge walking at any time of year as they supply all the necessary safety equipment. So if you want to experience the best gorge walking, you can go.

In a word, the best way of describing this activity is a river adventure.

A. Gorge walking lasts three hours.

B. Here you can have an exciting day.

C. They check out all the rivers for safety.

D. So you can remember those moments.

E. All the rivers provide you with various natural challenges.

F. It was a great experience that has left me a deep impression!

G. They always start gently and teach you all the methods that you need along the way.

答案:1~5 BECGD

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务目标

1. Acquire knowledge about the three explorers.
2. Know and master the key aspects of the text.
3. Read the text, extract information and complete the diagram.
4. Improve critical thinking skills and have deeper comprehension of the text.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Pork prices have been falling, **thus** somewhat softening the impact of costlier vegetables. 因此
2. Plants can absorb carbon dioxide and release **oxygen**. 氧气
3. Two bridges spanning Yuandang Lake on the **border** of Shanghai and Jiangsu Province have been built. 边界
4. Reforms have made China more open. In 2013, the first pilot free trade **zone** was established in Shanghai. 地区
5. X-rays have **confirmed** that he has not broken any bones. 证实

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>initial</u> <i>adj.</i> 开始的, 最初的	<u>initially</u> <i>adv.</i> 最初, 起初, 开始
	<u>initiative</u> <i>n.</i> 新方案; 倡议; 主动性
<u>psychologist</u> <i>n.</i> 心理学家	<u>psychology</u> <i>n.</i> 心理; 心理学
	<u>psychological</u> <i>adj.</i> 心理(学)的; 心灵的, 精神上的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>failure</u> <i>n.</i> 失败; 失败的人(或事物)	<u>fail</u> <i>v.</i> 失败
	<u>thrilled</u> <i>adj.</i> 非常激动的
<u>thrill</u> <i>n.</i> 惊险, 刺激 <i>v.</i> 使非常激动, 使非常兴奋	<u>thrilling</u> <i>adj.</i> 令人兴奋不已的, 激动人心的

III. 补全短语

1. bring... into focus 使……成为焦点
2. figure out 弄清楚, 弄明白, 理解
3. succeed in 在……取得成功
4. turn around 转身
5. stand for 代表
6. take one's life 夺去某人的生命
7. result in 导致
8. be up to ... 取决于……
9. benefit from 从……受益
10. be connected to 与……有关

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作状语

For these people, climbing Qomolangma is an experience like no other, making some feel weak and others, powerful.

对于这些人来说, 攀登珠穆朗玛峰是一项独一无二的体验, 它让一些人感受到脆弱的同时也让另一些人感受到强大。

2. 句型公式: what 引导表语从句

That is what life means and what life is for.
那才是生活的意义和目标。

3. 句型公式: not... until...

Sadly, Mallory would die on the mountain in

1924, although his body would not be found until many years later.

不幸的是, 马洛里于 1924 年死在了山上, 而他的遗体直到多年以后才被找到。

4. 句型公式: either... or...

With the majority of attempts to climb Qomolangma resulting either in total success or failure, is there also a scientific reason behind this risk-taking?

大多数攀登珠穆朗玛峰的尝试要么完全成功, 要么彻底失败, 这种冒险行为的背后是否也有科学解释呢?

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. attempt *n.* 努力, 尝试 *v.* 尝试, 企图

[教材原文] With the majority of **attempts** to climb Qomolangma resulting either in total success or failure, is there also a scientific reason behind this risk-taking?

大多数攀登珠穆朗玛峰的尝试要么完全成功, 要么彻底失败, 这种冒险行为的背后是否也有科学解释呢?

[归纳拓展]

- (1) make an attempt to do sth. 尝试做某事
at the first attempt 第一次尝试
(2) attempt to do sth. 企图做某事, 尝试做某事
(3) attempted *adj.* 未遂的

名师点拨 ■■■■

attempt to do sth. 相当于 try to do sth., 意为“尽力做某事”, 但不一定成功; 而 succeed in doing sth./manage to do sth. 意为“成功地做成了某事”。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

- ① My sister passed the driving test at her first attempt, which made her content.
② Our country attempts to protect (protect) the environment by banning plastic bags.
③ The exchange student made an attempt to grasp (grasp) the opportunity to learn traditional Chinese culture further.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之情节描写) 他们 试图尽快适应新环境。

They make attempts to adapt to the new environment as quickly as possible.

2. crowd *n.* 人群 *v.* 拥挤, 聚集

[教材原文] Last year, hundreds of people spent good money on an experience that they knew would include **crowds**, discomfort and danger.

明知道会是一次拥挤、不舒适而又危险的体验, 去年仍有数百人愿意为此花费大价钱。

[归纳拓展]

- (1) a crowd of/crowds of 一群(成群)……
in the crowd 在人群里
(2) crowd into... 涌入……
crowd in (on sb.) (想法、问题等) 涌上心头, 涌入脑海
(3) crowded *adj.* 拥挤的; 挤满的, 充满的
be crowded with 挤满……, 充满着……

名师点拨 ■■■■

crowd 是集合名词, 作主语时, 若视为整体, 则谓动词用单数形式; 若强调个体成员, 则谓动词用复数形式。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

- ① I was very surprised when all of my friends crowded into my room to say happy birthday to me.
② The street was crowded (crowd) and I couldn't get through.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之推荐信) 每年都有 成群的游客来到这座城市 欣赏美丽的风景。

Crowds of tourists come to this city every year to enjoy the beautiful scenery.

3. either... or... 或者……或者……

[教材原文] With the majority of attempts to climb Qomolangma resulting **either** in total success **or** failure, is there also a scientific reason behind this risk-taking?

大多数攀登珠穆朗玛峰的尝试要么完全成功, 要么彻底失败, 这种冒险行为的背后是否也有科学解释呢?

[归纳拓展]

(1) “either... or...” 主要用于表示选择, 其意为“要么……要么……, 或者……或者……”, 用于连接两个性质相同的单词或短语。除了可以连接两个单词或短语外, 有时也可以连接两个句子。其否定式可以是“not either... or...”, 也可以是“neither... nor...”。

(2) “either... or...” 连接两个成分作主语时, 谓语动词通常与就近的主语保持一致。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① Either you or I am (be) wrong. It is impossible

that we are both right.

② One will get ill, either because he doesn't take enough exercise, or because he doesn't have a healthy diet.

③ Without motivation, neither can you set a goal nor reach it.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之咨询信) 你可以给我打电话或者给我发电子邮件。

You can either call me or send me an email.

多义词汇 专练

confirm A. v. 证实 B. v. 使感觉更强烈
C. v. 批准(职位、协议等)

① After a six-month probationary (试用的) period, her position was **confirmed**. C

② The walk in the mountains **confirmed** his fear of heights. B

③ His guilty expression **confirmed** my suspicions. A

Unit 5 课后素养评价 (十八)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 语法填空

- The project ended in failure (fail) due to a lack of proper planning.
- He raised this question in three different ways in search of an answer.
- Li Ping was the first student to get (get) to school this morning.
- Before choices are finalised, parents will be asked to sign to confirm (confirm) their child's choices.
- Consequently, she succeeded in making (make) a kind of candy only using natural sweeteners.
- It is difficult to figure out a global population of polar bears as much of the range has been poorly studied.
- To make matters worse, his attempts (attempt) to start the car used up the battery and left it useless.

- The trend, then, was toward the “penny paper”—a term referring (refer) to papers made widely available to the public.
- The small town becomes crowded (crowd) with tourists in the summer.
- There is no doubt that patience and hard work is what it takes to do a job well.

II. 短语填空

bring... into focus; in search of; open up; refer to... as; succeed in; take one's life; stand for; by the end of; turn around

- What annoys me most is that every time I turn around, he seems to be checking up on me.
- The second CIIE, which stands for China International Import Expo, concluded on November 10.
- Teachers in kindergarten are sometimes referred

2. A. imagine B. accept
C. earn D. afford
D 根据上文的“*She insisted that her mum buy it, but \$50 was too much for a single mother to*”可知,这位单身母亲买不起这个50美元的娃娃。故选D。
3. A. forget B. think
C. care D. learn
A 根据下文的“*but she was very stubborn, never listening to her mother*”可知,母亲买不起这个玩具,所以让Kate忘记这个玩具,但Kate不听。故选A。
4. A. punish B. warn
C. satisfy D. protect
C 根据下文的“*the mother had to work at home at night after making her daughter sleep*”可知,母亲在女儿睡觉后继续工作,是为了挣钱买玩具满足女儿的要求。故选C。
5. A. donated B. small
C. limited D. enough
D 根据下文的“*in relief*”可知,母亲的钱终于攒够了。故选D。
6. A. alone B. around
C. ahead D. away
A 根据下文的“*She had the Barbie in her hand.*”可知,母亲不是独自去接Kate的。故选A。
7. A. regret B. success
C. joy D. attention
C Kate得到了自己想要的玩具,所以非常高兴。故选C。
8. A. pulling B. doing
C. cutting D. washing
B 根据下文的“*its hair*”可知,此处指给娃娃做头

发,应用do。故选B。

9. A. However B. Otherwise
C. Therefore D. Moreover
A 根据下文的“*Obviously, she got bored with her.*”可知,Kate厌倦了娃娃;此空前后句为转折关系,应用However。故选A。
10. A. familiar B. suitable
C. expensive D. important
D 根据下文的“*She snatched her hair, and even broke its*”可知,Kate开始对娃娃不好,由此可见娃娃不再那么重要了。故选D。
11. A. leg B. eye
C. hand D. ear
C 根据下文的“*she saw the doll—without one hand*”可知,Kate扭断了娃娃的手。故选C。
12. A. expecting B. visiting
C. contacting D. mentioning
B 根据上文的“*Days passed and Kate grew up and got married.*”可知,Kate是结婚后去看望母亲的。故选B。
13. A. refused B. agreed
C. failed D. managed
D 根据下文的“*to buy it*”可知,这里指她设法买下娃娃,应用“*manage to do sth.*”结构。故选D。
14. A. surprising B. valuable
C. lucky D. pleasing
B 根据下文的“*we forget its importance*”可知,此处指Kate意识到娃娃的宝贵。故选B。
15. A. lose B. reject
C. miss D. ignore
A 这里与上文的“*After we get something, we forget its importance*”相呼应,指失去一件物品的时候我们才意识到它的重要性。故选A。

Section III Using language

学习任务目标

1. Identify and summarise the forms and functions of past future through observation and apply it correctly in different contexts and situations.
2. Understand the main idea of listening materials and gather specific details to complete the table.
3. Learn the basics of first aid, master proper contents and terms of it in various emergency situations.
4. Utilise appropriate structures to introduce adventure travel experiences.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. It is reported that containers will be unloaded from a ship at a **port** of Qingdao, Shandong Province. 港, 港口
2. One week before donation, you can't have any medicine or drink **alcohol**. 酒
3. She told the reporter that these clothes are usually made from silk or **cotton**. 棉布
4. Seeing the player's left knee bleeding, a trainer immediately came out to put a white **bandage** on the cut. 绷带
5. As is known to all, water exists in three states: **liquid**, gas, and solid. 液体
6. The Everglades National Park **stretches** across the southern tip of Florida. 延伸, 绵延
7. This kind of **cloth** washes well and lasts long, so it's widely used to make clothes. 布
8. I like shoes with flexible **rubber** soles (鞋底). (合成)橡胶

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>unaware</u> <i>adj.</i> 未觉察到的, 未意识到的	(反义词) <u>aware</u> <i>adj.</i> 意识到的, 知道的
	<u>awareness</u> <i>n.</i> 意识, 认识
<u>wool</u> <i>n.</i> 羊毛, 毛织物的	<u>woollen</u> <i>adj.</i> 羊毛(制)的; 毛料的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>guideline</u> <i>n.</i> 指导方针, 指导原则	<u>guide</u> <i>v.</i> 指导, 引导 <i>n.</i> 向导, 导游
<u>bleeding</u> <i>n.</i> 流血, 失血	<u>bleed</u> <i>v.</i> 流血
	<u>blood</u> <i>n.</i> 血, 血液; 血统
	<u>bloody</u> <i>adj.</i> 流血的, 血淋淋的; 血腥的
<u>injury</u> <i>n.</i> 伤, 损害	<u>injure</u> <i>v.</i> 伤害, 使受伤
	<u>injured</u> <i>adj.</i> 受伤的

III. 补全短语

1. rise up 上升, 升起
2. hunt for 寻找
3. break... into ... 把……分成……
4. put pressure on 向……施加压力
5. take one's temperature 给某人量体温
6. cool down 冷却下来; 平静下来
7. clean out 把……清理/打扫干净
8. write down 写下, 记下
9. at first 起初, 一开始
10. put up 建造, 搭建; 张贴; 留……过夜

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: 现在分词作结果状语
Hours later, the waves rose up over our ship, breaking it into two and throwing us overboard.
几个小时后, 海浪在我们船的上方升起, 把船分成两半, 把我们抛到海里。
2. 句型公式: once 引导状语从句
Once the wound is cleaned and dry, cover it with a bandage.

一旦伤口清理干净并晾干,就用绷带包扎。

3. 句型公式: keep + 宾语 + 宾语补足语

It is important to keep the arm still and rigid ...
保持手臂静止不动很重要……

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. **unaware** *adj.* 未觉察到的, 未意识到的

[教材原文] At first, the waters of the strait were calm and we spent our days working, fishing and playing cards, happily **unaware** that...

起初, 海峡的水域是平静的, 我们花了几天时间工作、钓鱼和打牌, 高兴得并没有意识到……

[归纳拓展]

(1) **aware** *adj.* 意识到的, 知道的

be/become aware of 知道……, 觉察到……, 意识到……

be aware that... 知道/体会到……

as far as I'm aware 据我所知

(2) **awareness** *n.* 意识, 认识

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① I was unaware (aware) of his existence until today.

② Tony seemed very shallow and he didn't become aware of the potential dangers.

③ The meeting aimed at strengthening safety awareness (aware) of employees.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之发言稿) 作为社会的一员, 我意识到有责任感是建设一个更美好的社会所需要的。

As a member of society, I'm aware that being responsible is what it takes to make a better society.

2. **injury** *n.* 伤, 损害

[教材原文] Offer first aid advice for **injuries** or illness in Activity 5.

为活动 5 中的伤病或疾病提供急救建议。

[归纳拓展]

(1) do sb. an injury = do an injury to sb. 使某人受到伤害

suffer/get an injury 受伤

(2) **injured** *adj.* 受伤的

get injured 受伤

the injured 伤员

(3) **injure** *v.* 伤害, 使受伤

【易混辨析】injury、wound、hurt、harm

易混词	辨析
injury	指在意外事故中身体机能受到伤害。
wound	指在战场上或战斗中受伤, 如刀伤、剑伤、枪伤等。
hurt	普通用语。既可指身体上所受的伤害, 也可指精神上、感情上所受的伤害。
harm	指对有生命机体的不明显、非直接的伤害, 常指损害一个人的健康、事业或权利等。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① To our relief, up to now the injured (injure) in the crash have been carried to the nearby hospital.

② In the past several years, you have had the pressure and pain. I don't want you to get any further injury (injure).

③ He made up his mind that he wouldn't do an injury to her.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之情绪描写) 她的话严重伤害了他的自尊心。

Her words seriously hurt his pride.

语法研习课

过去将来时

语法感知

① Last year, hundreds of people spent good money on an experience that they knew **would include**

crowds, discomfort and danger.

② Many **would become** sick, due to the extreme cold and low air pressure, and a few **would even lose** their

lives.

③ Alan Arnette, who climbed Qomolangma in that year and **was going to climb** other high mountains around the world.

④ Yet, despite all this, by the end of the trip many **were already planning to** return.

①②句使用了“would + 动词原形”的结构,表示过去将要发生的动作;③句使用了“was/were going to + 动词原形”的结构,表示过去打算或计划要做什么;④句使用了“was/were + doing”的结构,表示过去将要做什么。

语法精讲

一、过去将来时的含义

表示从过去的某一时间来看将要发生的动作或呈现的状态。常用于主句是一般过去时的宾语从句中,表示从句的动作发生在主句动作之后。

二、过去将来时的结构

1. would + 动词原形

“would + 动词原形”为过去将来时的一般形式。

He said he **would go** to the north for the holiday.
他曾说他将来去北方度假。

I told her I **would return** the book in a few days.
我告诉过她,我将在几天后还书。

2. was/were going to do

“was/were going to do”表示过去曾经打算或计划要做什么。

He told me he **was going to learn** another foreign language.

他告诉我,他打算学习另一门外语。

I **was going to run** this morning, but overslept.
我本来打算今天早晨跑步的,但我睡过头了。

3. was/were to do

“was/were to do”表示按计划、约定,或按职责、义务应该在短期内将要发生的动作。

He told me he **was to get married** the next week.
他告诉我,他下周结婚。

They said goodbye, little knowing that they **were never to meet** again.

他们告了别,一点也没想到以后再也不会见面了。

4. was/were about to do

“was/were about to do”表示即将发生的动作。

I **was about to take a bath** when the telephone rang.

我正要洗澡时电话铃响了。

5. was/were doing

“was/were doing”表示过去将要做某事。此结构仅用于 come、go、leave、arrive、start 等动词。

He said the train **was leaving** at six the next morning.

他说火车第二天早晨六点出发。

名师点拨

(1) was/were about to do sth. 不能与表示将来的确切时间状语连用。

(2) 条件状语从句和时间状语从句中须用一般过去时代替过去将来时。

If you liked to see the film, I would buy two tickets online in advance.

如果你想看这部电影,我会提前在网上买两张票。

语法冲关

I. 语法填空

- Miss Zhang said she would visit (visit) the Great Wall next summer.
- The scientists said the world's population would slow (slow) down in the future.
- I was told the press conference was to be held (hold) the next week.
- I didn't know when they were coming (come) again.
- He told me that he was leaving (leave) for Beijing the following week.

II. 完成句子

- She was to be here at 8:30 but she didn't arrive.
她应该在 8:30 到达这里,但是她没有到。
- The young couple hoped that the party would have a lovely and relaxing atmosphere.
这对年轻夫妇希望晚会的气氛愉快轻松。
- When we arrived at the station, the train was about to start.
当我们到达车站时,火车就要开动了。
- My friend said she was going to take a yoga class to keep slim and healthy.
我的朋友说她打算上瑜伽课来保持苗条和健康。
- Mr Li told me that he would begin to write the book soon.
李先生告诉我,他很快就要开始写那本书了。

Unit 5 课后素养评价 (十九)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

stretch; at first; cotton; rubber; break... into...;
port; rise up; guideline

- I found the job tiring at first but I soon got used to it.
- Because it was warm, David wore only a white cotton shirt.
- You should stretch at least ten minutes before each run to prevent injuries.
- Once the glass is broken into pieces, the liquid in it will splash (飞溅) onto the floor.
- Most of the white liquid running out of these trees ends up as rubber tyres.
- Frightened birds rise up from the trees crying out and vanish away to the west.
- We'll have two days ashore while the ship is in port.
- The programme guidelines and other related information are available at the website.

II. 语法填空

- The two other passengers escaped serious injury (injure).
- However, we were completely unaware (aware) of the whole affair.
- The nurse applied pressure to his arm to stop the bleeding (bleed).
- He looked around as if looking (look) for something.
- More expressways will be built (build) in Sichuan soon to promote the local economy.
- As you go through this book, you will find (find) that each of the millions of people who lived through World War II had a different experience.
- James said he was coming (come) to the party tonight.
- They made up their minds that they would buy (buy) a new house once Larry changed his job.
- He hoped that they would meet (meet) again some day.

10. At that time he did not know that quitting the job was to become (become) the turning point in his life.

III. 阅读理解

I start my workday early, parking myself in front of my home computer and often forgetting to get up for hours. But one thing I try to do every day is take a ten-minute walk around midday.

Walking at lunchtime is a smart thing to do, a new study finds. This doesn't seem like news. After all, we've known forever that doing exercise is good for us. But as *The New York Times* points out, those fitness studies typically looked at the effects of exercise plans in the long term. This new study looks at changes that happen more quickly, from one day to the next or even from hour to hour.

For the study, researchers gathered a group of mostly sedentary (久坐的) office workers in the UK. All were out of shape, but otherwise emotionally and physically healthy. Researchers asked them to take 30-minute lunchtime walks, three days a week for 10 weeks. The volunteers were also asked to install apps on their phones, so that the researchers could send the volunteers questions after they walked. Then the researchers used those answers to judge how the volunteers were feeling about life and work, and to measure their feelings about everything from stress and tension to motivation.

When the researchers compared the volunteers' answers on the afternoons when they walked to those on the afternoons when they didn't walk, there was quite a difference. On the days when they had a lunchtime walk, the volunteers said they felt less stressed, more energetic and more relaxed versus (与……相对) on the days when they didn't walk.

Unfortunately, the researchers said many of the volunteers didn't believe they'd be able to continue

walking once the study ended, mainly because they were expected to work through their lunch breaks. It's an understandable response, but a sad one.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了一项新的研究,该研究发现在午餐后,短暂的散步是一件明智的事情,这能快速改善人的情绪。

1. How does the new study differ from other fitness studies?

- A. It calls on people to have a walk after lunch.
- B. It focuses on the short-term effects of walking.
- C. It mainly pays attention to sedentary office workers.
- D. It aims at studying the relationship between exercise and health.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“*But as The New York Times* points out, those fitness studies typically looked at the effects of exercise plans in the long term. This new study looks at changes that happen more quickly, from one day to the next or even from hour to hour.”可知,该研究主要关注的是一个人散步后在每天之间甚至是每个小时之间发生的变化,也就是散步对人们的短期影响。故选 B。

2. Why were the volunteers required to install apps on their phones?

- A. To record their time spent online.
- B. To know how long they walked.
- C. To prevent them from getting lost.
- D. To respond to the researchers' questions.

D 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“*The volunteers* were also asked to install apps on their phones, so that the researchers could send the volunteers questions after they walked. Then the researchers used those answers to judge how the volunteers were feeling about life and work, and

to measure their feelings about everything from stress and tension to motivation.”可知,要求志愿者安装应用程序是为了在他们散步后发送问题,让他们回答,然后根据他们的回答做出分析和判断。故选 D。

3. What is the finding of the new study?

- A. Lunchtime walks can soon improve people's moods.
- B. Office workers usually have little time to go for a walk.
- C. A sedentary lifestyle is linked to an increased risk of disease.
- D. Walking brings more advantages to people than other exercise.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“*On the days* when they had a lunchtime walk, the volunteers said they felt less stressed, more energetic and more relaxed versus (与……相对) on the days when they didn't walk.”可知,将午餐时间散步的日子与不散步的日子进行比较后发现,午餐后散步可以让志愿者感觉压力变小,精力更充沛,更轻松。由此可知,午餐时间散步能改善人的情绪。故选 A。

4. What can we infer about the volunteers from the last paragraph?

- A. They will spend more time walking.
- B. Some of them tend to be more outgoing.
- C. Most of them will perform better at work.
- D. They may stop lunchtime walks due to work pressure.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“*Unfortunately, the researchers* said many of the volunteers didn't believe they'd be able to continue walking once the study ended, mainly because they were expected to work through their lunch breaks.”可知,志愿者很可能由于工作压力而停止午餐后散步。故选 D。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Understand the description of the world under the sea and get the main idea of the text.
2. Have a preliminary understanding of the literary genre and language style of science fiction.
3. Deepen your understanding of the theme of exploration and tell an adventure story.
4. Use the language learned in this unit and use the provided picture prompts to describe the adventure experiences, psychological processes and emotional changes in the story.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The road **ahead** was never a smooth one with changes in market demand and challenges in business management. 在前面
2. After I took **charge** of the team, my main goal was to have our players in their best form in every game, no matter how strong the rival team is. 主管, 负责
3. The **captain** of a ship is the sailor in charge of it. 船长
4. A **chapter** is one of the parts that a book is divided into. 章节
5. In my house, the dog was forbidden to lie on the **carpet** in the sitting room. 地毯
6. It was reported that the rescue crews heard a woman calling for help **beneath** the ruins. 在……之下
7. They seldom remember where they buried every **nut**. 坚果
8. Since the oil leaks happened, we've started to find dead birds and fish washed up on the **shore**. 岸, 滨
9. The **male** is usually bigger and more brightly coloured than the female. 雄性动物
10. Almost 80 percent of the state's **residents** were born elsewhere. 居民, 住户
11. It was reported that water was found at a **depth** of 30 metres. 深, 深度
12. The light was too dim for me to **distinguish** anything clearly. 看清; 认出

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>fascinated</u> <i>adj.</i> 被迷住的, 被吸引住的	fascinating <i>adj.</i> 迷人的, 吸引人的
	fascination <i>n.</i> 魅力
	fascinate <i>v.</i> 深深吸引; 迷住
<u>relate</u> <i>v.</i> 相联系, 有关联; 讲述	relative <i>n.</i> 亲戚, 亲属
	relation <i>n.</i> 关系
<u>astonish</u> <i>v.</i> 使吃惊, 使惊讶	astonishing <i>adj.</i> 令人惊讶的
	astonished <i>adj.</i> 感到吃惊的
	astonishment <i>n.</i> 惊讶, 惊异
<u>consume</u> <i>v.</i> 消耗; 消费	consumption <i>n.</i> 消耗; 消费
	consumer <i>n.</i> 消费者
<u>surround</u> <i>v.</i> 环绕, 围绕	surrounding <i>adj.</i> 周围的; 附近的
	surroundings <i>n.</i> (pl.) 环境
<u>broad</u> <i>adj.</i> 宽的, 阔的	broaden <i>v.</i> 加宽, 扩宽
<u>servant</u> <i>n.</i> 仆人, 佣人	serve <i>v.</i> 服务, 接待
	service <i>n.</i> 服务, 接待

III. 补全短语

1. account for 解释; 说明

2. in broad daylight 在大白天
3. in charge 负责, 主管
4. ahead of 优于; 在……前面
5. pass through 通过
6. take turns 轮流
7. leave an impression on/upon ... 给……留下印象
8. in front 在前面
9. as if 仿佛, 好像
10. drive away 赶走; 驱散

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: 状语从句的省略

While attacking from the ship, Aronnax and Conseil, along with the whale hunter Ned Land, fall into the sea, and discover that the “creature”

is actually a submarine.

当阿龙纳斯、康塞尔和捕鲸人内德·兰德从船上对这只生物展开攻击时, 他们掉到海里, 并且发现所谓的“生物”其实是一艘潜水艇。

2. 句型公式: as if 引导的从句中的虚拟语气

Conseil and I remained near each other, as if an exchange of words had been possible through our metal cases.

我和康塞尔彼此靠得很近, 好像我们可以透过我们的金属箱来交谈似的。

3. 句型公式: 介词(短语)位于句首引起的完全倒装句

Above me was the calm surface of the sea.

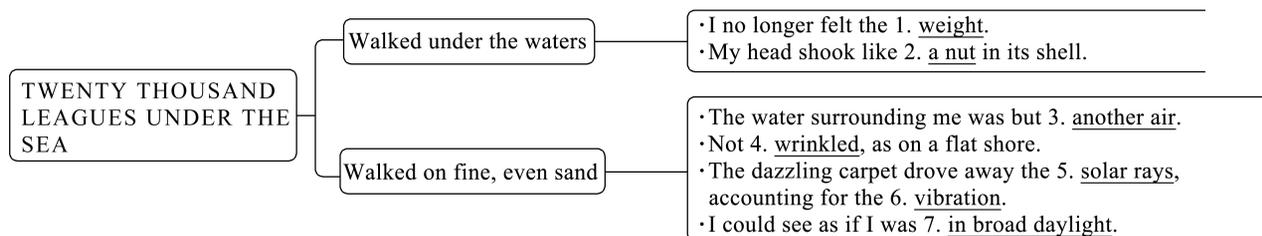
我头顶上是平静的海面。

任务型课堂

Part 1 课文理解

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Why does Aronnax set off with his servant?
 - A. To explore the ocean.
 - B. To hunt a monster in the sea.
 - C. To walk under the waters.
 - D. To discover new species.
2. What does Aronnax describe his experience as?
 - A. Travelling around the world in 80 days.
 - B. Walking on the sea bed.
 - C. A journey to the centre of the earth.
 - D. A wonderful experience of hunting monsters.
3. Which of the following statements is suitable for the text?
 - A. Captain Nemo helped kill a monster.
 - B. People didn't distinguish objects at a distance in the sea.
 - C. Everything seemed to lose their weight in the sea.

D. The dazzling carpet drove away the living things out.

4. What does the text mainly tell us?
 - A. What happened during the sailing.
 - B. The story of Captain Nemo and his men.
 - C. What Aronnax witnessed under the waters.
 - D. The experience of passing through the bottom of the sea.

答案: 1~4 BBCC

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. While attacking from the ship, Aronnax and Conseil, along with the whale hunter Ned Land, fall into the sea, and discover that the “creature” is actually a submarine.

[句子分析] 本句为复合句。While attacking from the ship 是状语从句的省略; that the “creature” is actually a submarine 是 that 引导的宾语从句。

[尝试翻译] 当阿龙纳斯、康塞尔和捕鲸人内德·

兰德从船上对这只生物展开攻击时,他们掉到海里,并且发现所谓的“生物”其实是一艘潜水艇。

2. Shall I be believed when I say that, at the depth of thirty feet, I could see as if I was in broad daylight?

[句子分析]本句为复合句。句中 when 引导时间状语从句,that 引导宾语从句,as if 引导方式状语从句。

[尝试翻译]当我说,在海面以下深 30 英尺的地方,我能像在大白天一样看得清清楚楚,会有人相信我吗?

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- Why does Captain Nemo forbid the three men to leave the submarine?
Because he wants them to keep the secret about the submarine.
- What does the author mean by saying “Words are not enough to relate such wonders!”?
The experience is so unique that he can't find enough and proper words to describe it.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. charge n. 主管,负责;费用,价钱 v. 收费,要价;指控;(使)充电

[教材原文]They are captured and taken inside the submarine, where they meet the man in **charge**, Captain Nemo.

他们被抓住并被带进了潜水艇,在那里他们遇到了负责人尼摩船长。

[归纳拓展]

(1)take charge of 掌管,负责

in charge (of) 负责,主管

in the charge of sb. = in one's charge

由……掌管/负责

free of charge = for free 免费

(2)charge sb. money for (doing) sth. 因(做)某事而收某人钱

charge sb. with... 指控某人犯……罪

名师点拨 ■■■■

in charge of 往往以人作主语,指“某人主管某物”;in the charge of 往往以物作主语,指“某物由某人主管”。类似的短语还有:in control of 指“控制”,in the control of 指“由……控制”;in possession of 指“拥有”,in the possession of 指“被……拥有”。

[即学即练]

(1)语法填空

① If your card has been lost, a fee of £5 is charged (charge) for the production of a replacement card.

② The guidebook to the museum is free of charge.

③ To our surprise, the cautious gentleman was charged with drunk driving.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之人物介绍)她决定负责这个没人愿意承担的艰巨任务。

She decided to take charge of the difficult task that no one else was willing to undertake.

②(应用文写作之投稿)社区花园由一群热情的志愿者负责。

The community garden is in the charge of a group of enthusiastic volunteers.

2. permit v. 允许,准许,许可

[教材原文]In order to keep this secret, Captain Nemo tells his three newest passengers that they are not **permitted** to leave the submarine.

为了保守这个秘密,尼摩船长告诫他的三位新乘客,他们不能离开潜水艇。

[归纳拓展]

(1)permit sb. to do sth. 允许某人做某事

permit doing sth. 允许做某事

be permitted into 被允许进入……

weather/time permitting 天气/时间允许的话

(2)a driving permit/a driver's permit 驾驶执照

(3)permission n. [U]许可,准许

get/obtain/ask one's permission 征得某人的同意/许可

ask (for) permission 请求允许

with/without one's permission 得到/未经某人的允许

[即学即练]

(1)语法填空

① My parents won't permit my going (go) with you tonight.

② Time permitting (permit), I'd like to go on a trip to the Great Wall.

③ There is a wide road leading through the park, but nobody is permitted to walk (walk) on the road.

④ You should know that no photos are to be taken of the exhibits without permission (permit).

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之推荐信) 博物馆 允许游客 在某些区域 拍照。

The museum permits visitors to take pictures in some areas.

3. distinguish v. 看清; 认出; 区分, 辨别; 使有区别

[教材原文] The solar rays shone through the watery mass easily, and consumed all colour, and I clearly **distinguished** objects at a distance of a hundred and fifty yards.

阳光轻易地穿透水层, 把水中的颜色驱散, 我能清楚地分辨出 150 码以内的物体。

[归纳拓展]

(1) distinguish between... and... 区分/辨别 和.....

distinguish... from... 使.....有别于.....

distinguish oneself (as...) (作为.....) 表现突出

(2) distinguished *adj.* 卓越的, 著名的, 杰出的

be distinguished for... 因.....而出名

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① The twins are so alike. It's difficult to distinguish one from the other.

② To avoid being misled by news reports, we should learn to distinguish between facts and opinions.

③ To begin with, it's a distinguished (distinguish) university and enjoys great popularity across China.

④ She has already distinguished herself as a great volleyball coach in the world.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信) 我们应该从小就学会 分辨是非。

We should learn to distinguish right from wrong at an early age.

4. 状语从句的省略

[教材原文] **While attacking from the ship,**

Aronnax and Conseil, along with the whale hunter Ned Land, fall into the sea, and discover that the “creature” is actually a submarine.

当阿龙纳斯、康塞尔和捕鲸人内德·兰德从船上对这只生物展开攻击时, 他们掉到海里, 并且发现所谓的“生物”其实是一艘潜水艇。

[句式分析] 本句中 While attacking from the ship 为时间状语从句的省略形式, 补全为 While they are attacking from the ship.

[归纳拓展]

(1) 当 when、while、before、after、unless、as if 等状语从句中的主语与主句的主语一致或从句的主语为 it, 且从句的谓语中含有 be 动词时, 可以省略从句中的主语和 be 动词。

(2) 省略后从句的形式: 连词 + 形容词/副词/现在分词/过去分词。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① When listening (listen) to them, you should pay attention to words that sound strange.

② The problem, unless handled (handle) properly, may lead to misunderstanding between the two sides.

(2) 写作微练

① (读后续写之情节描写) 当被问到他的计划时, 他保持沉默。

When (he was) asked about his plan, he remained silent.

② (应用文写作之求助信) 如果有必要, 我会帮助你。

If (it is) necessary, I will help you.

多义词汇 专练

consume A. v. 使充满(强烈的感情)

B. v. 消耗 C. v. 吃; 喝

① Many people have dramatically reduced the amount of red meat they **consume**. C

② The electricity industry **consumes** large amounts of fossil fuels. B

③ Carolyn was **consumed** with guilt. A

Unit 5 课后素养评价 (二十)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

1. Challenge yourself and take charge (负责) of your own growth in your career.
2. Those who tend to think back can hardly go ahead (向前).
3. In order to preserve the quiet study environment, using mobile phones isn't permitted (允许) anywhere in these areas.
4. I am astonished (惊讶的) at the unexpected news.
5. These outdated devices consume (消耗) much more energy than the newer ones that do the same things.
6. Arts groups bring broader (更广泛的) value to our communities.
7. He told me that he just read a few chapters (章节) which interested him.
8. He was standing on the bridge looking at the river beneath (在……下方).
9. The male (雄性动物) of the species is almost indistinguishable from the female.

II. 语法填空

1. Walking out of the theatre, the famous singer found himself surrounded (surround) by his fans.
2. Time permitting (permit), we are going to visit the famous military museum before we leave this city.
3. The noise gradually (gradual) died away and the whole village was in silence again.
4. To our astonishment (astonish), he was the first to come.
5. That book was so fascinating (fascinate) that I forgot how the time went by.
6. You should have a goal related (relate) to your life purpose at the beginning of a year.
7. We can't do anything about the length of our life,

but we can do something about its width and depth (deep).

8. Our teacher suggested that we should finish the task ahead of time.
9. Mary is in charge of the art and music section; and Charles, the sports page.
10. The male bird is distinguished from the female by its red beak (喙).

III. 短语填空

in charge; be adapted from; look back upon; account for; leave an impression on; no longer; in broad daylight; respond to; make sense; take turns

1. How could you go to sleep in broad daylight?
2. Do you know who is in charge here?
3. This play is adapted from a novel written by Dan.
4. I like to look back upon my senior high school days.
5. Lack of money accounts for her discontinuing her studies.
6. The way that the resident and the servant treated Oliver left an impression on me.
7. He said that he was no longer tired of his present job.
8. We are asked to take turns to ask for and give advice.
9. I have responded to this question many times.
10. It doesn't make sense to buy the cheapest computer just to save a few dollars.

IV. 补全句子

1. 住在杭州时,我常常游览西湖。(状语从句的省略)
While living in Hangzhou, I often pay a visit to the West Lake.
2. 做演讲必须考虑听众。(take... into account)
One must take the audience into account when making speeches.

3. 会议一结束,我们就去踢足球了。(独立主格结构)

The meeting being over, we went to play football.

4. 他们继续工作,似乎什么也没发生过。(as if)

They continued to work as if nothing had happened.

V. 语法填空

Climbing is my favourite sport. I am very fond of it, especially in late autumn. One day early in the morning, my friends and I put on **1. our** (we) sports shoes and started off. Even the heavy rain could not prevent us **2. going** (go). We went along an **3. extremely** (extreme) narrow road, all in high spirits. On **4. each** side of the road were green fields and some farm houses. We could hear the sound of the rain and our footsteps **5. mixed** (mix) with our laughter. What made us most excited was the beautiful scenery around us including **6. various** (variety) kinds of bushes, trees and flowers. After climbing for half an hour, we reached the top of the mountain, **7. where** we had a very good view for miles around. A big river crossed the city to the north, **8. on** which there were many ships sailing busily. After a short rest there and **9. sharing** (share) the food we had brought, we started going down. On our way back, it rained even **10. harder** (hard). We were wet to the skin, but we still sang and laughed happily all the way. We had a good time that day.

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,是学校读书俱乐部的负责人。俱乐部将在下周三下午三点在报告厅举行一场英语朗读比赛。请你给外教 Tom 写一封电子邮件。内容如下:

1. 询问 Tom 届时是否有空出席;
2. 邀请 Tom 担任比赛评委;
3. 请 Tom 向学生推荐合适的文学作品。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Dear Tom,

I'm Li Hua, and I'm now in charge of the reading club of our school. I'm writing to invite you to attend the English recitation contest organised by the reading club at 3 pm next Wednesday in the lecture hall. If available then, could you do us a favour? And we would appreciate having you as a judge. By the way, it would be very nice if you could recommend some classic English literary works suitable for us students. Thanks for considering our request.

I'm looking forward to your reply at your earliest convenience!

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

In a class I teach for adults, I recently did something “unpardonable”. I gave the class homework! The assignment was to “go to someone you love within the next week and tell them you love them. It has to be someone you have never said those words to before or at least haven't shared those words with for a long time”. Now that doesn't sound like a very tough assignment, until you stop to realise that most of the men were over 35 and were raised in the generation of men who were taught that expressing emotions is not “macho (大男子气概的)”. Showing feelings or crying was just not done. So this was a very threatening assignment for some.

At the beginning of our next class, I asked if someone wanted to share what happened when they told someone they loved them. I fully expected one of the women to volunteer, as was usually the case,

but on this evening one of the men raised his hand.

He appeared quite moved and a bit shaken. As he unfolded out of his chair, he began by saying, “Dennis, I was quite angry with you last week when you gave us this assignment. I didn’t feel that I had anyone to say those words to, and besides, who were you to tell me to do something that personal? But as I began driving home my conscience started talking to me. It was telling me that I knew exactly who I needed to say ‘I love you’ to.”

“You see, five years ago, my father and I had a severe disagreement and really never resolved it since that time. We avoided seeing each other unless we absolutely had to at family gatherings. But even then, we hardly spoke to each other. So last Tuesday by the time I got home I had convinced myself I was going to tell my dad I loved him. It was strange, but just making that choice seemed to lift a heavy load off my chest.”

“The next morning I was up bright and early. I was so excited I could hardly sleep. I got to the office early and accomplished more in two hours

than I had the whole day before.”

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

“At 9:00 I called my dad to see if I could come over after work. My dad still sounded angry with me even after such a long time, but he finally agreed, not knowing my real purpose of this visit. At 5:30, I was at my parents’ house ringing the doorbell, praying that Dad would answer the door. I was afraid if Mum answered that I would change my mind and not carry out my tough assignment. But as luck would have it, Dad did answer the door. I didn’t waste any time. I took one step in the door and said, ‘Dad, I just come over to tell you that I love you.’””

“It was as if a complete change came over my dad. His face softened, the wrinkles seemed to disappear and he began to cry. He reached out and hugged me and said, ‘I love you too, son, but I’ve never been able to say it.’ So my message to all of you is: Don’t wait to do the things you need to do.”

迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

Part 1 应用文写作

——旅游日志

○写作指导

旅游日志是在日常生活中经常用到的文体,写法比较灵活,在记录旅行的过程中可以抒发感情,夹叙夹议。一篇好的旅游日志不仅能使读者产生身临其境的感觉,还能启迪人的思想,陶冶人的情操,给人以美的感受。

旅游日志大致包括以下三方面内容:

1. 简要介绍你的旅程内容,包括你所去的地方及时间。
2. 具体描述所见所闻。在这部分要首先介绍清楚旅游的路线或顺序,以便读者了解背景信息;其次要分清主次,详略得当,要选择最有特色、最有趣的景点和景物进行介绍。
3. 对旅行进行简短的总结,发表感想。

○典题示例

假如今年暑假你第一次去厦门旅行。请根据以下信息,写一篇80词左右的英语短文,介绍其景点并谈谈你的感受。

位置	福建省东南部
景点	鼓浪屿(厦门最出名的景点之一,每天有成千上万的游客前来参观)
	曾厝垵(可品尝各种美味小吃)
	厦门大学
活动	海滩上捡贝壳、游泳(厦门四面环海)

参考词汇:曾厝垵 Zengcuoan; 鼓浪屿 Gulangyu Island

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	旅游日志
时态	以 <u>一般过去时</u> 和 <u>一般现在时</u> 为主
人称	<u>第一人称</u> 、 <u>第二人称</u>
要点	1. 简要介绍旅程内容,即游览厦门; 2. 介绍游览厦门的过程及厦门的一些景点; 3. 游览厦门的感受。

Step 2: 要点补全

- ① This journey left a deep impression on me (给我留下了深刻的印象)。
- ② Xiamen is located in the southeast of Fujian Province (位于福建省东南部)。
- ③ Thousands of tourists (成千上万的游客) go to Gulangyu Island by ship every day.
- ④ There is a village (有一个村庄) called Zengcuoan.
- ⑤ We can taste a variety of delicious snacks (各种美味的小吃) there.
- ⑥ Xiamen University is a beautiful place and you must pay a visit to it (你一定要去参观它)。

Step 3: 句式升级

- ① 用非限制性定语从句连接 Step 2 中的句④⑤
There is a village called Zengcuoan, where we can taste a variety of delicious snacks.
- ② 用限制性定语从句改写 Step 2 中的句⑥
Xiamen University is a beautiful place which you must pay a visit to.

Step 4: 连句成篇

This summer I paid a visit to Xiamen for the first time. This journey left a deep impression

on me.

Xiamen is located in the southeast of Fujian Province, and Gulangyu Island is one of the most famous places in Xiamen. Thousands of tourists go to Gulangyu Island by ship every day. There is a village called Zengcuoan, where we can taste a variety of delicious snacks. Xiamen University is a beautiful place which you must pay a visit to. Xiamen is surrounded by the sea. You can go to pick up shells at the beach and swim in the sea.

In short, what a fascinating city Xiamen is!

○学以致用

假设你是李华,上周六你去迪士尼乐园游玩了一次。请根据下列要求写一封邮件,与你的美国朋友 Peter 分享你的这次经历。

- 内容要求:1. 网上订票(飞机、酒店);
2. 游玩过程。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

Dear Peter,

Last Saturday, I went to Disneyland for amusement with my cousins. What was convenient was that I bought our flight tickets and booked the hotel online in advance.

In the amusement park, we spent all the time running from one site to another for the unique entertainment facilities of Disneyland, excited yet tired. What impressed me most was the fireworks blooming over the castle. Their beauty truly amazed us.

Looking forward to your reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

Surviving Mount Rainier

Bad luck and poor timing left Kart and three climbers stuck on Mount Rainier for several long days. They faced mountain climbing's toughest tests. One man suffered altitude sickness; ice and rockfall rained down at night; cold nights in a tent that got torn left them hypothermic (体温过低的). Calm confidence, skill and the courage to continue up the route, despite illness and injury, likely saved their lives.

The climbers set out on a Friday, camping low on the route the first night because they were concerned about rockfall after a climber had recently died in an accident at the route's typical high camp. On Saturday, at about 10,500 feet, one of the climbers became sick from the altitude, which began to slow them down. They needed to keep moving, so they put him in the lead so he could move at a pace he was comfortable with.

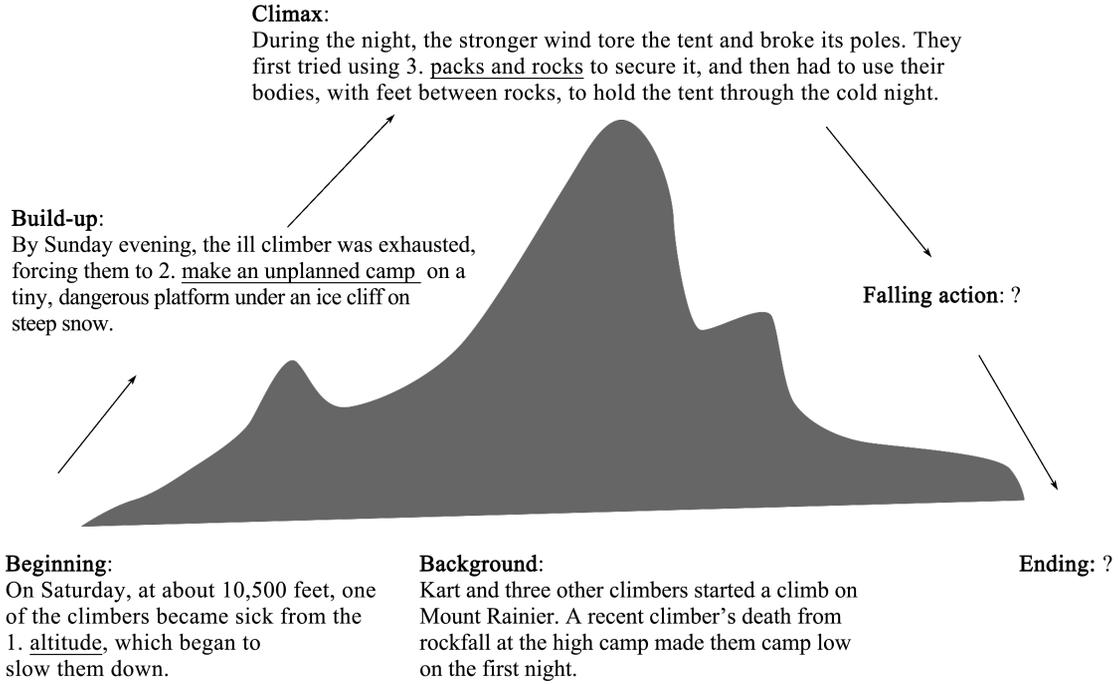
By Sunday evening, the ill climber was exhausted, and they had to make an unplanned camp on steep snow. They were in a bad place—on a platform about the size of a table under an ice cliff. The wind got stronger during the night, ripping the tent and snapping the poles. They tried to secure it by placing their packs and rocks around the edges. Finally, they just stuck their feet between the rocks and held the tent with their bodies. It was a cold night.

任务一:阅读文章,回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

The article tells the story of Kart and three Mount Rainier trapped climbers.

任务二：梳理故事情节，完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三：回答下面的问题，并根据段落开头提示语，构思和完善故事发展情节。

<p>Paragraph 1:</p> <p>On Monday, they managed to call 911 but forgot to ask how to communicate with the rangers (护林员) before losing signals. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Why were they trapped there for several days? <u>High winds prevented the rangers carrying out a helicopter rescue for several days.</u> What difficulty did they probably face? <u>Their food was running out and they shared a single bottle of melted snow each day.</u> What probably happened to their tent platform later and what was the consequence for them? <u>An icefall buried their tent platform, squeezing them together. As a result, it was impossible for them to climb down.</u>
<p>Paragraph 2:</p> <p>On Wednesday, they gathered everything and decided to carry on with their climb. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> How did the climbers continue their climb? <u>They climbed up slowly and carefully, resting when they were weak.</u> What difficulty did they meet again? And how did their spirit begin to turn? <u>The wind froze them in place. Their spirits began to sink and they started to doubt if they could continue.</u> What made Kart keep spirits up during the difficult climb? <u>Thinking of all the people who loved him and realised they must be worried.</u> What was the result? <u>The climbers were rescued in the end.</u>

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

On Monday, they managed to call 911 but forgot to ask how to communicate with the rangers (护林员) before losing signals. They set up what was left of the tent as best they could and stayed where they were, praying for the early arrival of their salvation. But for several days, they watched beyond all hope as high winds prevented the rangers from attempting at a helicopter rescue. Their food was running out and they shared a single bottle of melted snow each day. Then an icfall buried their tent platform, squeezing them together. It was impossible to climb down.

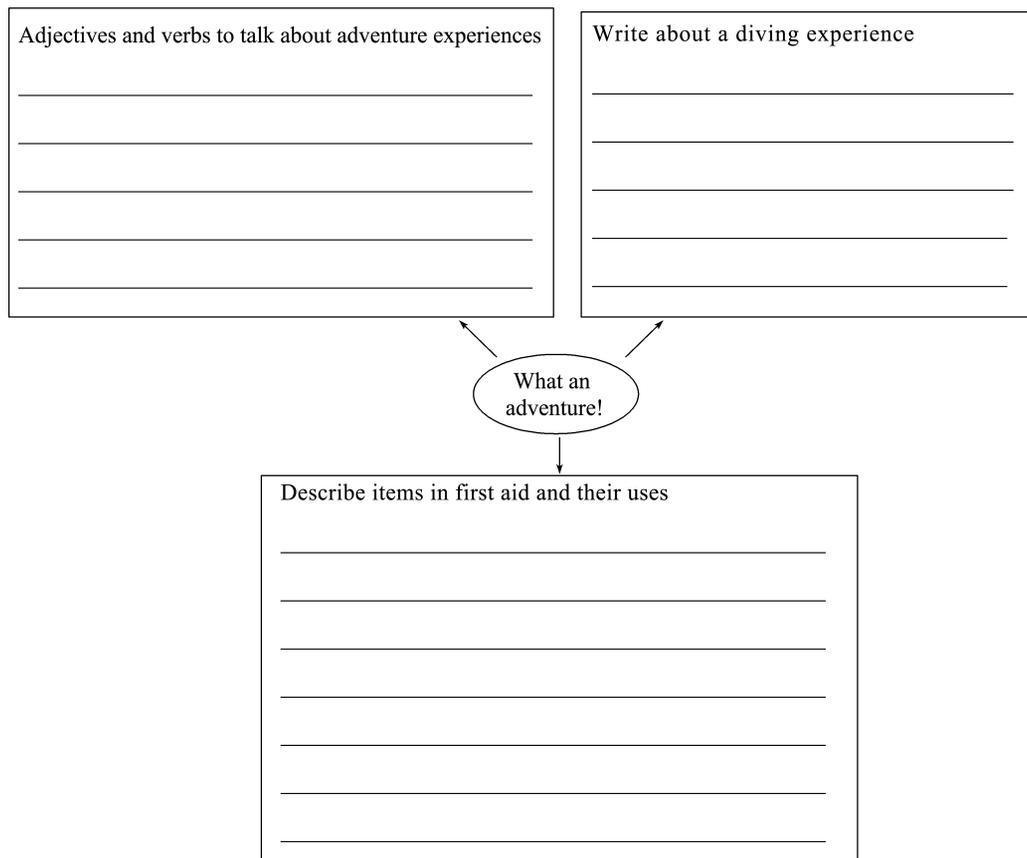
On Wednesday, they gathered everything and decided to carry on with their climb. They climbed up slowly and carefully, resting when they felt weak. It didn't take long before the wind froze them in place. That was the scariest moment. Their spirits began to sink and they started to doubt if they could continue. Kart thought of all the people who loved him, and it really hit him that they must be worried. As he tried to climb again and again, he just kept yelling out to his friends, "We have to get there."As they got onto the final slope to the summit, the weather cleared. Suddenly, a helicopter appeared out of nowhere. They were rescued.

★ ★ ★

重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。



答案:略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

Many climbers consider a selfie from the highest point on the planet to be the ultimate award. They call this their “Qomolangma selfie”. To get it, more than a few people have risked everything and tragically, many have died during the climb, with their precious images still locked in their cameras.

But as a professional climber who’s spent the past two decades pursuing summits(顶峰) all over the world, I had refused the idea of an expedition to Mount Qomolangma. The mountain seemed to represent the opposite of everything that I loved and respected about climbing.

The first mountain I attempted to climb was just a 500-foot cliff. I, together with a friend, managed to

make our way a couple of hundred feet up the nearly vertical(垂直) wall to the safety of a small ledge. Sitting side by side, we watched the sun dip towards the horizon, amazed by what we had done and wondered how we were going to get down. The thrill of doing something most people wouldn't consider, the discovery of the view at the top and the bond my friend and I shared all came to define the meaning of what I have been seeking in the mountains ever since.

I would have never changed my mind, were it not for an old friend and his devotion to one of mountaineering's greatest mysteries—whether Mallory, a legendary British climber, might have reached the top in 1924—nearly 30 years before Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay. The camera he likely carried had never been found. That's how I found myself searching for a long-lost climber and, just maybe, history's first highest point selfie.

My expedition didn't find the camera, but it did cause me to reconsider Mount Qomolangma. As I packed for Xizang, I expected that our state-of-the-art equipment and bottled oxygen would make the climb manageable, perhaps easy. Actually, when the top photo was taken, I was more exhausted than I'd ever been on any expedition. Along the way, I continuously tipped my hat, not just to Mallory, but to anyone who had the drive to push themselves up this route.

1. What is most climbers' understanding of "Qomolangma selfie"?

- A. It comes at a high cost.
- B. It shows their respect for nature.
- C. It is inspired by passion.
- D. It brings a sense of achievement.

2. Why did the author mention his first climbing experience?

- A. To stress the difficulty in climbing the cliff.
- B. To explain his focus on mountain climbing.
- C. To express his thoughts on "Qomolangma selfie".
- D. To meet his desire to climb Mount Qomolangma.

3. Which word can best describe the author's expedition to Mount Qomolangma?

- A. Respectable.
- B. Challenging.
- C. Enjoyable.
- D. Charming.

4. What does the author seem to convey in the text?

- A. Not all expeditions are worth the effort.
- B. The meaning of climbing varies greatly.
- C. Perseverance lies behind "Qomolangma selfie".
- D. Think twice before climbing Mount Qomolangma.

答案:1~4 DBBC

单元质量评估(五)

I. 阅读理解

A

When it comes to family holidays in Australia, most people look to hot spots such as Sydney or the Gold Coast. However, Perth makes for a strong competitor, with plenty of museums and theme parks to keep the kids entertained, as well as historic sites and botanical gardens (植物园).

To give you a travel guide, we take a look at the best things to see and do in Perth.

Kings Park

Located in the heart of Perth's business district, the 400-hectare park is perfect for spending an afternoon and making the most of the sunny weather. Here you'll find plenty of picnic spots, play areas for little ones, and a host of activities and things to see.

However, if you only visit one thing, make it the park's impressive botanical gardens where you'll find colourful plants.

Bibbulmun Track

Hikers (徒步旅行者), this one's for you! This track is one of the world's great long-distance walks.

Along the way you can expect amazing scenery, comfortable campsites, and a host of exciting wildlife and plants to look out for.

Perth Mint

You can discover a century's worth of metals (金属) from gold to silver.

There are also plenty of activities from a live gold pouring session (期) that you can watch to countless exhibitions.

Perth Zoo

The unusual creatures at the Perth Zoo are sure to keep small children's attention! Giraffes, lions, elephants and monkeys are just some of the wildlife living in the zoo, which focuses on protecting various species.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了澳大利亚珀斯适合家庭度假的几个地方。

1. What do we know about Kings Park?

- A. It is in the hot spot Perth.
- B. It is a good place for a picnic.
- C. It is perfect for long-distance walking.
- D. It is home to various plants and animals.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Kings Park** 部分中的“Here you'll find plenty of picnic spots”可知选 B。

2. What do the Bibbulmun Track and Perth Zoo have in common?

- A. They have a lot of wildlife.
- B. They house large exhibitions.
- C. They are in a business centre.
- D. They are noted for campsites.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Bibbulmun Track** 部分中的“a host of exciting wildlife”和 **Perth Zoo** 部分中的“Giraffes, lions, elephants and monkeys are just some of the wildlife living in the zoo”可知,这两个地方的共同点是都有许多野生动物。

3. What is the purpose of this text?

- A. To introduce Australia.
- B. To celebrate some events.
- C. To attract visitors to Perth.
- D. To announce new activities.

C 写作意图题。本文介绍了珀斯的几个旅游景点,目的是吸引游客到该地旅行。

B

After decades of married life, I realised that my life was limited, and even having friends frightened me. To ease my anxiety, my husband and I explored the Blue Ridge Mountains about an one-hour ride from home. We chose a path only a couple of miles long. The process of putting one foot in front of the other started to ease my worried soul. Being with nature slowed down my racing mind. Up and down the path we went. The trees gently swayed in the wind as we enjoyed views of valleys below us.

I knew this was my way to heal. I found a website, picked a group and signed up for a five-mile hike in Shenandoah National Park. All my worries came into play when meeting the hiking group. The fifteen hikers, a decade or more younger than me, started slowly, crossing many little streams on rocks. I enjoyed the hike but struggled to keep up. After half a mile, my steps

got into the rhythm. I felt a part of all that surrounded me.

I have been actively hiking since that day, walking thousands of miles, pooven by several worn pairs of hiking boots. With my fellow hikers, I climbed Mount Le Conte at 6,593 feet. It was a challenging hike, but I made it.

I have hiked the Dingle Peninsula in Ireland with five other women, through more than a hundred miles of green hills and valleys filled with baby sheep and their mothers. I'm fortunate to have the Blue Ridge Mountains nearby. Before the pandemic, I backpacked on the Appalachian Trail, falling short of my 100-mile goal but enjoying it. I met hikers along the way, camping next to them and listening to their determination to hike the entire 2,200 miles.

I don't intend to give up being one with nature outdoors anytime soon. We all are responsible for our peace and happiness.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了为了疏解心中的焦虑情绪,作者与丈夫去附近的山林中放松心情。之后她不断去其他山脉中攀登、远足,在这个过程中,作者感受到了内心的平静和幸福。

4. What made the author less worried at the mountain path?

- A. Closely following her husband.
- B. Choosing a path near her home.
- C. Taking a walk outdoors in nature.
- D. Racing with the wind in the trees.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“The process of putting one foot in front of the other started to ease my worried soul. Being with nature slowed down my racing mind. Up and down the path we went. The trees gently swayed in the wind as we enjoyed views of valleys below us.”可知,在大自然中散步让作者焦虑的灵魂放松下来。故选 C。

5. How did the author feel upon meeting the hiking group?

- A. Worried.
- B. Energetic.
- C. Confident.
- D. Excited.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“I knew this was my way to heal. I found a website, picked a group and signed up for a five-mile hike in Shenandoah National Park. All my worries came

into play when meeting the hiking group.”可知,作者见到徒步旅行团时感到担忧。故选 A。

6. What did the author fail to do on the Appalachian Trail?

- A. Travel with backpacks before the pandemic.
- B. Keep her boots to prove her ability.
- C. Plan the hiking route of 2,200 miles.
- D. Finish the 100-mile goal along the trail.

D 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“Before the pandemic, I backpacked on the Appalachian Trail, falling short of my 100-mile goal but enjoying it. I met hikers along the way, camping next to them and listening to their determination to hike the entire 2,200 miles.”可知,作者在阿巴拉契亚小径上没有实现徒步 100 英里的目标。故选 D。

7. What does this passage mainly tell us?

- A. The author's love for marriage and family life.
- B. The challenges of hiking in different terrains.
- C. The author's healing through hiking in nature.
- D. The beauty of various natural landscapes.

C 主旨大意题。文章开篇讲述作者在婚后生活中感到焦虑,然后通过和丈夫一起探索蓝岭山脉,发现与自然相处能缓解焦虑。这是作者找到的治愈方式。接着,作者讲述了自己参加不同地方的徒步活动,如在仙纳度国家公园徒步、攀登勒孔特山、在爱尔兰丁格尔半岛徒步以及在阿巴拉契亚小径背包旅行等。通过这些经历,作者不仅获得了内心的平静,还感受到了满足。C 项符合题意,故选 C。

C

When the author Nicholas Carr began researching his book on whether the Internet was ruining our minds, he restricted his online access and email. His new book argues the modern technology renders us less capable of deep thinking. Carr found himself so distracted that he couldn't work on the book while staying connected. After initially feeling confused by his sudden lack of online connection, he was able to stay focused on one task for a long period over several weeks.

“Reading on the Internet has changed how we use our brains. Facing lots of text, videos, music and links to other web pages, our minds have become used to skimming and scanning information. As a result, we have developed sharper skills at making fast decisions, particularly visual ones,”

Carr wrote.

But now most of us rarely read books that would help us focus. We are becoming more like librarians—able to find information quickly—than scholars who digest and interpret information. That lack of focus hinders (阻碍) our long-term memory, leading many of us to feel distracted.

“What we are losing is a whole other set of mental skills, the ones that require not the shifting of our focus but the maintaining of our focus,” Carr said, adding that for centuries books had shielded our brains from distractions.

But with devices becoming more common, Carr predicts books will change, too. “New forms of reading always require new forms of writing,” he wrote. Carr gives a tip to those who feel Web-surfing has left them incapable of concentration—slow down, turn off the Internet and practise the skills of reflection. “It is pretty clear from the brain science that if you don’t exercise particular cognitive skills, you are going to lose them,” he said. “If you are constantly distracted, you are not going to think in the same way that you would think if you paid attention.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了作家 Nicholas Carr 写的一本书。该书论述了像互联网这类的现代科技对人的大脑思维带来的影响。

8. What does the underlined word “renders” in Paragraph 1 probably mean?

- A. Protects. B. Prevents.
C. Makes. D. Discovers.

C 词义猜测题。根据画线词所在句的上一句 “When the author Nicholas Carr began researching his book on whether the Internet was ruining our minds, he restricted his online access and email.”可知, Nicholas Carr 开始研究互联网是否影响思考能力,再结合画线词后的 “less capable of deep thinking”可知,这是最新科技引起的不好结果。由此可推知,render 的意思是“引起,导致”,结合选项可知,C项 make 与其意思相近。故选 C。

9. What does Carr’s new book mainly focus on?

- A. Whether our minds are being influenced by the Internet.
B. Why people like making fast decisions today.

C. Whether it is important for us to surf the Internet.

D. What we should keep in mind when surfing the Internet.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的 “When the author Nicholas Carr began researching his book on whether the Internet was ruining our minds, he restricted his online access and email.”可知, Carr 的新书讨论的主题是我们的思维是否在受互联网的影响。故选 A。

10. Why do we have difficulty in building our lasting memory now?

- A. Because now most of us hardly read books.
B. Because we can find out the information more quickly than the scholars.
C. Because there are so many distractions on the Internet when reading online.
D. Because we always read online instead of reading books helping us concentrate.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的 “Reading on the Internet has changed how we use our brains.” “our minds have become used to skimming and scanning information”,以及第三段中的 “But now most of us rarely read books that would help us focus.” “That lack of focus hinders (阻碍) our long-term memory, leading many of us to feel distracted.”可推知,因为我们总是在网上阅读,而不是阅读帮助我们集中注意力的书籍,所以我们很难形成长期记忆。故选 D。

11. What does Carr advise those people who are unable to concentrate as a result of Web-surfing to do?

- A. To read more interesting books.
B. To get away from the Internet.
C. To spend more time doing exercise.
D. To try to improve their sleep quality.

B 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的 “Carr gives a tip to those who feel Web-surfing has left them incapable of concentration—slow down, turn off the Internet and practise the skills of reflection.”可知,Carr 建议那些因浏览互联网而无法集中注意力的人远离互联网。故选 B。

D

The Tanzanian government has set up a high-

speed Internet service on Mount Kilimanjaro, which was named a World Heritage site in 1987. The government says the service will promote safety for climbers and allow people to post selfies as they climb Africa's tallest mountain at 5,895 metres.

The mountain, created by volcanoes and rising out of a large, open flat area, is part of Kilimanjaro National Park in the northeast of Tanzania. Around 50,000 people visit the park each year. But climbing such a tall mountain isn't easy. Roughly one-third of the people who try to climb it are forced to give up. The new Internet service should make it easier for climbers to reach the top. They can use the Internet to check maps and find their way, or call for help if they need it.

Currently, the new service reaches more than halfway up the mountain. The government says that by the end of the year, climbers will get Internet even at the top of Mount Kilimanjaro.

The government says safety is the main reason for setting up the Internet service on the mountain. As Tanzania depends heavily on tourists, having people post pictures and videos on social media as they climb Mount Kilimanjaro could certainly make the spot even more popular with tourists.

Some people in Tanzania are upset that the government is focusing on Internet for tourists instead of the livelihood of people living in the country. One study in 2020 showed that only about 83% of the people living in Tanzania can get cell phone service where they live. It also bothered people who were worried that the project might affect the environment on the mountain. Scientists have already warned that the glaciers on top of Mount Kilimanjaro may melt in the next 10 years. So far, the cable car project doesn't seem to be making much progress.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍非洲国家坦桑尼亚在非洲最高峰乞力马扎罗山上提供高速网络服务,并有望让网络信号覆盖整座山脉。这将会为登山的游客带来更高的安全系数,但同时也引起了一些民众的不满。

12. What can we know about Mount Kilimanjaro?

- A. It is formed by volcanoes.
- B. It's a hot place on social media.
- C. It tries to be a World Heritage site.
- D. It's the tallest mountain in the world.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“The mountain, created by volcanoes and rising out of a large, open flat area, is part of Kilimanjaro National Park in the northeast of Tanzania.”可知,乞力马扎罗山是因火山喷发而形成的。故选A。

13. What's the Internet service meant to do?

- A. To better protect the environment.
- B. To show the importance of the Net.
- C. To help its people connect better.
- D. To improve the safety of climbers.

D 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“The government says safety is the main reason for setting up the Internet service on the mountain.”可知,在乞力马扎罗山上提供高速网络服务的目的是保障游客的安全。故选D。

14. What has made some people in Tanzania unhappy with the Internet service?

- A. Environmental concern.
- B. Livelihood of the citizens.
- C. The poor state of the country.
- D. International dissatisfaction.

B 细节理解题。根据最后一段的内容可知,在乞力马扎罗山上提供高速网络服务遭到一些坦桑尼亚人民的反对,因为这笔钱本可以用于改善民生。故选B。

15. Which of the following can be the best title for the text?

- A. Internet Service Benefits Natives and Visitors
- B. Mount Kilimanjaro Becomes More Accessible
- C. Opinions Differ on the Internet Access in Kilimanjaro
- D. Safety Measures Free Visitors from Safety Concerns

C 标题归纳题。根据第一段“The Tanzanian government has set up a high-speed Internet service on Mount Kilimanjaro, which was named a World Heritage site in 1987. The government says...”和最后一段的内容可知,本文主要介绍人

【参考范文】

Dear Jack,

I'm very glad to tell you something about my life on Mars. Life on Mars is totally different from life on Earth. Big houses are made from special materials, which can keep the room at a constant temperature. Fruit and vegetables on Mars are much healthier than those on Earth. In addition, no matter how far we go, we can travel by spaceship freely. It's really fascinating!

It has been a long time since I arrived on Mars. I miss you so much. I sincerely look forward to your visit. I'm sure it will be an unforgettable experience for you.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Lily loved school. However, there was one class Lily worried about more than any other—art. She didn't know why she just wasn't any good at drawing, painting, or cutting.

Ms Clay, the art teacher, stood at the front of the room. "Class, next Friday our school is going to have an art competition," she announced. Ms Clay was a great teacher, and Lily liked her a lot. But this announcement made Lily nervous. "Everyone in the school will create a piece of artwork to show in the library. You can use the different types of artwork we have been studying." Ms Clay was quite excited when she spoke and Lily found herself sinking lower in her chair.

Lily had the whole weekend to work on her project, but she could not think of anything to do. On Monday, Lily felt frightened, so after school

Lily asked Ms Clay if she could write an art paper instead of doing an art project.

"I understand this project scared you, Lily," Ms Clay said. "Just remember, you can create any kind of art you want." Ms Clay smiled at her. "Art is a person's way of expressing his or her feelings—it isn't always painting, drawing, or cutting. I know you will think of something very creative, and I can't wait to see it."

When Lily arrived home, she took out a piece of paper and a pencil. She remembered Ms Clay's words. "Art is a person's way of expressing his or her feelings." Lily wrote the word "terrified" on her paper. She crumpled (揉皱) the paper and threw it to the side of her desk.

Then Lily stared at the crumpled ball. Suddenly an idea struck her.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

Why not create something out of crumpled paper? The crumpled paper reminded her of a snowball. Lily didn't have to draw or paint or even cut. Lily made many paper balls, glued them all together, and placed them on a big piece of hard paper to form a snowman. The snowman wore a hat made of black paper and a scarf made of red paper. Her finished project was really wonderful.

On Friday, Lily carefully carried her project into the library. She noticed the smiles and the nods from teachers and other students as she put her work on a table. Ms Clay walked over to Lily. "You have created a creative piece of artwork. I am so proud of you!" Ms Clay said. Lily was proud of herself too. Her pride grew when Ms Clay placed a first-place star on her artwork. "Maybe I am a good artist after all," Lily thought.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and nature, whose topic is about natural disasters and a series of reflections caused by natural disasters, including environmental protection, positive attitude in the face of natural disasters and scientific countermeasures. This unit starts with the introduction of natural disasters in human history and movies, shows the impact of natural disasters on human survival and development, as well as the positive attitude of human beings in the face of natural disasters, introduces disaster prevention, response and rescue measures, arouses students' awareness of environmental protection and disaster prevention, and trains students' positive and optimistic attitude towards life.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与自然灾害相关的词汇与表达,并运用所学词汇表达个人观点。
		语法	了解省略句的特征和用法,并在真实语境中运用省略句。
		语篇	综合运用各种语言技能,读懂和自然灾害相关的语篇内容,并挖掘深层信息。
		语用	能使用话题语言描述天气、谈论自然灾害的预测与救援以及进行自然灾害防范指南的写作。
	语言技能	听	能听懂天气预报并能描述天气情况。
		说	能使用新学的语言点描述自然灾害以及它们对人类生活的影响。
		读	能读懂与自然灾害有关的文章,了解记叙文的语篇结构与特点,积累话题词汇。
		写	能撰写自然灾害防范指南。
学习能力	能通过运用各种学习策略,在自主、合作与探究式学习的过程中,结合单元所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整学习内容和进程,提高理解和表达能力。		

续表

核心素养	具体要求
文化意识	通过文章的心理描写,了解英国人的典型性格特征,理解和尊重中外文化差异。
思维品质	培养乐观、积极的生活态度,对人与自然的关系有更深入的理解。

◉ 必备知识

必背单词	disaster, tube, plus, erupt, immediately, occur, announcement, forecast, grab, reliable, rescue, emergency, exceptionally, claim, crisis, threaten, precisely, billion, lap, nowhere, otherwise, midnight, county, threat, property, sufficient, shelter
重点表达	react to, pick up, compared to, make it, look through, leave out, consist of, result in, keep on doing..., in time
重点知识	1. on doing... 2. It was+时间段+before...
单元语法	省略
单元写作	安全指南

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Watch a video and extract the key information from it.
2. Improve the reading ability to get the main idea of the text and infer the author's writing intention.
3. Understand this text through obtaining key information and details.
4. Improve critical thinking skills and think about how to deal with natural disasters.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. disaster *n.* 灾难, 灾祸
2. immediately *adv.* 即刻, 马上
3. occur *v.* 发生
4. announcement *n.* 通告, 公告
5. look through 浏览, 翻阅; 对……视而不见
6. compared to 和……相比
7. after all 毕竟; 终究
8. most importantly 最重要的是
9. react to 对……作出反应
10. in the face of 面对
11. prepare for 为……做准备

12. pick up 拿起, 捡起; 接收(信号); (偶然)学会; (开车)接人; 改善, 好转; 恢复(健康); 收拾, 整理

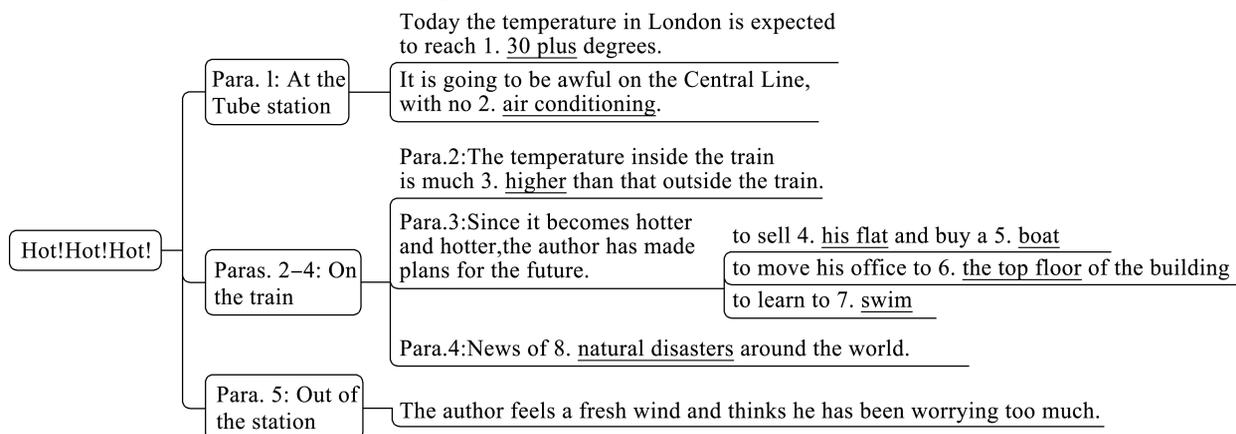
(二) 阅读词汇

1. erupt *v.* (火山)爆发, 喷发
2. landslide *n.* 山崩, 滑坡
3. plus *adj.* (用于数字后面表示)多, 余
4. typhoon *n.* 台风
5. tube *n.* 管子
6. sure enough 果不其然; 果真这样
7. the Tube (伦敦的)地下铁道, 地铁
8. air conditioning 空调系统
9. go down the stairs 走下楼梯
10. move to space 搬到/移民到太空

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- What is the author's purpose in writing the text?
 - To complain about the London Tube.
 - To warn people about the danger of London being flooded.
 - To explain why summers in London are getting hotter and hotter.
 - To express his worries about the dangers of extreme weather conditions.
- What is the average high temperature in July in London?
 - 16 degrees.
 - 18 degrees.
 - 22 degrees.
 - 28 degrees.
- According to the text, which kind of natural disaster is mentioned in the newspaper?
 - A typhoon in Africa that has destroyed a town.
 - The heat across South America that has caused forest fires.
 - Heavy rain in Eastern Europe that has caused landslides.
 - An earthquake in Africa that has caused many deaths and injuries.
- What's the main idea of the text?
 - Each of us should learn to swim.
 - The hot temperature in London is worrying.
 - London is really a dangerous place to live in.
 - We should take immediate measures to avoid the hot temperature.

答案: 1~4 DCCB

○ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- Sure enough, going down the stairs and onto the platform is like jumping into a volcano that's erupting.

[句子分析] 本句是一个复合句。going down the stairs and onto the platform is like jumping into a volcano 是主句; that's erupting 是定语从句, 修饰先行词 a volcano。

[尝试翻译] 果不其然, 走下楼梯来到站台上, 就像跳进了一座正在喷发的火山。
- Looking through my newspaper, I'm shocked by photos showing that a typhoon in Asia has destroyed a town.

[句子分析] 本句是一个复合句。I'm shocked by photos 是主句; Looking through my newspaper 是现在分词短语作伴随状语; showing that... 是现在分词短语作后置定语, 修饰 photos; that 引导宾语从句。

[尝试翻译] 翻阅着手里的报纸, 我震惊地看到亚洲的一场台风摧毁了一个城镇的照片。

○ 思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- What did the author feel frightened of?

He was frightened of the future climate.
- Do you think climate change will affect your life in the future? How would you adapt?

Certainly it will affect my life. I don't exactly know how to adapt. Maybe I'll move to the basement when it's very hot and stay indoors when it's very cold.

Unit 6 课后素养评价 (二十一)

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

I. 阅读理解

As most people know, in the past few years, sandstorms have swept across many cities and areas of North China, polluting the air and disturbing daily lives of human beings. People look dirty and suffer many kinds of illnesses, such as breathing difficulty. The sandstorm is such a serious problem that it has not only undermined the industrial and agricultural development of our country but also caused a lot of trouble to the living conditions of the Chinese people. It is expected that effective (有效的) measures should be taken as soon as possible through our joint efforts to reduce its occurrence.

So what should we do with the frightening sandstorms? Some experts put forward practical suggestions as follows: For one thing, more funds (基金) ought to be put into tree planting and forest protection so as to keep more water resources within the surface of the earth. For another, governments of all countries should make laws on environmental protection. For example, banning the use of disposable chopsticks and punishing illegal tree cutting. Scientists should also study and find ways to cut down the degree of its destruction and to improve the whole environment.

How people look forward to sunny days with little breeze (微风) touching their faces now and forever! Nevertheless, I am fully confident that the golden days can come back so long as everyone tries their best to protect the natural environment from today on.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了沙尘暴对工农业和人类生活的影响,并分析了人类能够采取的应对沙尘暴的多种措施。

1. What does the underlined word “undermined” mean in Paragraph 1?
- A. Weakened. B. Encouraged.
C. Kept. D. Made.

A 词义猜测题。根据画线词所在的句子可知,沙尘暴不仅仅削弱了工农业的发展,还带来很多生活方面的麻烦,故该词意为“削弱,减弱”,与 A 项意思相符。故选 A。

2. What can we infer from the first paragraph?
- A. China has taken no measures to prevent sandstorms.
B. Sandstorms can cause much damage to human beings and their daily lives.
C. The sandstorm is the most dangerous natural disaster to human beings.
D. More sandstorms will happen in the near future in North China.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“but also caused a lot of trouble to the living conditions of the Chinese people”可知,沙尘暴会给人们的生活带来很多的麻烦。故选 B。

3. How many ways do some experts put forward to fight against sandstorms in the article?
- A. 5. B. 4.
C. 3. D. 2.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“For one thing, more funds (基金) ought to...”“For another, governments of all countries should make laws on environmental protection.”以及“Scientists should also study and find ways to cut down the degree of its destruction and to improve the whole environment.”可知,文章中提出了 3 种方法。故选 C。

4. What's the author's attitude towards the situation to sandstorms' problems?
- A. Unconfident. B. Optimistic.
C. Regretful. D. Satisfied.

B 观点态度题。根据最后一段中的“I am fully confident that the... environment from today on.”可知,作者对沙尘暴问题持乐观的态度。故选 B。

II. 七选五

If you have been exposed to a natural disaster

(for example, a tornado or hurricane), it is very important to learn ways of coping with natural disasters and their impact. Natural disasters can be considered dangerous events that have a high potential to place you at risk. 1 Unlike other traumatic (痛苦的) events, natural disasters can also result in the destruction of property and financial loss, further affecting your stress levels and disrupting (扰乱) coping efforts. Despite the effects of natural disasters, there are steps you can take to cope with them.

2 Over and over again, it has been found that support from others can be a major factor in helping people overcome the negative effects of a traumatic event. Given that a natural disaster can impact an entire community, your support system may be weakened by a natural disaster.

Try to establish a schedule. 3 A natural disaster can greatly disrupt your regular schedule increasing the extent to which your life feels out of control. Coming up with a daily, structured schedule can help you establish a sense of predictability (可预测性) and control.

Talk about the effect of the natural disaster.

4 A natural disaster can result in strong feelings

of anger, anxiety, and sadness. These emotions need to be expressed. If you hold them in, they may only grow stronger in intensity.

Practise healthy coping strategies. Following a natural disaster, you will experience a number of intense negative emotions. 5 Alcohol use, excessive sleep, or seeking comfort in food may be effective short-term strategies for managing emotional distress. However, in the long-term, these strategies won't address the real issue and will only cause your distress to increase.

- A. Seek out and connect with social support.
- B. Try to limit all the other sources of stress in your life.
- C. For example, set regular times for meals, or waking up in the morning.
- D. Natural disasters can bring about high levels of stress, anxiety, and anger.
- E. Share your feelings with others, or find some ways to express your emotions.
- F. Therefore, it is very important to identify healthy ways of managing these emotions.
- G. Your most important task following a natural disaster is getting your life back in order.

答案: 1~5 DACEF

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas

Language points

学习任务目标

1. Learn and master the key words and expressions related to the topic.
2. Be able to comb through the logic and the structure of the text.
3. Connect climate change with your real life, think about the side effects on people's lives and express your own opinions and views.
4. Deepen the cognition of the unit theme and share your opinions about how to deal with climate change.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. As soon as the steam passes through the metal **tubes**, it is condensed (冷凝). 管子
2. Over the past 40-**plus** years, China has lifted about 800 million people out of poverty. (用于数字后面表示)多,余
3. A **typhoon** is a very violent tropical storm. 台风
4. Last weekend, floods in the south resulted in a fatal (灾难性的) **landslide**. 山崩,滑坡

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>erupt</u> <i>v.</i> (火山)爆发, 喷发	<u>eruption</u> <i>n.</i> (火山、战争等)爆发
<u>immediately</u> <i>adv.</i> 即刻, 马上	<u>immediate</u> <i>adj.</i> 立即的, 立刻的; (作用)直接的
<u>occur</u> <i>v.</i> 发生; 出现	<u>occurrence</u> <i>n.</i> 发生的事情
<u>announcement</u> <i>n.</i> 通告, 公告; 宣布	<u>announce</u> <i>v.</i> 宣布, 宣告
<u>disaster</u> <i>n.</i> 灾难, 灾祸	<u>disastrous</u> <i>adj.</i> 灾难性的; 以失败告终的

III. 补全短语

1. look through 浏览, 翻阅; 对……视而不见
2. react to 对……作出反应
3. in the face of 面对
4. compared to 和……相比
5. next to 紧邻; 在……近旁
6. make it 成功; 赶上, 到达

7. after all 毕竟; 终究

8. most importantly 最重要的是

9. prepare for 为……做准备

10. pick up 拿起, 捡起; 接收(信号); (偶然)学会; (开车)接人; 改善, 好转; 恢复(健康); 收拾, 整理

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作状语

Picking up a free newspaper at the Tube station, I see the title "Hot! Hot! Hot!".

在地铁站拿起一份免费报纸, 我看到一个标题写着“热! 热! 热!”。

2. 句型公式: it 作形式主语

It's just typical that my journey is on one of the oldest lines, as well as one of the deepest.

通常情况下, 我上班所走的路线刚好是地铁里最老、最深的一条线。

3. 句型公式: 不定式作定语

Perhaps now is the time to start planning for the future?

也许现在就该为未来做打算了?

4. 句型公式: now that 引导原因状语从句

Now that it's hard to avoid a disaster on Earth, perhaps I should start thinking about moving to space...

既然地球上的灾难很难避免, 我或许应该开始考虑移居太空了……

5. 句型公式: 完全倒装

"The next station is Bank!" comes the announcement.

报站声“下一站, 银行站!”响起。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. pick up 拿起, 捡起; 接收(信号); (偶然)学会; (开车)接人; 改善, 好转; 恢复(健康); 收拾, 整理

[教材原文] Picking up a free newspaper at the Tube station, I see the title “Hot! Hot! Hot!”.
在地铁站拿起一份免费报纸, 我看到一个标题写着“热! 热! 热!”。

[归纳拓展]

pick out 挑出, 挑选; 辨别出

pick off 去除, 摘除; 瞄准射击

pick oneself up (跌倒后)站起来; 振作起来

[即学即练]

(1) 写出下列句子中 pick up 的含义

① Tom, will you **pick up** all your toys? 整理

② My radio can **pick up** the BBC programmes clearly. 接收

③ Is it convenient for you to help me **pick up** my mother at the airport this afternoon? (开车)接人

④ It's surprising that your brother **picked up** Russian so quickly—he hasn't lived there very long. 学会

⑤ When is the weather going to **pick up**? It's been bad for weeks. 好转

⑥ When a dog attacked me, I **picked up** a stick to defend myself. 拿起

⑦ He is beginning to **pick up** after the operation, which delights his family. 恢复(健康)

⑧ (2024·新课标 I 卷) In addition, I have an old two-volume copy of the *Shorter Oxford Dictionary*, **picked up** a few years ago in a bookshop sale for just 99 pence.

(碰巧或廉价地)买到

(2) 语法填空

① On the weekend, we often take our children to the local library where they can pick out books to read.

② Gardening requires people to do many repeated actions, such as picking off dying flowers.

③ There is no need to worry. I will have Tom pick you up at the airport.

(3) 写作微练

(读后续写之动作描写) 她从地板上捡起书, 把它放在书架上。

She picked up the book from the floor and placed it on the shelf.

2. announcement n. 通告, 公告

[教材原文] “The next station is Bank!” comes the **announcement**.

报站声“下一站, 银行站!”响起。

[归纳拓展]

(1) make an important announcement 发表重要声明

(2) announce v. 宣布, 宣告

announce sth. to sb. 向某人宣布某事, 告诉某人某事

It is announced that... 据称……; 已宣布……

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① We were shocked by the announcement (announce) that the amusement park would be closed.

② Mary announced (announce) to her fans that she was to retire after the competition.

③ The girl asked her roommates to be quiet, because she had got an important announcement to make (make).

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之告知信) 据说已经采取了一系列措施来改善环境。

It is announced that a series of measures have been taken to improve the environment.

3. now that 引导原因状语从句

[教材原文] **Now that** it's hard to avoid a disaster on Earth, perhaps I should start thinking about moving to space...

既然地球上的灾难很难避免, 我或许应该开始考虑移居太空了……

[归纳拓展]

常见的引导原因状语从句的连接词:

(1) because 表示直接的原因或理由, 表示原因的语气最强。回答由 why 引导的特殊疑问句, 只能用 because, 意为“因为”。

(2) since/now that 表示对方已经知道, 无须加以说明的原因或事实, 语气比 because 稍弱, 意为“既然”。一般位于主句前, 中间用逗号隔开。

(3) as 往往表示十分明显的原因, 听者或读者已经知道或能看出来, 语气较弱, 比较口语化。as 引导的句子一般放在句首, 意为“由于”。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

①—Why do children like the festival very much?
—Because they can have delicious food and wear new clothes.

②Since/Now that you feel uncomfortable, you'd better not drive to do business.

(2) 写作微练

①(应用文写作之建议信)我们必须把所学知识应用到日常工作中去, 因为理论和实践决不能分离。

We must apply what we have learned to our daily work because in no case should theory be separated from practice.

②(应用文写作之推荐信)既然你对中国文化很感兴趣,为什么不选历史作为你的主修专业呢?

Now that you are enthusiastic about Chinese culture, why not take up History as your major?

多义词汇 专练

tube A. *n.* 电视机 B. *n.* (人体内的) 管状器官
C. *n.* 软管 D. *n.* 伦敦地下铁道

①The lungs are in fact constructed of thousands of tiny **tubes**. B

②I went out today and bought a **tube** of toothpaste. C

③The only baseball he saw was on the **tube**. A

④The **tube** roared in the tunnel quickly. D

Unit 6 课后素养评价 (二十二)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 语法填空

- The volcano is still active, as evidenced by the recent eruption (erupt).
- I was going to pay in cash when it suddenly occurred (occur) to me that I had left my purse at home.
- Anderson made the announcement (announce) at the conference that the company would close next week.
- Seeing nobody around, I ran away immediately (immediate).
- He, as well as his two classmates, is (be) going to take part in a piano competition tomorrow.
- We have entered into an age when dreams have the best chance of coming true.
- The news shocked the public, leading (lead) to great concern about students' safety at school.
- It is typical of him to think about helping others in trouble.
- Compared (compare) with the earth, the sun is much larger.
- He is expected to arrive (arrive) at 9 o'clock.

II. 短语填空

pick up; compared to; look through; most importantly; react against

- I have looked through all my papers but I still can't find my notes.

- My friend began to pick up after staying in hospital for several days.
- He says the pain was nothing compared to what he felt in his heart.
- Be grateful for your home, your work, and most importantly, your family and friends.
- Children tend to react against their parents by going against their wishes.

III. 完成句子

- Now that the last problem has been solved, he as well as his workers has nothing to worry about.
既然最后一个问题已经解决,那么他和他的工人们就没有什么可担心的了。
- There is no doubt that enough concern must be paid to the problem of air pollution; after all we only have one earth.
毫无疑问,必须对空气污染问题给予足够的关注;毕竟我们只有一个地球。
- There come the volleyball players who never give up in the face of failure.
面对失败永不放弃的排球运动员们来了。
- Not knowing how to prepare for such a party, he turned to his parents for help.
不知道如何为这样的聚会做准备,他向父母寻求帮助。

IV. 完形填空

In the morning, Slim got up and prepared

breakfast for his wife as usual. His wife, Nicole, was listening to music in the bedroom. 1, he felt that his body was shaking. Slim had the 2 response that there was an earthquake! He shouted quickly, "Dear, earthquake! Go to the toilet!" Nicole heard the shouting, 3 the first-aid box quickly and ran into the toilet. The house was 4 even more dramatically.

The bathroom was next door to the kitchen. Slim picked up a kitchen 5 and two pieces of bread outside the kitchen. Slim tried to run along the wall to help Nicole. 6, it got dark suddenly with an explosion. The house 7 down and many things fell from above. Nicole was quickly buried in 8. She felt breathing very difficult. She tried to stand up, but 9.

A few minutes later, the land was 10. Nicole heard the sound of short breath and thought it was Slim! She shouted to him but no 11! He probably fainted. Nicole kept saying his name and she finally heard a response. Two people encouraged and 12 each other. They knew that there must be a way to escape.

Slim found that they were close and were 13 by the fallen stones and some powder. He started to dig with the kitchen knife. He felt 14 from his fingers. Finally, he removed the last piece of larger stones. Slim touched Nicole's one hand, then dug the 15 stones of her body. Finally, Nicole had steady breathing slowly. Two people sat on the ground and hugged together.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章描述了在一次地震中,一对夫妻相互鼓励、相互帮助,一起战胜困难,最终幸免于难的感人故事。

- A. Suddenly B. Actually
C. Unfortunately D. Really
A 根据文意判断,大地震的发生是很突然的。
- A. recent B. rapid
C. second D. best
B 根据语境可知,丈夫反应很快,马上意识到发生了地震。
- A. used up B. found out
C. took up D. put away
C 根据语境可知,妻子拿起急救箱,向洗手间跑去。take up 意为“拿起”,符合语境。

- A. burning B. shaking
C. falling D. moving
B 根据语境可知,房子在地震中剧烈地摇晃起来。
- A. tool B. cook
C. fork D. knife
D 最后一段有提示,丈夫用菜刀在废墟中挖掘,寻找妻子。
- A. However B. Therefore
C. Instead D. Besides
A 前后是转折关系,丈夫想帮助妻子,但突然的爆炸使周围变得漆黑一片。
- A. lay B. crashed
C. broke D. bent
B 此处指房子轰然倒塌。crash down 意为“(哗啦一声)倒塌”,符合语境。
- A. ruins B. ashes
C. dirt D. pieces
A 根据语境和常识可知,Nicole 很快被埋在了废墟中。
- A. senseless B. impractical
C. impossible D. invaluable
C 根据语境可知,妻子已经被埋,想站起来是不可能的。
- A. normal B. usual
C. flat D. silent
D 根据语境可知,地震过后一切陷入沉寂。
- A. response B. sign
C. hope D. result
A 根据下一句“他可能昏过去了”可知,妻子呼唤丈夫,但丈夫没有应答。
- A. touched B. held
C. calmed D. called
C 此处跟前面的“鼓励”构成并列关系,表示“安慰”,让对方镇静下来。
- A. wrapped B. separated
C. fastened D. limited
B 根据上文提到的“两人挨得很近”可知,此处强调两人被落下的石块等隔开。
- A. pain B. cold
C. clean D. warmth
A 根据语境可知,丈夫用菜刀使劲在废墟中挖掘,手指都疼了。
- A. sticking B. dealing
C. surrounding D. spreading
C 根据语境可知,丈夫把围在妻子身边的石块等清理掉。

Section III Using language

学习任务目标

1. Recognise the usage of ellipsis and use it in real contexts.
2. Collect words about natural disasters and talk about the side effects on human beings so as to raise people's environmental awareness.
3. Develop the ability to understand the weather reports and describe different weather conditions.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Cold air is **forecast** to sweep across China and cause a slump (突然下跌) in temperatures along with strong wind. 预测
2. While walking on the icy road, I **grabbed** his arm to stop myself from falling. 抓住
3. It was reported that the floods in the region had **claimed** more than ten lives. 夺去
4. China launched (发射) a scientific **satellite**, which is to observe environmental changes on Earth and human activities. 人造卫星
5. A **crisis** is a situation in which something or someone is affected by one or more very serious problems. 危机

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>reliable</u> <i>adj.</i> 可信的, 可靠的	<u>reliably</u> <i>adv.</i> 可靠地 <u>rely</u> <i>v.</i> 相信; 依赖
<u>emergency</u> <i>n.</i> 紧急情况, 不测事件	<u>emerge</u> <i>v.</i> 发现, 显现出来 <u>emergent</u> <i>adj.</i> 紧急的
<u>exceptionally</u> <i>adv.</i> 极其, 非常	<u>exceptional</u> <i>adj.</i> 异常的, 例外的 <u>exception</u> <i>n.</i> 例外
<u>precisely</u> <i>adv.</i> 精确地, 准确地	<u>precise</u> <i>adj.</i> 精确的, 准确的
<u>rescue</u> <i>n.</i> 营救, 解救	<u>rescuer</u> <i>n.</i> 救援者
<u>threaten</u> <i>v.</i> 威胁到, 危及	<u>threatening</u> <i>adj.</i> (行为) 带有威胁的 <u>threat</u> <i>n.</i> 威胁, 可能会带来威胁的人(事); 恐吓

III. 补全短语

1. leave out 省略; 遗漏
2. on the way 在路上; 即将来临
3. head for 朝……前进
4. suffer from 遭受
5. in history 在历史上
6. consist of 由……组成, 由……构成
7. look for 寻找, 寻求
8. up to 多达

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: 省略

My office is only on the third floor of the building, so quite low.

我的办公室就在四楼, 所以太低了。

2. 句型公式: it is + 过去分词 + that...

It is also said that mice and snakes head for safer ground several days before an earthquake, while dogs avoiding the beach may be a sign that a tsunami is approaching.

也有人说, 地震前几天, 老鼠和蛇会前往更安全的地方, 而狗避开海滩可能是海啸即将来临的征兆。

3. 句型公式: on doing sth.

On hearing the news, China was quick to start organising emergency aid.

一听到这个消息, 中国很快就开始组织紧急援助。

4. 句型公式: 过去完成时的被动语态

By early May, emergency aid worth 9.7 million US dollars had been donated by China, with a further round of emergency aid to follow.

到5月初, 中国已捐赠了价值970万美元的紧急援助(物资), 随后还将有新一轮的紧急援助。

任务型课堂

1. consist of 由……组成, 由……构成

[教材原文] **Consisting of** 62 people, it not only included rescuers and medical staff, but also included earthquake experts.

它由 62 个人组成, 不但包括救援人员和医务人员, 还包括地震专家。

[归纳拓展]

(1) consist in = lie in 在于, 存在于

consist with 与……一致/相吻合

(2) consistent *adj.* 相符的, 一致的

be consistent with 和……一致/相符

名师点拨

(1) consist of/in/with 都不能用于被动语态和进行时态, 其非谓语动词应用现在分词形式。

(2) 表示“由……组成/构成”的短语还有 be made up of, be composed of 等。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① Life mainly consists of happiness and sorrow (悲伤) while happiness consists in struggle. Remember that your ideal life does not always consist with the reality.

② If what you say is not consistent (consist) with what you do, it will have a bad effect on your children.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之通知) 参赛作品应**包含一篇原创文章**, 重点关注食物浪费的主题, 并展示我们如何为减少食物浪费做出贡献。

Entries should consist of an original piece of writing, focusing on the theme of food waste and showing how we can contribute to its reduction.

② (读后续写之总结升华) 生活中不仅仅有阳光, 还有艰难的日子。

Life consists of/is made up of/is composed of not only sunshine but also hard times.

2. reliable *adj.* 可信赖的, 可靠的

[教材原文] So, for accurate and **reliable** predictions, it's best to check an official, scientific report.

因此, 为获得准确可靠的预测, 最好查看官方的科学报告。

[归纳拓展]

rely *v.* 相信; 依赖

rely on/upon 依靠; 依赖

rely on sb. to do sth. 指望某人做某事

rely on it that... 相信……

名师点拨

当 rely on 后接 that 从句作宾语时, 必须先接 it 再接 that 从句, it 是形式宾语。有类似用法的词或短语有 depend on、count on、appreciate、hate、dislike 等。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① You can rely on him to respond (respond) to a challenge.

② He is a reliable (rely) person and you can ask him for help.

③ She had proved that she could be relied on/upon in difficult conditions.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之承诺信) 你可以**放心**, 当你有困难时他会来帮助你。

You can rely on it that he will come to your aid when you are in trouble.

3. on doing... 一……就……

[教材原文] **On hearing** the news, China was quick to start organising emergency aid.

一听到这个消息, 中国很快就开始组织紧急援助。

[归纳拓展]

“一……就……”的常见表达形式:

(1) immediately、directly...

(2) the moment、the minute、the instant...

(3) no sooner... than...、hardly/scarcely... when...

名师点拨

在“no sooner... than...”及“hardly/scarcely... when...”句型中, 主句常用过去完成时, 后面的 than/when 从句中常用一般过去时。当 no sooner、hardly 或 scarcely 位于句首时, 主句用部分倒装。

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① On/Upon arriving at the tourist attraction, the

visitors were amazed at its beautiful natural scenery.

② He jumped with joy the instant (instant) he heard the news that his team won the gold medal.

(2) 写作微练

① (读后续写之场景描写) 她刚结束演讲, 观众席就爆发出掌声。

No sooner had she finished her speech than the audience burst into applause.

② (读后续写之环境描写) 我刚走出房子, 天就开始下雨了。

Hardly had I stepped out of the house when it started to rain.

语法研习课

省略

语法感知

① It's just typical that my journey is on one of the oldest lines, as well as one of the deepest.

② My office is only on the third floor of the building, so quite low.

句①中为避免重复省略了 deepest 后面的 lines; 句②为并列句, 为避免重复, so 后面的分句省略了与前一共同的主语和谓语动词 my office is。

语法精讲

一、省略的含义

英语中有时为了避免重复, 使语言简练紧凑, 在不影响句子结构和意义的前提下, 往往省去一个或多个句子成分, 这种语法现象被称为省略。省略在英语中很常见, 尤其是在口语中。

二、省略的基本用法

(一) 简单句中的省略

1. 主语的省略

(1) 祈使句可省去主语。

Hand me the hammer, will you?

把锤子递给我好吗?

(2) 除祈使句外, 还有其他省去主语的情况, 主要出现在口语中。

(I) Don't know.

不知道。

(It) Looks like rain.

像是要下雨了。

2. 谓语或谓语的一部分的省略。

(Is there) Anything you want to tell me?

你有什么事想要告诉我吗?

(Are) The students still waiting?

学生们还在等吗?

3. 主语和谓语, 或主语和谓语的一部分的省略

What a beautiful view (it is)!

多么漂亮的景色!

(Are you) Going to town?

进城去吗?

4. 宾语的省略

—Where should we go?

—I don't care (where we go).

——我们该去哪里?

——我不在乎(我们去哪里)。

5. 表语的省略

—Are these your friends?

—Yes, they are (my friends).

——这些人是你的朋友吗?

——是的, 他们是(我的朋友)。

6. 系动词的省略

有些省略结构省去了系动词, 尤其在口语中。

Everything (is) in good condition.

一切都完好无损。

7. 不定式的省略

(1) 答语中的有些动词(短语)后跟不定式作宾语时, 可将其动词省略, 而保留 to, 这样的动词(短语)常见的有 want、wish、expect、hope、(would) like、love、try、forget、prefer、mean、be going to、be about to、be supposed to 等。

—Will you go with me?

—Yes, I'd like to (go with you).

——你要和我一起去吗?

——是的, 非常乐意。

(2) 如果作宾语的不定式是 be 动词或完成时, 则需在 to 之后加上 be 或 have。

—Are you a doctor?

—No, but I want to be (a doctor).

——你是医生吗?

——不,但我希望是。

—He hasn't finished his homework.

—He ought to have (finished his homework).

——他还没有完成作业。

——他本应该完成的。

(3)两个或两个以上的不定式并列,第一个带 to,后面的常可省略 to。但如果两个不定式表示对比关系时,则 to 都不能省略。

My job is to look after the children and (to) teach them English.

我的任务是照顾孩子并教他们英语。

To be for the plan or to be against it doesn't matter.

赞成或反对这项计划都不要紧。

(4)当不定式作表语时,如果前面主语中出现实义动词 do 及其各种形式,则不定式中的 to 常可省略。

What he wants to do is (to) go home.

他想做的就是回家。

(5)感官动词和使役动词后面作宾语补足语的不定式要省略 to (help 后的 to 可带可不带)。

I saw a boy fall down from the tree.

我看见一个男孩从树上掉了下来。

I'll help you (to) do the work.

我会帮你做这项工作的。

(6)介词 but 前面有动词 do,后面的不定式可省略 to。

He can do nothing but lie down and sleep.

他无事可做只好躺下睡觉。

(二)并列句中的省略

并列句中后面分句与前面分句的相同部分常可省略。

They don't agree with you and neither do I (agree with you).

他们不同意你的意见,我也不同意。

She was poor but (she was) honest.

她虽然贫穷但是诚实。

(三)复合句中的省略

1. 宾语从句中的省略

(1)以特殊疑问词引导的宾语从句,若有与前面重复的内容,则可将重复内容省略,只保留特殊疑问词。

You are unhappy. Can you tell me why (you are unhappy)?

你不高兴。能告诉我为什么吗?

(2)当用 I'm afraid/I think/I believe/I hope/I guess 等作答句时,后面常用省略形式。

—Do you think it will rain?

—I guess so.

——你认为会下雨吗?

——我猜会。

I hope so.

我希望如此。

I hope not.

我希望不会。

I'm afraid so/not.

恐怕如此/不是。

I think/believe/guess/expect/suppose so.

我认为/相信/猜/希望/认为是这样的。

(3)在宾语从句中常省略连词,但当及物动词之后跟两个或两个以上的宾语从句时,只有第一个连词 that 可省略。

He told me (that) she was a beautiful girl and that she was clever.

他告诉我她是一个漂亮的女孩,而且很聪明。

2. 定语从句中的省略

(1)在限制性定语从句中作宾语的关系代词 that、which、whom 可省略。

He is one of the men (whom) I can trust.

他是我能信任的人之一。

(2)修饰 way 的关系副词 that (= in which) 可以省略。

This is the way (that/in which) he studies.

这就是他的学习方法。

(3)在非正式用语中,关系代词 as 后面的主谓结构可省略。

He gave the same answer as (he had given) before.

他给出了和以前一样的答案。

3. 状语从句中的省略

(1)在 if、as、though、as if、when、while、until 等引导的状语从句中,若谓语部分含有 be 动词,而主语又与主句的主语一致或从句主语是 it 时,从句的主语和谓语中的 be 动词可以一起省略。

If (I am) accepted, I can introduce Chinese painting skills to visitors, which can help them

know more about Chinese culture.

如果被录取,我可以向参观者介绍中国绘画技巧,从而帮助他们了解更多关于中国文化的知识。

When (she was) very young, she began to learn to play the piano.

她很小的时候就开始学习弹钢琴。

Don't come in until (you are) asked to.

没叫你时,请你不要进来。

He did as (he had been) told.

他按照被告知的那样去做了。

Though (they were) tired, they went on working.

虽然他们累了,但他们仍继续工作。

(2)在比较状语从句中 than 或 as 后面的部分可省略。

I'm taller than she (is).

我比她高。

I hate him as much as you (hate him).

我和你一样恨他。

4. 虚拟语气中的省略

在 if 引导的虚拟语气中,如果从句中含有助动词 were、had (done)或 should,则可省去 if,把 were、had 或 should 提到从句句首。

Had the governments and scientists not worked together, AIDS-related deaths would not have fallen since their highest in 2005.

要是没有政府和科学家的合作,与艾滋病相关的死亡人数就不会从 2005 年的最高峰降下来。

If John were here, he would know what to do.

= Were John here, he would know what to do.

要是约翰在这儿,他会知道怎么做。

If anything had happened, he would have let her know.

= Had anything happened, he would have let her know.

要是发生了什么事,他会让她知道的。

If she had lost her place, they all would be ruined.

= Had she lost her place, they all would be ruined.

要是她丢了职位,他们就都完了。

语法冲关

I. 语法填空

1. What he would like to do was walk (walk) home.
2. We could do nothing but arrive (arrive) early.
3. —What's the matter with Della?
—Well, her parents wouldn't allow her to go to the party, but she still hopes to.
4. —The war is very likely to break out in the near future.
—I am afraid so, if the situation goes as it is.
5. —Are you a volunteer now?
—No, but I used to be (be). I worked for the City Sports Meeting last year.
6. They landed safely on the island in the Pacific. Everything went on better than expected (expect).

II. 把下面句子改为省略句

1. I consider him to be lazy.
→I consider him lazy.
2. They may go if they wish to go.
→They may go if they wish to.
3. He paused as if he was expecting her to speak.
→He paused as if expecting her to speak.
4. Jack will sing at the party, but I know John won't sing at the party.
→Jack will sing at the party, but I know John won't.

Unit 6 课后素养评价 (二十三)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

result in; up to; emergency; leave out; more than; consist of; suffer from; on the way; forecast; grab; rescue; crisis

1. If I were you, I would grab the precious opportunity.
2. He left out the important information on purpose

when asked about the case.

3. Our country is like a big family, consisting of fifty-six nations.
4. An increase in cars has resulted in the decline of public transport.
5. I think we should work out a plan to deal with this crisis.

6. Completely disregarding his own safety, he rushed to rescue the people in danger.
7. We should never lose hope even if we suffer from failure.
8. It's forecast (ed) that he will make a carefully organised journey.
9. The forecasters say more snow is on the way, so we had better stay at home.
10. She has the ability to keep calm in an emergency.
11. This hotel located in the centre of the town can accommodate up to 500 guests.
12. According to the rule, you mustn't drive more than 30 kilometres per hour in the city.

II. 语法填空

1. The lake by the village is believed to have claimed (claim) a number of victims in the past 3 years.
2. The exhibition is more interesting than expected (expect).
3. Tom is an honest and reliable (rely) student.
4. Nobody knows precisely (precise) how many people are living in the camp.
5. The ballet school offers free places to children who are exceptionally (exceptional) talented.
6. On hearing (hear) the news, she was moved to tears.
7. China used to be known as the “kingdom of bicycles”.
8. Nearly a quarter of plant species are threatened (threat) with extinction.
9. They walked around the town looking for a place to eat.
10. I'm afraid you have taken the wrong ship. It heads for Shanghai.

III. 阅读理解

Maggie had never experienced an earthquake before, only prepared for it. As long as she could remember, preparing for an earthquake was routine (常规的) at school. Her family as well had made plans in the event of a natural disaster. Earthquakes are so much more common on the West Coast of the United States.

Today Maggie was home alone. Maggie knew her mum would be driving home on the busy freeway, thinking about preparing supper for Maggie's dad. Maggie's dad would arrive at the airport. He was coming home from a two-week business trip.

Maggie arrived home from school at the regular

time. She was taking some biscuits from the kitchen cupboard when she felt it. First just a tremor (微震), then the violent shaking. Maggie quickly ran under the large, wooden table in the dining room. The sounds of breaking glass and the crashing of many things were frightening. But the table remained undamaged, and Maggie hid herself in fear.

After what seemed like a century, the earthquake appeared to be over. Maggie could hear the sound of water rushing below her in the basement. The smell of natural gas was present in the air. Maggie knew where the main water valve (阀门) was located. Dad had shown her where it was and how to turn it off. Slowly and carefully, she came out from under the table. The once tidy home was now almost unrecognisable. As Maggie reached the open basement door, she could see the steps were still in good condition. She carefully made her way down into the dark basement. While still on the steps she felt the water rising and rising. Suddenly Maggie felt a lot of pain as a large ceiling beam (天花板梁) hit her head and shoulder. She fell onto some storage boxes...

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章描述了 Maggie 的第一次地震经历。

1. What do we know about Maggie and her family?
 - A. They lived in an earthquake zone.
 - B. They seldom prepared for an earthquake.
 - C. They had experienced an earthquake before.
 - D. They got an earthquake warning that morning.

A 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“... preparing for an earthquake was routine (常规的) at school. Her family as well had made plans in the event of a natural disaster. Earthquakes are so much more common on the West Coast of the United States.”可知, Maggie 一家住在地震多发的区域内。
2. What was Maggie doing when the earthquake took place?
 - A. She was about to clean her home.
 - B. She was about to enter her home.
 - C. She was looking for something to eat.
 - D. She was preparing supper for her family.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“she was taking some biscuits from the kitchen cupboard when she felt it.”可知,地震发生时, Maggie 正在找东西吃。
3. Why did Maggie go to the basement?
 - A. To close the basement door.

- B. To find some storage boxes.
 C. To turn off the main water valve.
 D. To check where the rising water came from.
- C 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“Maggie could hear the sound of water rushing below her in the basement.”和“Maggie knew where the main water valve (阀门) was located. Dad had shown her where it was and how to turn it off.”可知, Maggie 去地下室是为了关闭水阀。

4. What's the text mainly about?
 A. Maggie's first trip to the West Coast.
 B. Maggie's first earthquake experience.
 C. How Maggie survived a natural disaster.
 D. How Maggie prepared for an earthquake.
- B 主旨大意题。根据第一段中的“Maggie had never experienced an earthquake before”和接下来三段描述 Maggie 经历的地震过程可知, 本文主要描述了 Maggie 的第一次地震经历。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Understand the text by paying attention to the change of emotional words and the chronological order.
2. Think about how to deal with the challenges the natural disaster brings.
3. Deepen your understanding of the unit theme and the writing characteristics of safety guidelines for a natural disaster so that you can write flood safety guidelines.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Although the Yuanjiang River Basin is rich in food and water, the area is unsafe for the elephants, as they have **nowhere** to hide.
 什么地方都不, 无处
2. The student loan (贷款) programme has benefited millions of students who, like the Luo brothers, could not **otherwise** afford to attend college.
 否则, 要不然
3. As we all know, *fengyoujing* menthol water can protect against **mosquito** bites.
 蚊子
4. **Midnight** is twelve o'clock in the middle of the night.
 子夜, 午夜
5. The guidelines prohibit judges from renting houses or borrowing vehicles or other **property** from lawyers.
 所有物, 资产, 财产
6. It is reported that residents affected by the flood have been settled in a **shelter** with 26 tents.
 避难所
7. There is no doubt that the fighting is a major **threat** to stability (稳定) in the region.
 可能会带来危险的事
8. The little girl waited quietly with her hands in her **lap**.
 (坐着时的) 大腿部

9. It's reported that new consumer credit fell to \$3.7 **billion** in August.
 十亿
10. The Jinggang Mountains stand where the boundaries of four **counties** meet.
 县

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>sufficient</u> <i>adj.</i> 足够的, 充足的	sufficiency <i>n.</i> 充足
	sufficiently <i>adv.</i> 足够地, 充足地
<u>thankfully</u> <i>adv.</i> 感谢地, 感激地	thankful <i>adj.</i> 感谢的; 欣慰的
	thankfulness <i>n.</i> 感激
<u>reminder</u> <i>n.</i> 提示; 提醒的人/物	remind <i>v.</i> 提醒; 使想起
<u>inspire</u> <i>v.</i> 激发, 鼓舞; 启示	inspiration <i>n.</i> 激发; 鼓舞; 启示
	inspiring <i>adj.</i> 鼓舞人心的

III. 补全短语

1. all of a sudden 突然

2. keep on doing... 反复地做; 继续进行
3. have yet to 还没有
4. fly off 飞走
5. turn into 变成
6. in time 及时; 按时
7. feel like 觉得好像; 想做
8. make sure 确保, 保证
9. look out for 留意寻找
10. come back 回来
11. move on 继续前行
12. blow away 吹走; 刮走
13. stay away from 远离
14. get out 出去, 离开
15. so that 以便; 为了

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: be doing... when...

I was sitting in my room with my cat, Smartie, on my lap, when the roof just flew off.
我正坐在我的房间里, 猫咪斯玛蒂坐在我的大腿上, 这时突然房顶就飞走了。

2. 句型公式: so... that...

I was so frightened that I just froze.
我如此害怕以至于僵在了那里。

3. 句型公式: the moment 引导时间状语从句

He had disappeared the moment the storm hit.
暴风雨袭来的那一刻, 他就失踪了。

4. 句型公式: It was + 时间段 + before...

Although it was only a few days before we were rescued, it felt like months.

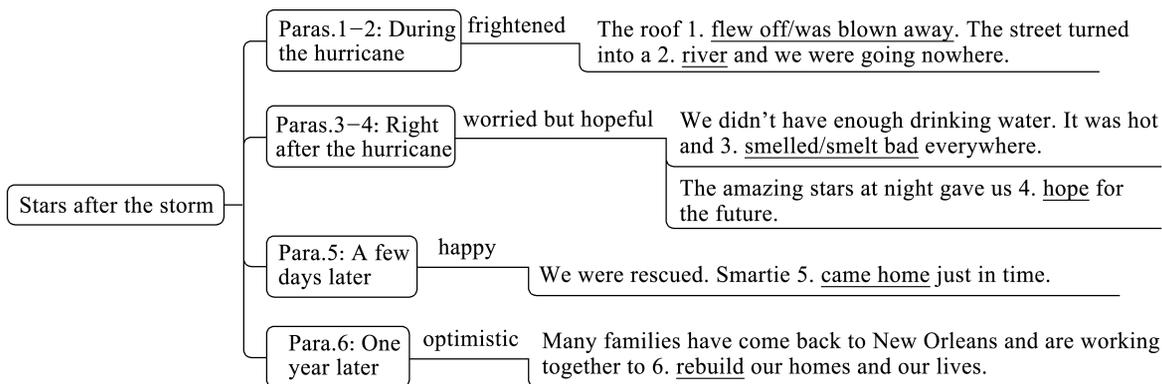
虽然几天后我们就得救了, 但却觉得好像过了好几个月。

任务型课堂

Part 1 课文理解

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What is the text mainly about?
 - A. The cat's being lost and found in the terrible storm.
 - B. The author's experience and optimistic attitude in the storm.
 - C. The stars looking more beautiful and attractive after the storm.
 - D. The author's habit of watching the stars after the storm.
2. What do we learn about the author's family?
 - A. The author's cat and the roof were blown away.

- B. Mom succeeded in running out of the room.
- C. They went out by boat on the "street river".
- D. It became unsafe for them to stay at home.

3. What sort of attitude to life is reflected in the author's experience of looking at the night sky?
 - A. Positive.
 - B. Unfriendly.
 - C. Negative.
 - D. Indifferent.

答案: 1~3 BDA

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. But Mom said that whatever happens, we should always try to see the good side of things.
[句子分析]本句是一个复合句。that 引导宾语从句, that 可以省略; whatever 引导让步状语从句。

[尝试翻译] 不过妈妈说不管发生什么,我们都应该尽量看到事情好的一面。

2. We were so happy to take him with us, although then, none of us knew that we wouldn't be back for quite a while.

[句子分析] 本句是一个复合句。although 引导让步状语从句, that 引导宾语从句。

[尝试翻译] 我们很高兴带他一起去,虽然那时候我们谁也不知道我们要很长时间才能回来。

Part 2 语言梳理

1. threat *n.* 威胁,可能会带来危险的人(事)

[教材原文] Read these tips on hurricane safety so that you and your family can survive this common **threat** to coastal cities.

阅读这些关于飓风安全的建议,以便你和你的家人能够在沿海城市所面临的这种常见的威胁中生存下来。

[归纳拓展]

(1) a threat to... 对……是个威胁

(2) threaten *v.* 威胁,恐吓

threaten to do sth. 威胁做某事

threaten sb. with... 用……威胁某人

(3) threatening *adj.* 恐吓的,具有威胁性的

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① (2024·浙江1月卷) Airplanes seed threatening (threaten) storm cells with a chemical to make small ice crystals fall as rain before they can grow into dangerous hailstones.

② The storm clouds threatened the city with heavy rain and strong winds.

(2) 写作微练

① (读后续写之场景描写) 不断上涨的洪水威胁着要淹没这个城镇。

The rising floodwaters threatened to flood the town.

② (读后续写之动作描写) 这只野生动物摆出一副威胁性的姿态,随时准备攻击。

The wild animal showed a threatening pose, ready to attack at any moment.

2. It was + 时间段 + before... 过了多久……就/才……

[教材原文] Although it was only a few days before

思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. What was the author doing when the roof flew off during the hurricane?

He was sitting in his room with his cat on his lap.

2. What do you think could be done to help the local people rebuild their homes?

答案:略

we were rescued, it felt like months.

虽然几天后我们就得救了,但却觉得好像过了好几个月。

[句式分析] 本句中 before 引导时间状语从句,表示“过了多久……就/才……”。

[归纳拓展]

(1) before 作连词引导时间状语从句时,在句中的译法很灵活,通常表示“在……之前”“……之后才……”“不多久就……”。

(2) It was not long before... 不久……就……

It will be + 时间段 + before... 要过多久……才……

It will not be long before... ……不久就会……

[即学即练]

(1) 语法填空

① It will be (be) many years before the effects of climate change can be fully reversed.

② It was not long before they became good friends.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之事件描写) 过了几天他才意识到自己的错误。

It was a few days before he realised his mistake.

多义词汇 专练

property A. *n.* 性质;特性 B. *n.* 房地产

C. *n.* 财产;财物

① The price of **property** has risen enormously. B

② Be careful not to damage other people's **property**. C

③ A radio signal has both electrical and magnetic **properties**. A

Unit 6 课后素养评价 (二十四)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

- We learned how to make a fire without matches and create a shelter (庇护所) with branches and grass.
- It is everybody's duty to take good care of public property (财物).
- This animal is found in Australia, and nowhere (无处) else.
- He left at midnight (午夜) so that he could make it to the customer's house on time.
- A third of Africa is under the threat (威胁) of desertification.
- Up to five million people a year visit the county (县).
- Only when agriculture is fully developed can industry have sufficient (充足的) materials and markets.

II. 语法填空

- I was preparing for my tomorrow's test when suddenly loud noises came into my room.
- Billions (billion) of dollars each year are spent on schools and libraries.
- In spite of the heavy rain, we keep on playing (play) football in the playground.
- Vince heard the news that the Chinese soccer team lost the game again, tears running (run) down his face.
- Having been selected for the team to play matches, he was given a chance to prove (prove) himself.
- This land used by them for hunting was turned into farms.
- At this time there is nothing to take action on since the analysis has yet to be completed (complete).

III. 短语填空

make sure; have yet to; look out for; all of a sudden; keep on; stay away from; move on

- If you don't like cold weather, stay away from northern schools.
- The fine (细微的) detail of the plan has yet to be worked out.
- All of a sudden, he lost his balance and fell down.
- Although she admits it is a difficult task, she has accepted it and moved on.
- This is a great place for camping but you have to look out for snakes and spiders—Australia has some of the most dangerous in the world.
- He made sure the teens had a pleasant experience in the restaurant.
- The monkey keeps on doing the task, even without being rewarded (奖赏) for doing it.

IV. 完成句子

- Whenever you come, you are welcome.
无论你什么时候来,我们都欢迎你。
- So slow did he drive that we failed to arrive in time for our flight to Hawaii.
他开得太慢了,以致我们没能及时赶上飞往夏威夷的航班。
- This picture reminded me of the happy time with my grandparents.
这张照片让我想起了与祖父母在一起的欢乐时光。
- Not only the students but also the teacher was against the plan.
不仅学生,连老师也反对这个计划。
- We didn't know his telephone number; otherwise we would have telephoned him.
我们不知道他的电话号码,否则我们就会给他打电话。

6. I was taking a walk along the lake when it began to rain.

我正沿着湖边散步,这时天下起雨来了。

7. The moment he closed his eyes, he fell asleep.

他一闭上眼睛就睡着了。

8. He told me that it was five days before his son came back.

他告诉我五天后他儿子才回来。

V. 语法填空

On February 16, 1861, a big earthquake struck Sumatra, an Indonesian island. The earthquake shook the western side of the island, **1. causing** (cause) a tsunami (海啸). That wall of water poured onto shore, destroying towns and taking thousands of **2. lives** (life).

Recently, though, a team of scientists discovered that another earthquake occurred before this deadly event. According to the record, that earthquake **3. started** (start) in 1829 and lasted for 32 years but no one felt even one shake. This kind of slow-moving earthquakes **4. is called** (call) “silent earthquakes” because no instrument can find them. Scientists have only begun discovering them because **5. of** the advances in BDS technology in the last twenty years.

6. To figure (figure) out what is going on under the ground, scientists need to study earthquakes. Every earthquake, either small **7. or** big, can teach scientists something about how much the ground will shake in the future. Unluckily, no one can predict (预测) when an earthquake will hit. Scientists just have to prepare to study all earthquakes **8. that** strike.

But silent earthquakes like the one in Sumatra change the game for scientists. These silent earthquakes happen all over **9. the** world. Sometimes, a silent earthquake happens just before a regular one, both of which might be related. By

studying silent earthquakes, scientists hope to better understand regular earthquakes and **10. possibly** (possible) predict them.

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

沙尘暴、酸雨等自然灾害与人类活动密切相关。请以沙尘暴和酸雨为例,根据下面的提示用英语写一篇保护环境的短文,呼吁人们爱护生态环境,造福后代。

1. 原因:人类过度砍伐;乱排放污染物。
2. 措施:植树造林,养护树木;打击破坏环境的行为等。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:沙尘暴 sandstorm;酸雨 acid rain

【参考范文】

For many years, people have cut down too many forests for their own benefit but haven't replanted the trees. So when it rains, soil is washed away and large areas of land become desert. And sandstorms occur when the strong wind blows. Besides, many factories pour untreated water into rivers directly, and release poisonous gas into the air, which causes acid rain.

To protect our earth, we should stop such destruction. We should plant more trees and take good care of them. What's more, laws must be made to monitor or punish those who damage the environment.

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

The dog whimpered (呜咽) and pawed (抓挠) at the leg of the dead man.

“It's no good,” said the boy. “He's not going to move. He's...”

He couldn't bring himself to say the word dead. Instead, he said, “Passed on.”

The dog whimpered again and then sat on the ground. It looked at the boy expectantly as if waiting for his advice.

The boy looked up at the steep cliff face (峭壁) and pointed in that direction. “That’s where we have to go,” he said. “We have to go up there before the sun sets. Somehow or other. That’s the only way we can get home.”

The dog gave one more whimper and began to walk downhill as if refusing to accept his suggestion.

“Not down there. This way, let’s go home,” the boy shouted hurriedly, waiting for the dog to return. The dog turned around and looked at the boy for a while. But then it continued its own journey.

“Come back. Not that way. It’s too far. And you might get lost,” the boy shouted at the dog again.

The dog paid no attention this time and soon disappeared behind a clump of ferns (蕨类植物). The boy followed without thinking twice. Soon the boy lost all sense of where he was. The golden red sun was setting and it was getting cold. The only direction he could be sure of was down. And suddenly he was on his own.

“Come back, dog,” he shouted. “Don’t leave me. I’ll freeze. And so will you.” There was no reply

from the silent forest. He looked around and up. One gum tree loomed (赫然耸现) above all the others.

“I won’t move out of sight of that gum tree,” he thought to himself. He didn’t dare to go far, just circling the gum tree.

“Where are you hiding, dog?” he said.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

Minutes passed, and then an hour or more. He walked slowly in a big circle, always keeping the gum tree in sight. While walking around, he also had to push through the bush. Sometimes, he made some noise on purpose to cheer himself up because it was so quiet in the forest. “I’m looking for you, honey,” he called. “Can you hear me? Or are you back on the road? Have you forgotten me? Left me? It’s getting colder.”

The words had no sooner left his lips than he saw the dog. It just stood still in front of the boy in a small open space, dirty and hungry. “Are you okay, my dear dog?” the boy shouted in an excited voice and immediately rushed over to hug the dog. This time, the dog didn’t refuse and softly licked the boy’s hand in return. It was obvious that it was also happy to see the boy again. Happily, the boy and the dog went home together just before the sun set.

迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

Part 1 应用文写作

——安全指南

○写作指导

安全指南属于指导性说明文,此类写作的特点是目的明确、简洁明了、步骤清晰、操作性强。在写作中要注意其语言特点和叙述特点。

(一)语言特点

1. 多用一般现在时。
2. 多用祈使句。
3. 多用简单句。所写的句子尽量简洁明了,以短句、简单句为主,能使读者一目了然。

(二)叙述特点

按类别分层展开叙述。每个事项用一个或多个句子表达,这样能使层次清晰,切忌用一个句子表达几个事项。罗列信息点时,按主次、详略、类别、时间等顺序排列,以确定先写什么后写什么。用文字表示时,必须做到明确清楚,不能含糊其词。

○典题示例

假如你是李华,你们学校最近开展了创建“平安校园”活动,本周校报谈论的主题是“发生地震时如何保护自己”。请你以“Earthquake Safety Guidelines”为题写一篇英语短文。内容要点如下:

1. 地震来临前,做好充分准备,准备好救生包,里面有手电筒、电池、水、食物和急救包等。
2. 地震来临时,不要惊慌。如果在室外请远离大树、高楼等。如果在室内,要尽量躲在桌子等坚固的家具下面,并且注意保护好头部、颈部。逃生时不要选择乘坐电梯。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:救生包 emergency kit;手电筒 flashlight;软垫 cushion

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	说明文
时态	一般现在时
人称	以第二、三人称为主
要点	1. 地震前的准备; 2. 发生地震时要做的事; 3. 发生地震时不要做的事。

Step 2: 要点补全

- ① Have an emergency kit which is filled with (装满) flashlights, batteries, water, food and a first-aid kit in your home.
- ② Be sure to plan (一定要计划) escape routes and make sense of (了解) your environment.
- ③ Get under a strong table with a cushion protecting your head (用一个软垫护住你的头)。
- ④ Try to get into an open area (尽力去一个空旷的地方) which is away from trees, buildings, fences and walls.

Step 3: 句式升级

- ① 用过去分词短语作后置定语升级 Step 2 中的句①
Have an emergency kit filled with flashlights, batteries, water, food, and a first-aid kit in your home.
- ② 用介词短语作后置定语升级 Step 2 中的句④

Try to get into an open area away from trees, buildings, fences, and walls.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Earthquake Safety Guidelines

An earthquake is unexpected and can break out at any time. Read these tips on earthquake safety so you and your family can survive.

Things to do before an earthquake

Have an emergency kit filled with flashlights, batteries, water, food, and a first-aid kit in your home.

Be sure to plan escape routes and make sense of your environment.

Listen to the radio for the latest news.

Things to do during an earthquake

Get under a strong table with a cushion protecting your head. Don't go anywhere near the window and don't go out onto the balcony.

Try to get into an open area away from trees, buildings, fences, and walls.

Things not to do during an earthquake

Don't be nervous and keep calm.

Never use the lift.

○学以致用

夏季是水灾多发季节,请根据下列要点,以“Flood Safety Guidelines”为题写一篇英语短文。

- 洪水来临前,准备足够的食物和水,以及一些救生衣、手电筒、电池和急救包等。

- 洪水来临时,要转移到高的安全的地方,要远离电源,不要喝不干净的水,不要带太多的个人财物在身上。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:救生衣 life jacket; 财物 belongings

【参考范文】

Flood Safety Guidelines

Things to do before a flood

The first thing to do is listen to the weather warnings.

Move to a safe place immediately if there is an order.

Prepare enough food and enough clean water.

Remember to prepare some life jackets, flashlights, batteries, and first-aid kits.

Things to do during a flood

Try to move to a place high enough to keep clear of floodwater, such as the top floor of a building, the roof, etc.

Hold on to a tree or a wooden block if you are in water.

It's important to keep away from electricity.

Things not to do during a flood

Do not take too many personal belongings with you.

Never give up hope.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

On one stormy afternoon last year, I was running home from school with my umbrella when I heard a bird start to sing. Out of curiosity, I went to have a look. Then I saw a brightly colourful bird nesting in a big tree. But the nest suddenly fell off.

With mercy and love, I decided to see if the bird had a chance to survive. Just as I went closer, I noticed a little head sticking out of the nest. I found that it had a wet broken wing, so it couldn't fly. It looked so weak as if it were dying. So I placed it gently in my hand and covered it with my umbrella.

I carefully took it home and thought down the road how to explain this to my parents. What if they would

not want it and throw it away? I could not take that chance, so I went out and put it in the back garden and gave it a warm blanket for the night.

In the following days, I went to school as usual, but somehow, I fell in love with biology class, especially when the teacher explained something about birds. I learned to feed the bird, and I hurried to care for it when the school was over. It was slowly recovering and growing. Holiday came at last. I couldn't help telling my good friends about it. Then we secretly went to the back garden to look at my lovely bird. However, we were amazed to find that it had been missing.

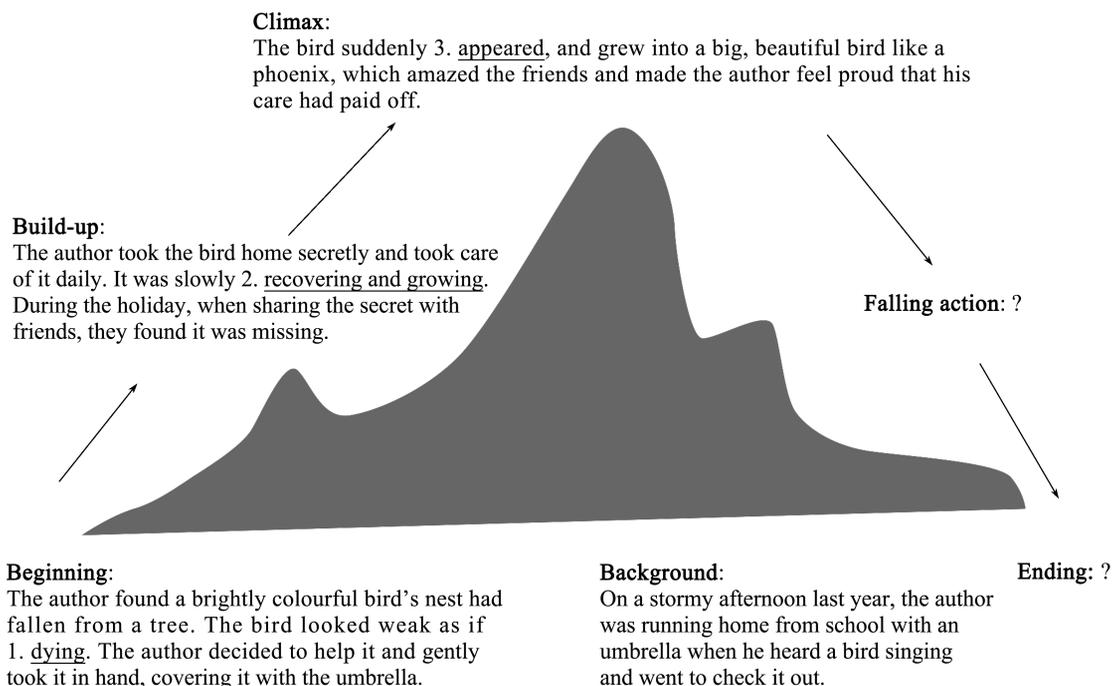
Just as I thought where it had gone, a great surprise came all of a sudden. I found it staring at my cat in the distance. Catching sight of my appearance, it turned and came towards me. So I went to get it some water and birdseed. It was then that I found it grew into a big bird like a phoenix (凤凰) in the fairy tale. My friends all praised it, "What a beautiful bird it is!" Hearing their words, I felt truly proud. Fortunately, my care was not in vain but paid off.

任务一: 阅读文章, 回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

The author took the baby bird home and put it in the back garden. The author learned how to feed the bird from biology class. The baby bird slowly recovered and grew up under the care of the author. And it paid off.

任务二: 梳理故事情节, 完成故事山 (Story Mountain)。



任务三:回答下面的问题,并根据段落开头提示语,构思和完善故事发展情节。

<p>Paragraph 1:</p> <p>Suddenly, my parents appeared in the back garden. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. How did the author feel when his parents suddenly appeared in the back garden?</p> <p><u>The author was a little nervous because he had hidden the truth about the bird.</u></p> <p>2. What did the author do next?</p> <p><u>The author asked his parents' permission to keep the bird.</u></p> <p>3. What was the parents' attitude to keeping the bird?</p> <p><u>They reminded him that birds belonged to nature and they needed a wider world.</u></p>
<p>Paragraph 2:</p> <p>Some days later, my friends and I wondered what to do with the bird. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. What might the suggestion made by the author's best friend be?</p> <p><u>The author's best friend offered to ask for their biology teacher for help.</u></p> <p>2. What may be their decision?</p> <p><u>They decided to set the bird free in the woods.</u></p> <p>3. How did they react when watching the bird fly away?</p> <p><u>They all cheered when watching the bird flapping its wings and flying away.</u></p>

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

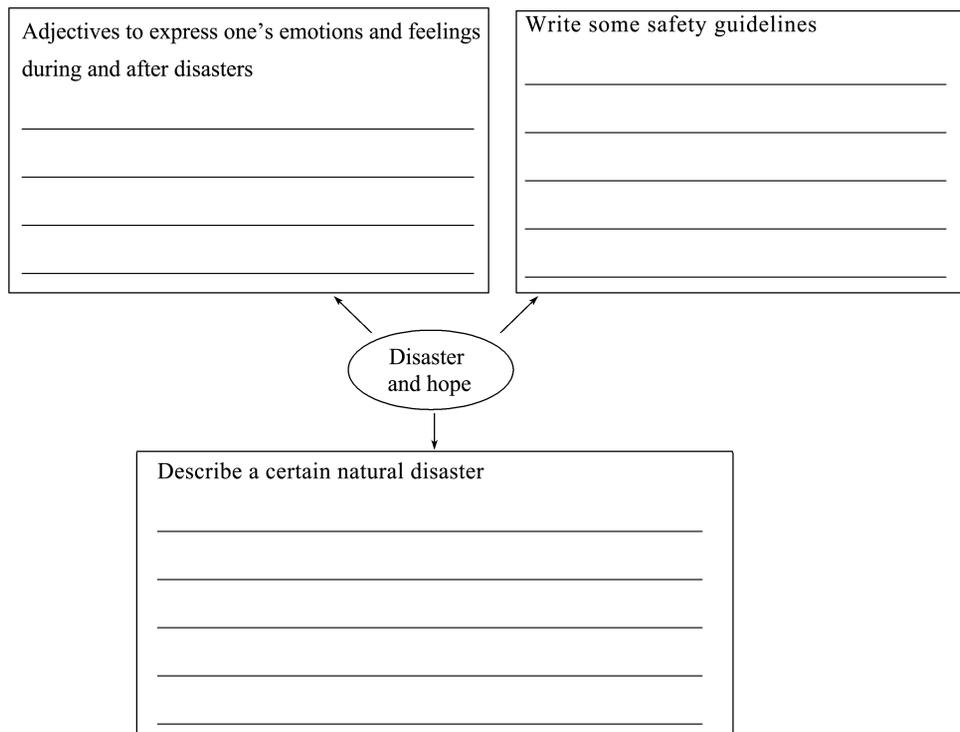
Suddenly, my parents appeared in the back garden. At first, I was a little nervous because I hid the truth about it. At that time, I had to ask them, "May I have a phoenix-like bird as a pet?" To my great relief, Mum looked at the bird and me in surprise and said, "You can keep it as long as you can take care of it." I reacted quickly, "I promise." But Dad added thoughtfully, "But dear, birds belong to nature. They need a wider world."

Some days later, my friends and I wondered what to do with the bird. My best friend offered to ask our biology teacher for help. Everyone thought it was a good idea. After learning the details of the bird's release, we decided to set it free. It was another afternoon. We came to the woods, where the streams were flowing, and the birds were singing in the trees. We believed it was a good place for my lovely bird to live. Watching the bird flapping its wings and flying away, we all cheered.

★ ★ ★ 重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。



答案:略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

Natural disasters take many different forms and can happen without warning. Earthquakes, floods, volcanoes, droughts, typhoons and hurricanes are all natural disasters.

The earthquake on December 26th, 2004 resulted in one of the worst natural disasters in living memory. It was a massive underwater quake and occurred in the Indian Ocean. This caused a huge tsunami to cross the Indian Ocean. It destroyed coastlines and communities and brought death and destruction to many people. The survivors needed fresh water, food and shelters as well as medical help. People from all over the world gave money so that towns and villages could be rebuilt.

The surface of the earth is not always looked as it does today; it is moving continuously and has done so for billions of years. This is one cause of earthquakes, when one section of the earth collides with another. Scientists can predict where this might happen and the area between plates is called a fault line. However,

earthquakes do not always happen on fault lines, which is why they are so dangerous and unpredictable.

Volcanoes happen where the earth's crust is thin—lava, dust and gases erupt from beneath the earth. They can rise into a massive cone shape—like a mountain and erupt, or they can be so violent that they just explode directly from the earth with no warning.

Hurricanes are extremely strong storms and often happen in the Caribbean. They cause high winds, huge waves, and heavy flooding and can cross hundreds of miles.

Floods happen in many countries after very heavy rainfall. When rain pours for weeks at a time and rivers overflow, people and property can be trapped or simply washed away.

Another kind of natural disaster is drought. This happens when there is no water—when it doesn't rain for a long time and rivers dry up. This causes crops to fail, animals to die and sadly, people to starve.

All the disasters are very dangerous, but they are nowhere near the most dangerous. One type of events in the earth's history has regularly killed millions of beings: the asteroid impact, which causes massive destruction and sometimes kills entire species, including all the dinosaurs. Disasters on the earth may seem dangerous, but the biggest threat to humans is likely to come from space.

1. What did people from all over the world do when the tsunami occurred in the Indian Ocean?

- A. They aided the search for the victims.
- B. They gave away money to the beggars.
- C. They offered sponsorship to help the survivors.
- D. They rebuilt the coastlines and communities.

2. What is Paragraph 3 mainly about?

- A. Why earthquakes happen.
- B. What earthquakes destroy.
- C. How we can prevent earthquakes.
- D. When earthquakes happen.

3. Where does the author think the most dangerous natural disaster will come from?

- A. Space.
- B. The tsunami.
- C. Drought.
- D. The hurricane.

答案:1~3 CAA

单元质量评估(六)

I. 阅读理解

A

Cheapest Islands in the World to Visit

Grand Bahama Island, The Bahamas

As the northernmost of the 700 islands of the Bahamas, Grand Bahama offers plenty of cheap activities alongside its white-sand beaches. Visiting Lucayan National Park, which is home to both beloved Gold Rock Beach and one of the largest underwater cave (洞穴) systems in the world, is an affordable trip. There are hotel rooms at \$80 a night.

Madeira, Portugal

Though closer to mainland Africa, Madeira is a part of Portugal known for its breathtaking natural beauty. Visitors can find hotels starting at \$85 a night, and enjoy plenty of low-cost activities, such as rowing a boat around the volcanic Porto Moniz natural swimming pools, and admiring the never-ending views around the island. No wonder it's been called the "Hawaii of Europe".

Dominican Republic

Looking for one of the least expensive Caribbean islands? The Dominican Republic is full of affordable surprises. In Santo Domingo, if you walk around Zona Colonial, the historic heart of the country's capital, you'll find castles, cathedrals (教堂), cobblestone streets, and cafés around every corner. During the low season (summer), you can find hotel deals starting at \$33 a night.

Sri Lanka

Do you want to spend only \$25—\$50 a day? Then go to Sri Lanka. Since the South Asian island country is one of the largest tea producers in the world, you can start with a tea factory tour during a peaceful hike. Taking a train ride through the hills from Kandy to Badulla or from Colombo to Galle is

an enjoyable and affordable way to see the countryside.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了四处适合观光,且花费很便宜的岛屿。

1. What can you do in Lucayan National Park?

- A. Visit a huge castle.
- B. Enjoy the beautiful beach.
- C. Swim in Porto Moniz.
- D. Go on a tea factory tour.

B 细节理解题。根据 Grand Bahama Island, The Bahamas 部分中的“Visiting Lucayan National Park, which is home to both beloved Gold Rock Beach and one of the largest underwater cave (洞穴) systems in the world, is an affordable trip.”可知,在 Lucayan 国家公园可以欣赏美丽的海滩。故选 B。

2. What is special about Zona Colonial?

- A. It requires booking.
- B. It has historic sites.
- C. It is famous for tea.
- D. It is closed in summer.

B 细节理解题。通读全文并根据 Dominican Republic 部分中的“In Santo Domingo, if you walk around Zona Colonial, the historic heart of the country's capital, you'll find castles, cathedrals (教堂), cobblestone streets, and cafés around every corner.”可知,本文介绍的其他地方都是以自然风光为主,而 Zona Colonial 尤以历史古迹著称,所以 Zona Colonial 的特殊之处就在于它的历史古迹。故选 B。

3. Which of the following would provide a hotel room at the lowest price?

- A. Dominican Republic. B. The Bahamas.
- C. Portugal. D. Sri Lanka.

D 细节理解题。对比文中四处旅游景点的酒店价格,根据文中“‘There are hotel rooms at \$80 a night.’”“‘Visitors can find hotels starting at \$85 a night.’”“you

can find hotel deals starting at \$33 a night”以及“Do you want to spend only \$25—\$50 a day?”可知,Sri Lanka 可以提供最便宜的客房。故选 D。

B

In a deadly wildfire that broke out in California, an unusual friendship was formed between a cat and a chicken that stayed together to survive the fire.

The Grass Valley firefighters found the pair on their second day of cleaning up during the wildfire in a neighbourhood near Redding. “The animals had survived one of the most serious fires in memory, finding comfort in each other in the doorway of a home,” Grass Valley Fire Chief Mark Buttron wrote on the Internet.

The cat and the chicken were both burned and needed treatment for their injuries. Firefighters quickly found water and called the Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals. The animals shared a carrier so they could wait together until being taken to receive medical treatment.

Niko Kuyper, the owner of the chicken, didn't know what had happened until a neighbour saw his animal on the news and called him. Kuyper recognised the chicken as the most energetic of the six hens he owns. He was even more surprised to see his chicken lying close to Whiskers, another neighbour's cat.

Though Whiskers has to visit the hospital every day to deal with her injuries, and her whiskers were burned by the fire, she has been sent to her family. Kuyper took the chicken to his parents' house where it is being introduced to a new group of hens. Both animals are expected to recover from their injuries.

The pair's friendship provided small hope for those affected by the wildfires. “Everyone in our area lost their homes,” Kuyper said. “It's nice to see something good like this shining through.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。美国加利福尼亚州的一场火灾过后,消防员在救援时发现一只猫和一只母鸡躲在一起,它们成功在大火中生存下来。

4. What happened to a cat and a chicken?

- A. They lived together peacefully.
- B. They caused a big fire together.
- C. They survived a big wildfire together.
- D. They hid together to avoid firefighters.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“that stayed together to survive the fire”可知,这两只小动物一起躲过了火灾。

5. How did Kuyper know the news about the two animals?

- A. He was told by a neighbour.
- B. He read it in the newspaper.
- C. He met with them in the hospital.
- D. He got in touch with the firefighter.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“Niko Kuyper, the owner of the chicken, didn't know what had happened until a neighbour saw his animal on the news and called him.”可知,Kuyper 的邻居看到了新闻,并且告诉了他。

6. What is happening to the chicken?

- A. She is still in the hospital.
- B. She lives with other hens.
- C. She has recovered completely.
- D. She lives together with her owner.

B 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“Kuyper took the chicken to his parents' house where it is being introduced to a new group of hens.”可知,这只母鸡现在被主人带到他父母的家里,与一群新的母鸡生活在一起。

7. How is the news according to Kuyper?

- A. It is encouraging. B. It is interesting.
- C. It is moving. D. It is lovely.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知,Kuyper 认为在这场大火给人们带来巨大灾难的时候能有这样一条积极的新闻是振奋人心的。

C

Earthquakes are common natural disasters. No matter where you are, knowing how to protect yourself and your family during an earthquake is necessary.

Some experts believe that when you feel the ground is shaking, drop down, take cover under a desk and hold on. Most earthquake injuries are the result of being hit by something falling on you. You should stay indoors until the shaking stops. If you are outdoors, don't stay near buildings, trees or power lines. Many people think that in case of an earthquake, they should "get under something" like a doorway or desk, in order to avoid being hurt by falling objects. Rescue experts now say this is the wrong thing to do. For example, in the 1985 Mexico City earthquake, they found hundreds of children in schools, crushed by their desks. However, they could have survived by lying in the aisle (过道) next to their desks.

So find a nice piece of furniture, a chair, a sofa, and lie down, or curl up next to it. A falling roof may compact (压实) the furniture, but will still leave a space for you to survive next to it. This also holds true if you are in a hotel room, especially at night. Get off the bed, and lie down next to it.

In San Francisco's 1989 earthquake, the upper freeway fell on the lower one. People who drove along were crushed in their cars. But they had time to get out and lie down next to their cars. Yes, their cars were crushed, but there was space from top to bottom next to the vehicles for people to survive and wait for a rescue. Doorways and stairways are very unsafe. Stay away from those.

What can we do to keep ourselves safe? Staying calm is the first and most important rule when facing accidents.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要讲的是如何在地震中保护自己和家人。

8. Which word can replace the underlined word "crushed" in Paragraph 2?

- A. Hidden. B. Protected.
C. Caught. D. Killed.

D 词义猜测题。根据画线词所在句及下一句可知,那些躲在课桌下的孩子被压死了,因此

crushed 意为“killed”。故选 D。

9. How can we probably get a narrow escape from an earthquake?

- A. Lie down under a table or desk.
B. Shout out loudly and ask for help.
C. Run out of the house and stay under a big tree.
D. Lie down next to a strong piece of furniture or a car.

D 推理判断题。根据第三段的内容和倒数第二段中的“*Yes, their cars were crushed, but there was space from top to bottom next to the vehicles for people to survive and wait for a rescue.*”可知,在一件结实的家具或一辆汽车旁边躺下可以使我们从地震中死里逃生。故选 D。

10. What should you do first when accidents happen according to this passage?

- A. Keep calm.
B. Drop down.
C. Get under buildings.
D. Stay near trees.

A 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“*Staying calm is the first and most important rule when facing accidents.*”可知,当意外发生时,你应该首先保持冷静。故选 A。

11. What is the best title of the text?

- A. Right Earthquake Survival Tips
B. The New Idea of the Rescue Experts
C. Great Damages Caused by Earthquakes
D. A Common Natural Disaster—Earthquake

A 标题归纳题。根据第一段的内容,再结合文章主要讲的是如何在地震中保护自己和家人可知,A选项“正确的地震求生技巧”最适合作为文章标题。故选 A。

D

It's a warm June afternoon, and in a group of bushes and trees, a bird sings. A small insect climbs over a leaf. The Muziekplein forest, next to an 18-story building and a railway line, is about the size of a basketball court; before it was planted in 2018, the area was a parking place. The forest is one of

seven such extremely small forests in the Dutch city of Utrecht, and 144 across the Netherlands. By the end of this year, according to IVN Nature Education, the organisation proposing the country's initiative, there will be 200.

Since the first forest was planted in the Netherlands in 2015, the concept has become popular. Daan Bleichrodt, who launched IVN's Tiny Forest initiative with the goal of making it easier for children to get into and connect with nature, said that he thinks it is popular because people are becoming more aware of major environmental challenges. It's a very practical way to do something positive in the light of climate change and loss of biodiversity.

Jeroen Schenkels, a senior adviser for the city of Utrecht on green planning, said he sees the mini-forests as nature-based approaches that are able to help the city weather heat waves and improve water retention (保持). But one of the biggest interests is social. "One of the most important things is that they give people the opportunity to be involved in nature in the neighbourhood," Schenkels said.

Between 2018 and 2020, 40 different plant and animal groups and 121 total animal species were found in the Muziekplein forest alone. According to Wageningen University & Research researchers, across the 11 tiny forests in their study, volunteers observed 636 animal species. They also identified 298 plant species in addition to the original species planted in the plots. Maintenance of the forests occasionally involves removing aggressive weeds, but in general new plant species, such as wildflowers that appear, are allowed to grow.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。荷兰城市里的微型森林不仅可以帮助城市抵御热浪、提高蓄水能力,还使人们有更多机会接触周围的自然环境。

12. What is special about the Muziekplein forest?

- A. It is newly planted.
- B. It sits in an urban area.

C. It grows along a railway.

D. It is shaped like a basketball court.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“The forest is one of seven such extremely small forests in the Dutch city of Utrecht, and 144 across the Netherlands.”可知,该森林位于城镇区域。故选 B。

13. What's the purpose of the Tiny Forest initiative?

- A. To call for action on climate change.
- B. To increase the Netherlands' biodiversity.
- C. To warn people of environmental challenges.
- D. To make nature more accessible to children.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Daan Bleichrodt, who launched IVN's Tiny Forest initiative with the goal of making it easier for children to get into and connect with nature”可知, Daan Bleichrodt 发起微型森林计划的目的是让孩子们更容易接近大自然。故选 D。

14. What does Paragraph 3 focus on?

- A. Benefits of mini-forests in cities.
- B. Ways to keep neighbourhoods green.
- C. Inspiration for planting forests in cities.
- D. Importance of being exposed to nature.

A 段落大意题。根据第三段的内容可知,城市里的微型森林不仅可以帮助城市抵御热浪,提高蓄水能力,还使人们有更多机会接触周围的自然环境,故本段主要关注的是城市里的微型森林的益处。故选 A。

15. How does the author state the forests' effect on biodiversity?

- A. By doing experiments.
- B. By giving examples.
- C. By listing figures.
- D. By making comparisons.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知,作者主要是通过一些数据来提供相关的信息。故选 C。

II. 七选五

The public library was less than five minutes'

walk from my home. It was open for three hours in the evening. Every evening, I would rush to the library after school. 16 Without waiting for the librarian to get things ready, I would just turn on the lights in the kids' section (区域) and start reading.

Every day, fifteen minutes before the actual closing time, the librarian would start announcements and ask people to leave. As a child, I didn't have a library card, so I couldn't take my half-read books with me. 17 Knowing about my love for books, the librarian started making announcements about the closure only in other sections, and the cleaning lady would leave the lights on for me while tidying up the rest of the library. 18 Then five minutes before the closure, I would join them in locking up. Very soon, I became part of their opening and closing team!

Five years passed by, and there, I had read most of the books in the kids' and basic science sections. The librarian always smiled at me and introduced new books to me. Later, during my college days, I would go there to get a quiet place to study. The librarian would simply give me reading room keys and let me stay there. 19

After my graduation, I moved away and stopped visiting that library. 20 I saw a new librarian and heard those elderly people had retired. What a pity! I owe that silent librarian and the sweet cleaning lady my thanks.

- A. Recently, I went to the library again.
- B. This gave me another ten minutes to read.
- C. I managed to stay in the library the whole day.
- D. Usually, I would get there ten minutes ahead of the opening time.
- E. I would have to put those books back and left with unwillingness.
- F. The librarian was the kind of man who just did not look approachable.
- G. Studying in the library benefited me a lot throughout my college time.

答案:16~20 DEBGA

III. 完形填空

A series of severe thunderstorms struck our area recently. Heavy rains, strong winds, and lots of lightning had 21 flash flooding and even swept down trees. I had spent the afternoon 22 branches out of my yard. Then just before I was getting ready to take my dogs for their last walk of the day the 23 came on my television and over my phone that another storm was 24.

I quickly took my dogs outside. Huge and 25 clouds were rolling in while thunder 26 over the hills. Despite this, I knew that the stars were shining and the moon was smiling up 27 but I just couldn't see them. The blink of light, up high, at the far end of the meadow (草坪) might hide behind my house. I smiled. It amazed me how far their light 28 in the darkness of the night and how they didn't seem 29 at all by the approaching storm. I felt that the 30 no longer seemed so scary and that my fear had been replaced with relief and joy.

Life does have its share of storms, some caused by 31 and some caused by us. We can't go through life being scared of them, 32. We are here to shine our light. We are here to share our love. We are bound to ride through the 33, clean up after them, and make this world a better place. Light may seem tiny but we will be 34 at how far it can be seen and how easily it can 35 the dark away.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者在经历暴风雨时的感悟。

21. A. reserved B. caused
C. witnessed D. indicated
- B 根据常识以及“Heavy rains, strong winds”和“flash flooding”的关系可推知,大雨和强风引发了洪水。故选B。
22. A. cutting down B. throwing up
C. picking up D. looking for

C 根据上文的“and even swept down trees”和下文的“out of my yard”可知,院子里有很多树枝,作者将它们捡起并放在院子外面。故选 C。

23. A. expectations B. details
C. signals D. warnings

D 根据下文的“that another storm was 24”可知,关于另一场暴风雨的警告来了。故选 D。

24. A. heading our way
B. coming to mind
C. coming into effect
D. taking its place

A 根据下文的“I quickly took my dogs outside. Huge and 25 clouds were rolling in while thunder 26 over the hills.”可知,另一场暴风雨已经在路上了。故选 A。

25. A. constant B. unpleasant
C. temporary D. normal

A 根据句中的“Huge”及“rolling in”可知,大片乌云连绵不断,滚滚而来。故选 A。

26. A. disappeared B. mattered
C. changed D. boomed

D 根据“while thunder 26 over the hills”可知,雷声在轰鸣。故选 D。

27. A. anywhere B. outdoors
C. somewhere D. indoors

C 根据下文的“but I just couldn't see them”可知,作者知道星星在看不见的某处闪烁着。故选 C。

28. A. shone B. circled
C. swept D. travelled

D 结合常识以及句中的“how far their light”和“in the darkness”可推知,星星和月亮的光芒在黑暗中传播了很远。故选 D。

29. A. bothered B. followed
C. targeted D. allocated

A 根据上文的“The blink of light, up high, at the far end of the meadow (草坪)”可知,星星和月亮的光芒依旧闪烁着,没有受到正在靠近的暴风雨的打扰。故选 A。

30. A. result B. trick
C. darkness D. battle

C 根据上文及下文的“no longer seemed so scary”可知,有星星和月亮的光芒,作者觉得黑暗似乎不那么可怕了。故选 C。

31. A. nature B. society
C. design D. chance

A 结合常识和下文的“some caused by us”可知,生活中的“暴风雨”一些是自然产生的,一些是人为造成的。故选 A。

32. A. instead B. therefore
C. though D. somehow

C 根据上文的“Life does have its share of storms”和句中的“We can't go through life being scared of them”可知,生活中的确有“暴风雨”,但我们不能被它们吓倒,上下文有转折关系。故选 C。

33. A. match B. present
C. thoughts D. storms

D 根据“ride through the 33, clean up after them”可知,them 指代 storms,因此,此处指我们一定会度过风暴。故选 D。

34. A. amazed B. concerned
C. upset D. good

A 根据上文的“It amazed me how far their light 28 in the darkness of the night”可知,我们会惊叹于光所能传播的距离。故选 A。

35. A. give B. put
C. drive D. send

C 根据上文可知,星星和月亮的光芒让作者觉得黑暗似乎不那么可怕了,所以光芒能够驱散黑暗。故选 C。

IV. 语法填空

Over the past few days, a number of forest fires **36. have broken** (break) out in Chongqing and its surrounding areas due to the extremely dry and hot weather. Many rescue personnel and volunteers participated in the rescue overnight, **37. which** moved a lot of people across the country. The mountain fires in several regions in Chongqing have been **38. eventually** (eventual) put out on Friday morning. No casualties have been reported.

Chongqing motorcyclists are being praised as **39. heroes** (hero) for volunteering to transport much-needed supplies to the fire and fighting the wildfires **40. caused** (cause) by prolonged heat and drought across multiple districts in the municipality.

41. Facing (face) the tough situation, the city government called for volunteers **42. with** related skills and experience to join the firefighting, and a large number of motorcyclists have played an important role and won widespread praise. The team members, with **43. an** average age of 29, took turns to use five dirt bikes and four scooters (小轮摩托车) to carry materials and equipment to firefighters **44. and** to transport people and necessities.

The example of a foreign teacher who volunteered to help fight the raging wildfires in Chongqing's Beibei District with other local residents has touched many people. After two hours of work, **45. their** (they) group of five people had checked out some 50 chainsaws, which were delivered to fire and rescue workers.

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,在某国际学校就读。因你所在的海滨城市经常遭受飓风袭扰,须提醒新来的英国交换生 Kate 了解安全须知。请你用英语给她写一封电子邮件,内容包括:

1. 飓风来临前应该怎么做;
2. 飓风来临时应该做什么,不应该做什么。

注意:词数 80 左右。

【参考范文】

Dear Kate,

I'm writing to inform you, a newcomer, of some tips on hurricane safety so that you can survive this common threat to coastal cities.

Knowing what to do matters when a hurricane strikes. Before a hurricane, you should make sure your property is protected. Close windows and bring anything that could blow away indoors. You should have sufficient food, water, medicine and batteries

in case of emergency. During a hurricane, you'd better stay in the shelter, away from windows and listen to the weather warning. Do not assume the storm has passed and do not go out even if the wind stops. Dangerous winds may return.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Chuck and his elder brother Peter lived with their dad Kyle and their grandfather Stan. They referred to each other as “the Hardy boys”.

One evening, Chuck and Peter asked their grandfather about the number one activity on his bucket list (人生愿望清单). “I was going to rebuild my dad's farmhouse and maintain it. It's a shame I could never do it,” he sighed (叹息). Stan worked hard as a car mechanic, but his earnings were never enough to maintain such a huge farm.

Months passed and there was no mention of the farm again. Stan and Kyle continued working in their car repair shop, while Chuck and Peter worked downtown. On Stan's 75th birthday, Chuck and Peter decided to give him a surprise.

“Grandpa,” Chuck started, “this year we decided not to give you a cake for your birthday.” He smiled. “Really? You broke your tradition of giving me a chocolate cake?! How could you?!” Stan joked. “Ah, wait and see, Grandpa. I think you're going to like this a lot better than a chocolate cake,” Chuck replied.

At that moment, Peter excitedly brought out his laptop and flashed a 3D model of a modern farmhouse. Kyle and Stan stared at the computer screen. “What are we looking at?” Stan asked his grandsons. “We know how much your dad valued his farm and how much you wanted to honour him by maintaining it. Chuck and I raised money to fix the farmhouse and the farm,” Peter said with a smile.

Stan covered his mouth with his hand. Tears instantly streamed down his face. “You’d do that for me?” he cried. “Grandpa, you’re the best grandfather on earth,” Chuck told him. “We do absolutely anything for you. There’s nothing else you need to say but to assure us that you’ll help us rebuild the farm, Grandpa! You too, Dad!”

Kyle and Stan nodded their heads. “Absolutely. When we’re done, I’ll throw a barbecue party! My dad said that if I ever get to maintain the farm, we should throw a barbecue party,” Stan said excitedly.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

Every day after that, the Hardy boys set out to work on the farmhouse. Exhausted but filled with excitement, none of them slowed their working pace. Before the rebuilding work came to an end, they kept riding Stan’s old pickup truck and headed to the “workplace”. With time ticking by, the farmhouse

gradually took form. It took them two months to complete the project, including planting crops in the field. Staring at the masterpiece accomplished with their joint effort, the past memory welling up inside Stan, he could hardly fight back his tears continually murmuring, “Thank you, kids!”

That Sunday, they decided to host a barbecue party and invite their neighbours. Thrilled but nervous, to make sure everything was in order and well prepared, they reached the farm early and dared not slack off, elaborately preparing a variety of exquisite dishes. As night neared, guests arrived one after another, all of whom were deeply impressed by the brand-new farm. They danced the night away while enjoying the yummy foods. At the sight of the scene, Stan looked up at the sky in awe. “We made it, Dad. The Hardy boys have managed to keep your farm alive,” he said in a firm voice. “I hope you’re proud of what you see.”

模块质量评估

I. 阅读理解

A

The Best Zoos in the World

Catching sight of your favourite animals up close can be an exciting experience. Many zoos provide the opportunity for people to learn about the global environment and work to help preserve critical species for generations to come.

San Diego Zoo—San Diego, California

The San Diego Zoo has long been considered one of the best zoos in the world. The zoo, which opened its doors in 1916, covers over 100 acres and is home to more than 12,000 rare and endangered animals. Guests can take part in a number of educational programmes.

Chester Zoo—England, UK

The Chester Zoo is yet another large space with a rich conservation programme (and it happens to be the most-visited zoo in the UK). The zoo is home to more than 20,000 animals and works to educate every guest on not only their conservation programmes but how individuals can take action.

Alaska Zoo—Anchorage, Alaska

The Alaska Zoo is one of the smaller ones to make this global list, but for a good reason. The Alaska Zoo specialises in local animals, including brown bears, bald eagles, moose, hawks, harbour seals, and more. It is a registered nonprofit devoted to promoting the conservation of Arctic and sub-Arctic species.

Tiergarten Schönbrunn—Vienna, Austria

The Tiergarten Schönbrunn in Vienna has the distinct honour of being the world's oldest zoo. It also happens to be one of the best zoos in the world thanks to its various rare animal exhibits, along with its captive breeding programme that's helping

to save dozens of at-risk species, and its rich species protection programme in the wild.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了四所独具特色的动物园。

1. What do San Diego Zoo and Chester Zoo have in common?

- A. They are both located in Europe.
- B. They are both free for tourists.
- C. They both offer educational events.
- D. They both donate a part of tickets.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“Guests can take part in a number of educational programmes.”和第三段中的“The zoo is home to more than 20,000 animals and works to educate every guest on not only their conservation programmes but how individuals can take action.”可知,这两所动物园都提供教育项目。故选C。

2. What is special about Alaska Zoo?

- A. It is the smallest zoo in the world.
- B. It is managed by a nonprofit organisation.
- C. It is one of the most-visited zoos in the US.
- D. It is aimed at protecting some specific animals.

D 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“The Alaska Zoo specialises in local animals, including brown bears, bald eagles, moose, hawks, harbour seals, and more. It is a registered nonprofit devoted to promoting the conservation of Arctic and sub-Arctic species.”可知,Alaska Zoo的特别之处是它旨在保护一些特定的动物。故选D。

3. Where should you go if you want to visit a zoo with a long history?

- A. Vienna, Austria.
- B. Anchorage, Alaska.
- C. England, UK.
- D. San Diego, California.

A 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“The

Tiergarten Schönbrunn in Vienna has the distinct honour of being the world's oldest zoo.”可知,如果你想参观一个历史悠久的动物园,你应该去奥地利的维也纳。故选 A。

B

We were at the top of the mountain when the call came through on the radio.

I was in the Altai Mountains with Biosphere Expeditions (生物圈考察队) as a member of the first team to take part in a survey of snow leopards (雪豹) in this part of the world.

Getting to the base camp had been an expedition in itself. It was getting dark as we arrived. After a very good night's sleep we were up early for a couple of days training on how to fill in the datasheets, identify tracks and prints and what to do with useful animal droppings amongst other things.

The next day, four of us set off up one of the mountains to do our first survey with our guide Oleg. We spent most of the morning climbing the endlessly steep mountain with little communication from Oleg who only became active when we stopped to take on water. By early afternoon we reached what appeared to be the top but was another ridge (山脊). My 47-year-old bones were shaking and I was struggling to breathe. We hadn't seen a thing except for rocky mountains. Our guide was keeping going but we had very little idea about what we were supposed to be doing. Energy was dropping rapidly.

Then everything changed. The radio came to life. Hardly able to speak through excitement, one of the other group told us that they had just discovered fresh snow leopard tracks!

On arrival, we found the other group silently looking at a gulf (溪谷). A set of very clear paw prints ran from top to bottom. I was filled with a feeling of complete exhilaration. One of the rarest big cats in the world had passed through where I was standing! They

were here and what we were going to do would help them survive.

All the suffering of the past days fell away. The long walk back to the base camp that night seemed to go by in seconds.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者和生物圈考察队一起在阿尔泰山脉参与调查雪豹的故事。

4. Why did the author make his expedition in the Altai Mountains?

- A. To become a member of Biosphere Expeditions.
- B. To enjoy the mountainous scenery.
- C. To measure the height of the mountains.
- D. To carry out the research on snow leopards.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段的内容可知,因为作者要开展对雪豹的研究,所以去阿尔泰山探险。故选 D。

5. What did the author do after his first night at the base camp?

- A. He visited the camp with his partners.
- B. He got up late after some extra rest.
- C. He received some basic training.
- D. He organised a welcome party.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“After a very good night's sleep we were up early for a couple of days training on how to fill in the datasheets, identify tracks and prints and what to do with useful animal droppings amongst other things.”可知,作者在大本营度过第一晚后接受了一些基本训练。故选 C。

6. What was difficult for the author during his expedition?

- A. Climbing the endlessly rocky mountains at his age.
- B. Having good communication with his guide.
- C. Finding the right way to the mountain top.
- D. Searching for clean drinking water.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“My 47-year-old bones were shaking and I was struggling to

breathe. We hadn't seen a thing except for rocky mountains. Our guide was keeping going but we had very little idea about what we were supposed to be doing. Energy was dropping rapidly.”可知,在作者这样的年纪,还要攀登无尽的山脉是一件困难的事情。故选 A。

7. What does the underlined word “exhilaration” in Paragraph 6 mean?

- A. Freedom. B. Excitement.
C. Peace. D. Loss.

B 词义猜测题。根据第五段中的“Hardly able to speak through excitement, one of the other group told us that they had just discovered fresh snow leopard tracks!”以及画线词上文的“On arrival, we found the other group silently looking at a gulf (溪谷). A set of very clear paw prints ran from top to bottom.”可知,另一组的人非常激动,告诉作者这组他们发现了雪豹的足迹,作者他们到达后也看到了雪豹的足迹,肯定也是非常激动的。由此推知,exhilaration 应为“激动”之意,选项 B 是与之意思最为接近。故选 B。

C

The days of just teaching kids their ABCs are long gone. Modern educators are tasked with the seemingly impossible responsibility of making sure that today's youth are academically (学业上) prepared for life outside the classroom and being self-aware, self-managing, socially aware, relationship-building, and responsible decision-makers who are good to society. That is quite an ask!

But social-emotional learning (SEL) answers this call and delivers upon this tall order. It is a method to improve students' intrapersonal (内心的), interpersonal, and learning ability. This process improves individual students' skills and makes for a community of successful learners willing and able to positively contribute to society. This theory truly allows individuals to develop well.

SEL has effectively predicted positive school adjustment in the school setting, increased learning engagement, minimised discipline (纪律) problems, increased high school graduation rates, and increased future employment and adult health. A main part of SEL is helping children understand their emotions. Further, not only is it important that youngsters can identify various emotions, but they must also be able to manage the emotions they experience.

Developing an identity (身份) is necessary for grown-ups, and SEL satisfies this requirement. By helping students develop their identity, SEL helps to increase self-confidence, identification of strengths and needs, and recognition of needs, values, and judgements.

In the classroom, SEL has been shown to positively affect students' attitudes, behaviours, and academic performance. Further, it decreases negative behaviours, such as being off-task or behaving badly. SEL improves the learning environment and makes it a safe place for learning.

Not only is SEL significant for students' mental health, but it is also important for teachers' mental health. SEL increases teacher-reported effectiveness for behaviour management and decreases reports of teacher burnout. Ultimately, SEL creates a calmer classroom environment, which makes educating students much easier.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了什么是社交情绪学习(SEL)以及社交情绪学习带来的良好效果。

8. What can we say about the responsibility of modern educators according to Paragraph 1?

- A. It is demanding.
B. It is rewarding.
C. It is respectable.
D. It is impossible.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“ That is quite an ask!”可知,对现代教育工作者的要求是相当高

的。故选 A。

9. What is mainly talked about in Paragraph 2?

- A. How to be a successful learner.
- B. How to meet the students' needs.
- C. What is needed for a community.
- D. What is social-emotional learning.

D 段落大意题。根据第二段的内容可知,第二段主要谈论了什么是 SEL。故选 D。

10. What is the primary part of SEL?

- A. Giving students a clear identity.
- B. Allowing students to predict their future.
- C. Offering students' future jobs.
- D. Helping students understand and manage emotions.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“A main part of SEL is helping children understand their emotions. Further, not only is it important that youngsters can identify various emotions, but they must also be able to manage the emotions they experience.”可知,SEL 的一个主要组成部分是帮助孩子们理解他们的情绪,进而学会管控情绪。故选 D。

11. What can we infer about SEL from the last paragraph?

- A. It is a win-win method.
- B. It is refused by students.
- C. It may make teachers tired.
- D. It stresses the importance of teachers.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“Not only is SEL significant for students' mental health, but it is also important for teachers' mental health. SEL increases teacher-reported effectiveness for behaviour management and decreases reports of teacher burnout.”可知,社交情绪学习不仅对学生重要,而且对老师的心理健康也很重要。所以这是一个双赢的方法。故选 A。

D

What happens when we think that others expect

us to fail? My research shows that these “underdog expectations” can actually motivate (激励) people to try to prove others wrong, especially those they find less trustworthy, leading them to perform better.

I conducted an experiment asking volunteers to do a computer task that included clicking on rapidly moving circles. They were told that someone was observing their performance on the task. They would receive one of three messages—stating underdog expectations, high expectations, or neutral (中立的) expectations—from the observer. Volunteers then performed the task. I found that those who experienced underdog expectations performed the best.

There are countless stories about underdogs being successful. For example, Aly Raisman, a three-time Olympic gold medalist in gymnastics, specially mentioned this motivation after reporters suggested she was too old to succeed at the last Olympics. “It's obviously not something that people expected or that's easy to do after you're taking a year off or being the ‘Grandma’ or whatever they like to say. So, I'm happy I proved everyone wrong.”

Of course, there are also many more examples of people failing to overcome the low expectations others set for them. So when does being an underdog lead to success rather than failure?

I ran a second study. Before volunteers received any expectations, they were casually given information about the observer's trust. Results show that the desire to prove others wrong only turned into better performance in the face of less trustworthy observers, while it backfired when it came from more trustworthy observers. Trying to prove highly trustworthy people wrong appears to have caused a sense of anxiety, which weakened the following performance. In contrast, people experiencing underdog expectations from less

trustworthy observers were able to use the desire to prove others wrong and perform successfully.

My work suggests that more people can achieve success when they think that others view them as underdogs—if they view others as less trustworthy and direct their motivation to prove them wrong towards performing better.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章讲述了当我们不被看好时会发生什么。研究表明这些“劣势者的期望”实际上可以激励人们试图去证明别人是错的,特别是那些他们认为不太值得信赖的人,从而使他们表现得更好。

12. What's the author's purpose in using Aly's story in Paragraph 3?

- A. To show an old player did better than her competitors.
- B. To show it was hard for an old player to achieve success.
- C. To show the reporters thought little of Aly's performance.
- D. To show underdog expectations can actually lead to success.

D 写作意图题。根据第三段中的“*There are countless stories about underdogs being successful.*”可知,第三段第一句提出段落主旨,紧接着利用“*For example*”举例进行论述,由此可知下文讲述 Aly 的故事是为了论述这一观点。故选 D。

13. What does the underlined word “backfired” in Paragraph 5 probably mean?

- A. Developed interest.
- B. Raised motivation.
- C. Had opposite effects.
- D. Helped avoid failure.

C 词义猜测题。根据画线词上文的“*Results show that the desire to prove others wrong only turned into better performance in the face of less trustworthy observers*”和下文“*when it came from more trustworthy observers*”,以及连词 *while* 可

知,两种观点是相反的。由此可推知,画线单词表示有相反的结果。故选 C。

14. Which of the following situations can motivate a person best?

- A. A stranger online said you would rank first in the coming exam.
- B. A friend who once lied to you said you would fail the interview.
- C. A teacher you respect predicted your low scores in the coming exam.
- D. A coach of the school team said you couldn't get a prize in the match.

B 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“*In contrast, people experiencing underdog expectations from less trustworthy observers were able to use the desire to prove others wrong and perform successfully.*”可知,不被那些不值得信任的观察者看好的人能够利用这种欲望来证明别人是错的,并获得成功。因此推断 B 项“一个曾经对你说谎的朋友说你面试会失败。”最能激励人。故选 B。

15. Which might be the best title for the passage?

- A. Upside of Being Underdogs
- B. Ways to Better Performance
- C. Attempts to Prove Others Wrong
- D. Causes of Underdog Expectations

A 标题归纳题。通读全文可知,作者开篇先提出一个问题——当我们被低估时,会产生什么表现?然后引出研究结果并展开论述,即被低估会刺激人们求胜的欲望进而激发出他们更好的表现。选项 A“作为劣势者的好处”为最佳标题。故选 A。

II. 七选五

I always seemed to be running late and hurrying up. I'd wake up early in the morning in order to have enough time to get to where I wanted to go. But by the time I found myself on the road, I was clearly going to be late. 16 This constant rush entered every area of my life. For example, when I went

shopping, I'd race up and down the passage.

Then one day when going to work, I had been running behind again. Unluckily, on the way, my car was out of gas. As my car left the road, I looked at my watch. It's clear that I'd be late. 17 I had a meeting in fifteen minutes and I hadn't finished preparing for it.

But as I looked out towards the east, the sun was just beginning to climb out of the hill. There was fog hanging over the river and some ducks were swimming across the glass-like surface of the water. A few boats sat on the river, which was shining in the sunshine. 18

I was surprised. This pretty scene had been going on right outside my car every morning. 19 I had been rushing around in such a hurry not to miss anything that I had been missing everything!

20 I understood I needed to set schedules and make good preparations for big events in case of any hurry. More importantly, I should try to stay relaxed and enjoy my present life. And there was no need to worry about unimportant things. Now I am here living my life joyfully and patiently.

- A. How could I avoid it?
 B. I became worried and upset.
 C. What an amazing picture outside!
 D. I found some surprising things happened.
 E. However, I had never taken the time to see it.
 F. So I would drive fast to make up for the minutes I had lost.
 G. Finally a co-worker recognised my car and stopped for me.

答案: 16~20 FBCEA

III. 完形填空

I've always loved mountaineering (登山) and the mental and physical challenges that go with it. This time the peak (山峰) of Mt Whitney is my 21. There are quite a few ways up to the big mountain, but we 22 the traditional one at last,

almost 12 miles to the top.

I decided to make this trip less about 23 and more about the climb and my personal journey with a friend. Thinking about it this way, I decided to carry only one camera to 24 the course, but it still added 3.2 pounds to my backpack, which 25 2.8 pounds without the camera equipment. Fortunately, climbing with a friend 26 sharing the weight, keeping our packs a little lighter. Therefore, we 27 reached the top just two days later. This particular trip was prepared for a personal trip on purpose to get to the peak and enjoy the breathtaking 28.

Climbing such tall peaks 29 every aspect of you, as a nature photographer. It can test both your physical strength and photographic 30. Can you imagine being about 4,200 metres up, 31 the thin air of the high-altitude (海拔) environment while also trying to be 32 with your compositions (作品)? That's what we were doing! And that's the joy that comes with climbing Mt Whitney as well.

Like any other 33 in nature, there are risks in mountaineering, though. Extreme altitude and the unpredictable (无法预测的) weather will test even the most 34 climber. Despite the fact, mountaineering for me is all about the experiences, which makes me live to the 35.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。作为一名摄影师,作者约了一位朋友开启登山之旅。这次他决定轻装出行,少拍一些照片,多留一些时间享受登山的乐趣。虽然攀登世界高峰对摄影师来说是一项极大的考验,但也是一种体验和快乐。

21. A. imagination B. impression
 C. destination D. kingdom
 C 根据上文的“I've always loved mountaineering (登山) and the mental and physical challenges that go with it.”可知,作者喜欢登山,这次的目的

地是惠特尼山。故选 C。

22. A. chose B. repaired
C. missed D. covered

A 根据上文的“*There are quite a few ways up to the big mountain*”可知,虽然有很多条路通往山上,但是作者和他的朋友选择了最传统的那条。故选 A。

23. A. shelters B. photos
C. clothes D. foods

B 根据下文的“*I decided to carry only one camera*”可知,作者决定这次旅行时少拍一些照片,所以只带了一部相机。故选 B。

24. A. discover B. draw
C. guess D. document

D 根据上文的“*camera*”可知,作者带相机是为了记录旅行的过程。故选 D。

25. A. weighed B. lifted
C. balanced D. cut

A 根据上文的“*but it still added 3.2 pounds to my backpack*”可知,作者只带了一部相机,但是增加了 3.2 磅的重量,本来他的行李重 2.8 磅。*weigh* 意为“重量是……”。故选 A。

26. A. looked for
B. resulted from
C. contributed to
D. focused on

C 根据上文的“*climbing with a friend*”可知,和朋友一起登山有助于分担重量,让作者的行李稍微轻一些。故选 C。

27. A. suddenly B. legally
C. obviously D. quickly

D 根据上文的“*Fortunately, climbing with a friend* 26 *sharing the weight, keeping our packs a little lighter.*”可知,在和朋友一起分担了背包的重量后,作者和他的朋友很快就到达了山顶。故选 D。

28. A. painting B. scenery
C. performance D. movement

B 根据上文的“*get to the peak and enjoy*”可知,作者这次爬山的目的是到达山顶欣赏令人叹为观止的风景。故选 B。

29. A. attracts B. pays
C. tests D. brings

C 根据下文的“*It can test both your physical strength*”可知,攀登这样的高峰对于一名自然摄影师来说是一种考验。故选 C。

30. A. skills B. attitudes
C. times D. dreams

A 根据上文的“*Climbing such tall peaks* 29 *every aspect of you, as a nature photographer.*”可知,攀登这样的高峰对于一名自然摄影师来说是一种考验,既考验体力,也考验作者的摄影技术。故选 A。

31. A. identifying B. improving
C. collecting D. breathing

D 根据下文的“*the thin air of the high-altitude (海拔) environment*”可知,爬上大约 4 200 米高的地方,呼吸着高海拔环境中稀薄的空气。故选 D。

32. A. confident B. patient
C. familiar D. creative

D 根据上文的“*It can test both your physical strength and photographic* 30.”可知,作者爬上大约 4 200 米高的地方,呼吸着高海拔环境中稀薄的空气,而且还要让自己的作品更有创意,是一件很困难的事情。故选 D。

33. A. secrets B. adventures
C. rules D. species

B 根据下文的“*there are risks in mountaineering*”可知,登山也是具有风险的冒险活动,像其他大自然中的冒险活动一样。故选 B。

34. A. excited B. devoted
C. experienced D. frightened

C 根据上文的“*Like any other* 33 *in nature, there are risks in mountaineering, though.*”可知,登山也有一定的风险,所以对有经

验的登山者来说也是一种考验。故选 C。

35. A. longest B. fullest
C. highest D. farthest

B 根据上下文可知,虽然登上很高的山峰对于作者来说是一次冒险,但是这种经历让作者的生活变得非常充实。故选 B。

IV. 语法填空

The Chongyang Festival, which has a history of over 2,000 years, falls **36.** on the ninth day of the ninth month in the Chinese lunar calendar. **37.** Traditionally (traditional), we should celebrate the festival by going mountain climbing, but how many people today still observe this tradition? Traditional Chinese festivals are **38.** an important part of Chinese culture, and they must be promoted.

Traditional festivals teach us a lot about our nation's history. The Dragon Boat Festival, for example, **39.** passes (pass) down the story of Qu Yuan, a great poet **40.** living (live) in the Warring States period of ancient China, from generation to generation by celebrating with rice dumplings and dragon boat races.

Moreover, celebrating traditional festivals allows us **41.** to learn (learn) to honour fine Chinese values. The full moon on the Mid-Autumn Festival that has a caring, family-centred message **42.** is considered (consider) as family togetherness.

Finally, traditional festivals are a source of national pride and help shape our national identity. For example, we celebrate the Hanshi Festival and Laba Festival with unique customs, and these shared **43.** experiences (experience) bring us together as a people. Traditional festivals tell us who we are **44.** and fill us with pride in being Chinese.

Traditional festivals have been passed down to us from previous generations. So **45.** it is the duty of every one of us to protect them for generations to come.

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假如你是李华,正在英国参加一个交换生项目。在这期间你加入了当地的音乐社团。这个社团正在网上分享成员们最喜欢的音乐。请你发帖参与分享,描述你最喜欢的歌曲、乐曲等音乐形式,内容包括:

1. 对该音乐的简介;
2. 听该音乐时你的感觉;
3. 它对你的影响。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Pete: Hey, everybody. What's your favourite piece of music?

Li Hua: My favourite piece of music is Chunjianghuayueye, or A Moonlit Night on the Spring River. It's a piece of traditional Chinese music played with pipa, a traditional Chinese musical instrument looking a bit like a guitar. Every time I listen to the music, it feels as if a picture of a river is spreading before me. I can see the bright moon rising and shining, and the river water shining too. I can also feel the breeze blowing softly across my face. The classic piece has a comforting effect on me and I feel very proud of the traditional Chinese music.

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

An Act of Neighbourliness

The skies were dark. A strong wind was blowing hard, cutting my face like a sharp knife. Rain fell in big drops and thunder and lightning flashed across the skies. I shook with cold and fear as I walked home, through the streams of muddy water. Some people were rushing by, completely wet in the heavy rain.

Along the way, I saw some schoolchildren

holding their heavy schoolbags tightly and rushing home. I also saw that some road repair work had been abandoned by workers. Obviously, the workers had left in a hurry because of the storm. There were few signs and it was hard to see what was on the road. There were pieces of wood and metal and it looked like a hole had been dug and hurriedly covered with boards.

I moved on but suddenly stopped as I heard some sounds. It sounded like children crying. I quickly turned back and went back to the place from where the sounds came. I was frightened! To my sadness, I found that two small children had fallen into the hole on the road. The boards had moved away with the force of the rushing water. I could hardly see the children as it was dark all around me. I told them that I was going to look for help. I knew the neighbours well, and they all shared a sense of neighbourliness, willing to give a hand.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

I rushed to the nearest house, Mr Lee's, and told him about the problem. He readily said that he would get a torch and some rope. He also called his good friends to come along with him. A few other neighbours also quickly joined the rescue party and together went to the road. They managed to get the children out of the watery hole safely. The children were scared silly and they shook all over with cold, daring not to make a movement.

Hearing of what had happened, the children's parents were in relief. They were very grateful to the neighbours who had helped to rescue the children and thanked them repeatedly. A flood of happiness welled up in me because I had been part of this act of neighbourliness. It was a wonderful moment, which I would never forget. The neighbours had been great. They had helped people in need without hesitation. Bathed in much warmth, I headed for home.